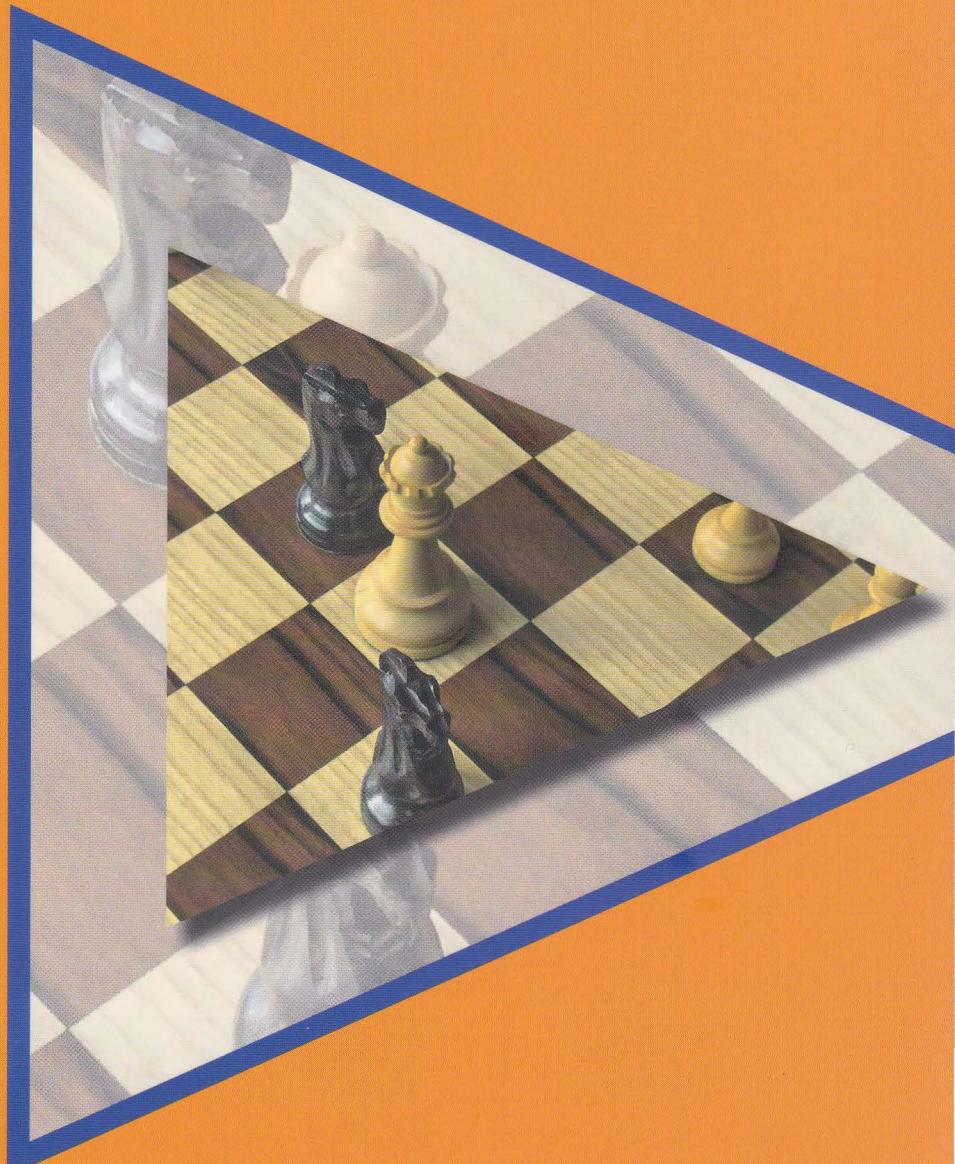


ARTUR YUSUPOV



**CHESS EVOLUTION**  
THE FUNDAMENTALS

1

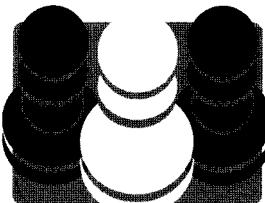
QUALITY CHESS

# **Chess Evolution 1**

## **The Fundamentals**

By

**Artur Yusupov**



Quality Chess  
[www.qualitychess.co.uk](http://www.qualitychess.co.uk)

First English edition 2011 by Quality Chess UK Ltd  
Translated from the German edition *Tigersprung auf DWZ 1500 III*

Copyright © 2011 Artur Yusupov

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission of the publisher.

Paperback ISBN 978-1-906552-45-9  
Hardcover ISBN 978-1-906552-64-0

All sales or enquiries should be directed to Quality Chess UK Ltd,  
20 Balvie Road, Milngavie, Glasgow G62 7TA, United Kingdom  
Phone: +44 141 333 9588  
e-mail: [info@qualitychess.co.uk](mailto:info@qualitychess.co.uk)  
website: [www.qualitychess.co.uk](http://www.qualitychess.co.uk)

Distributed in US and Canada by SCB Distributors, Gardena, California  
[www.scbdistributors.com](http://www.scbdistributors.com)  
Distributed in Rest of the World by Quality Chess UK Ltd through  
Sunrise Handicrafts, Smyczkowa 4/98, 20-844 Lublin, Poland  
[www.crafts.pl](http://www.crafts.pl)

Cover Photo by Nadja Jussupow  
Photos by Harald Fietz on pages 5, 45, 95, 147, 157, 205, and 210

Translated by Ian Adams  
Edited and typeset by Colin McNab  
Proofreading by Jacob Aagaard  
Cover design and generic typeset: Augusto Caruso of Caissa Italia  
Elaborated by Adamson Design  
Printed in Estonia by Tallinna Raamatuträkikoja LLC

# CONTENTS

Key to symbols used	4
Preface	5
Introduction	6
1 Combinations involving bishops	8
2 Diagonals	18
3 Queen sacrifices	28
4 Realizing a material advantage in a pawn ending	36
5 Realizing a material advantage	46
6 Attacking with queen and knight	56
7 The open games	66
8 Attacking with queen and rook	76
9 Forced Variations	86
10 Attacking with queen and bishop	96
11 Positional advantages	106
12 Bishop against pawns	118
13 Attacking with queen and pawn	126
14 Attacking	134
15 Attacking with rook and bishop	146
16 Knight against pawn	158
17 Attacking with rook and knight	168
18 Semi-open games	176
19 Combinations involving promotion	188
20 Mate in three moves	198
21 Mating nets in the endgame	206
22 The passed pawn	216
23 Combinations involving files	226
24 Queen against rook	236
Final test	245
Index of composers	255
Index of games	256

## Key to symbols used

△ White to move  
▼ Black to move

± White is slightly better  
≡ Black is slightly better  
± White is better  
+ Black is better  
+- White has a decisive advantage  
-+ Black has a decisive advantage  
= equality

≈ with compensation  
⇄ with counterplay  
∞ unclear  
○ zugzwang

□ better is  
△ intending

? a weak move  
?? a blunder  
! a good move  
!! an excellent move  
!?! a move worth considering  
?! a move of doubtful value  
# mate

# Preface

It was a pleasure to have Artur Yusupov working as my second, both personally and professionally. It is therefore an honour for me to write the preface to this series of books.

This book was created by expanding and improving the original online lessons from the Chess Tigers University. As an honorary member of the Chess Tigers, it has given me great pleasure to see this logical follow-up take concrete form and meet the twin challenges of being both a valuable textbook and a bedside book.

It was in 1994 that I met Artur Yusupov in the semi-finals of the Candidates' cycle in Wijk aan Zee. I managed to come out ahead by 4.5–2.5, but I recognized that Artur harboured great potential, both in his chess knowledge and extensive match experience.

Artur's systematic and professional approach to analysing games was the decisive factor in having him as my second in the World Championship Finals in New York 1995 and Lausanne 1998. His mastery of the methods of the Russian chess school was very helpful in the preparation for the matches, as well as during the matches themselves. It was his idea that I should play the Trompovsky in the last game in Lausanne. I was 3–2 down, but was able to level the match at 3–3 and thus force a play-off.

I am still very grateful for everything that Artur did for me.

Artur's vast experience as a trainer convinced him that there is a considerable need for better tuition for amateurs. Matching the level to the needs of the student is perhaps not too difficult, but the masterstroke is structuring the information in such a way that makes it immediately useful for amateurs. I am naturally enthusiastic about the rich variety of material in this series, which can help beginners become top amateurs.

I wish Artur Yusupov all the best with the publication of this series of books. Making this work available in English means that even more people who are keen to learn can enjoy it to the full.

World Champion, Viswanathan Anand



# Introduction

During my many years of work as a chess trainer, I have noticed that there are only a few books which are really suitable for most amateur players. Some good books treat individual aspects of the game (middlegame or endgame, tactics or positional play) without paying any real heed to the readers' playing levels. This brought about the idea of working out a teaching programme aimed specifically at a certain playing strength. Such teaching programmes, in a brief form and intended as systematic help for trainers, are common only in Russia, where they are very popular. One very well known and much valued example is a publication by Golenischev, which inspired some aspects of my methodology.

In 2003 I began a 3 year training programme in my chess academy. Three groups were set up according to playing strength: under Elo 1500, under Elo 1800 and under Elo 2100. Each annual stage consisted of 24 teaching modules and 24 tests, plus a final test at the end of the course.

This programme was later taken over, in a different form, by the Chess Tigers University and is still being used there.

The overwhelmingly positive comments of my students encouraged me to rework this programme in the form of a series of books. In doing so, I was able to make use of many evaluations, corrections and suggestions from my students. While I was redrafting, especially the explanations in the solutions, that feedback from my students was very valuable.

This book is the third volume in a series of manuals designed for players who are building the foundations of their chess knowledge. The reader will receive the necessary basic knowledge in six areas of the game – tactics, positional play, strategy, the calculation of variations, the opening and the endgame.

The reader will benefit from the methodical build-up in this book, even if some of the material is familiar, as it will close any possible gaps in his chess knowledge and thus construct solid foundations for future success. To make the book entertaining and varied, I have mixed up these different areas, but you can always see from the header to which area any particular chapter belongs.

At this point I must emphasize that just working with this book does not guarantee a rise in your rating. It simply gives you a solid basis for a leap forward in chess ability. You should also play in tournaments, analyse your own games, play through well-annotated games of stronger players and read books on chess.

I have also been concerned with another problem area since I moved to Germany: the role of trainers in chess education. In Germany there are unfortunately too few qualified trainers. There is also a widespread opinion that a talented chess player does not need a trainer. I do not share that opinion. I believe that many talented German chess players could develop much further, if they had support at the correct time and if they had not left gaps in their learning.

Chess is a complicated sport, which has to be studied for many years. It is hard to imagine any other sport without coaches. (Is there a single athletics club or football club that does not have a trainer?) This manual is intended for the many club players who unfortunately receive no support in attempting to master our complicated sport. In this way it is intended as a substitute for a trainer for those that have none (and a support for trainers), but not an equal replacement for a trainer.

I further believe that many chess lovers, who show great commitment to working with young players in chess clubs, will gain with this series of books (as well as with the programme of the

Chess Tigers University) important methodological support and high quality training material for their chess lessons. The students will certainly profit from the supplementary explanations given by trainers and from lively discussions about the themes in the books.

## How to work with this book

First read through the lessons. **You absolutely must play through all the examples and all the variations on a chessboard.**

First think about every diagram position (for at least 5 minutes) and try to find the solutions on your own. On average, you will need 1 to 2 hours per lesson. However, there is no time limit; some students may need more time for specific lessons.

It is important to have a good understanding of the subject.

The second part of the lesson is a test with 12 positions. The stars near the number of each exercise indicate the level of difficulty and, at the same time, the maximum number of points which you can earn for the correct solution with all necessary variations ( $\star = 1$  point). Try to solve the positions without moving the pieces! If you cannot solve the position straight away, you must try for a second time for approximately 10 minutes. This time you may move the pieces. You must look for new ideas.

**On absolutely no account may you get help from a computer!**

Normally you will also need 1 to 2 hours for each test. Try to solve all the exercises. Consider each position as though it were appearing in one of your own games and look for the best possible continuation. You do not always have to mate or win quickly. It is sometimes enough to suggest a good move. Especially in the lessons on the opening, it is more important for you to reflect on the position, take a decision and then carefully play through the solutions. This will help you better understand the ideas of the opening. Mistakes are part of the learning process!

**It is very important to write down all the necessary variations.** If you do this you will be able to compare your solution with the one given in the book and you can also see how well you have understood the particular subject. If your score is too low, we recommend that you work through the chapter again. **We also recommend that you play through the solutions, including all the variations, on a chessboard.**

You will find an explanation of the standard chess symbols used in this book on page 4.

At this point I should like to express my gratitude to a large number of people who have supported my work in various ways. There is firstly my wife Nadja for the design of the German edition book and her help in working through the solutions, my daughter Katja for many corrections to my German, my chess trainer Mark Dvoretsky, from whose training methods I have learned so much, the Chess Tigers and Hans-Walter Schmitt for their constructive and productive cooperation, Mike Rosa for correcting some mistakes, Reinhold from Schwerin for his proofreading, and finally to Semen Oxman and Oleg Aizman, who gave valuable advice concerning the design of the book.

I would also like to thank Augusto Caruso for his elaboration of Nadja's design for the English edition and Ian Adams for translating the book.

GM Artur Yusupov

## Contents

- ✓ Open diagonals
- ✓ Various motifs

Diagram 1-1

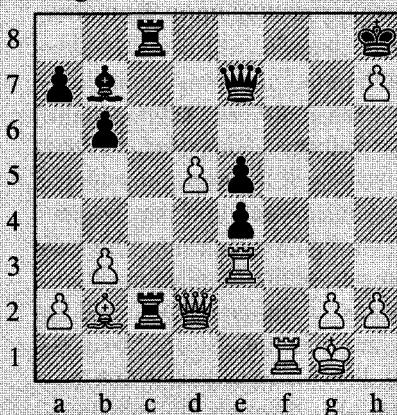
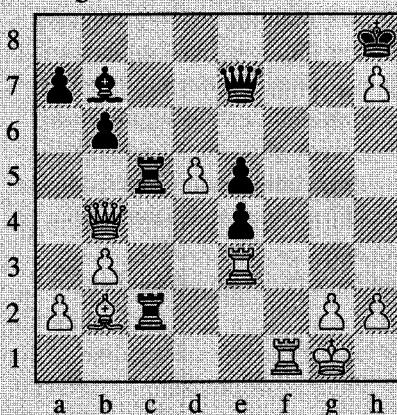


Diagram 1-2



# Combinations involving bishops

In this chapter we shall consider combinations in which a bishop plays an important part. We previously became acquainted with many examples on this theme in the lesson 'Combinations involving diagonals' (*Boost Your Chess 1*, Chapter 15). The bishop naturally requires open diagonals in order to be able to work effectively, and the support of the other pieces and pawns is often required to force open a diagonal for the bishop.

Diagram 1-1

J.Zukertort – J.Blackburne

London 1883

In one of the most beautiful games in the history of chess, Zukertort sacrifices his queen in order to bring the bishop into play.

**1.  $\mathbb{W}b4!! \mathbb{B}8c5$**

If 1...  $\mathbb{W}g7$  then simply 2.  $\mathbb{E}g3$  wins for White.

1...  $\mathbb{W}g5$  is also met by 2.  $\mathbb{E}g3+-$ .

If Black takes the white queen, he will be mated: 1...  $\mathbb{W}xb4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  3.  $\mathbb{E}h3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  4.  $\mathbb{E}g3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  5.  $\mathbb{E}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  (or 5...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  6.  $\mathbb{E}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  7.  $\mathbb{E}f4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  8.  $\mathbb{E}h7\#$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{E}f5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  7.  $\mathbb{E}f4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  8.  $\mathbb{E}h5\#$  The excellent coordination of the white rooks with the bishop is impressive.

Diagram 1-2

**2.  $\mathbb{E}f8\#!!$**

The rook is also ready to sacrifice itself for the greater glory of the bishop!

The less spectacular 2.  $\mathbb{W}xe4$  also leads to a win: 2...  $\mathbb{E}xb2$  3.  $\mathbb{E}f8\#$   $\mathbb{W}xf8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  (4...  $\mathbb{W}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}e8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  6.  $\mathbb{E}h3\#$   $\mathbb{W}h6$  7.  $\mathbb{W}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  8.  $\mathbb{E}xh6\#$ ) 5.  $\mathbb{W}h5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  (5...  $\mathbb{W}h6$  6.  $\mathbb{W}f7\#+-$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{W}g5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  7.  $\mathbb{W}f5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  8.  $\mathbb{W}g6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  9.  $\mathbb{E}h3\#+-$

**2...  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$**

Black declines the second sacrifice as well. 2...  $\mathbb{W}xf8$  would be met by 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  5.  $\mathbb{E}h3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  6.  $\mathbb{E}g3\#+-$ .

**3.  $\mathbb{W}xe4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5\#$**



## Tactics 1

This counter-attack fails due to the unfavourable position of the black knight.

**5.♗xf2 ♗e4†**

Or 5...♗c5† 6.♗g2 dxc4† 7.♗f1 ♗g2† 8.♗xg2 ♗d5† 9.♗h3+–.

**6.♗xe4! gxh5 7.♗g1† ♗h7 8.♗c5†**

And mate next move.

**1–0**

Diagram 1-5

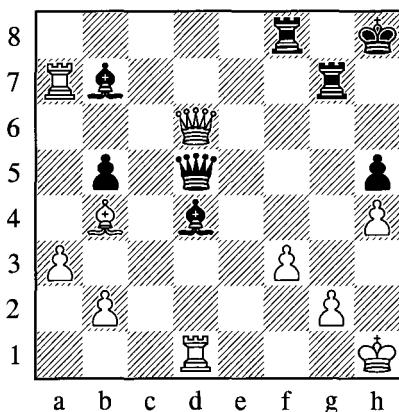


Diagram 1-6

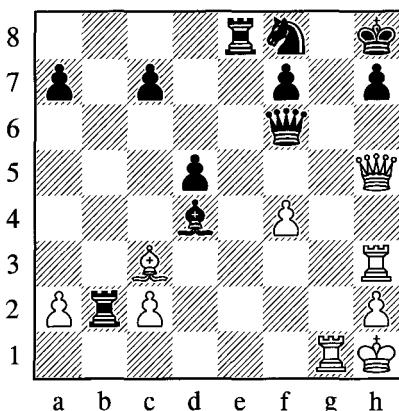


Diagram 1-7

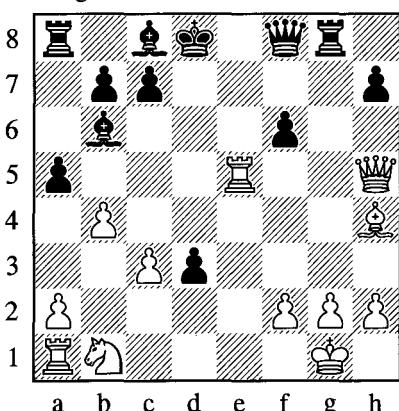


Diagram 1-5

**G.Sigurjonsson – L.Vizantiadis**

Skopje Olympiad 1972

Black opens up his opponent's castled position with a typical sacrifice.

**1...♗xf3! 2.♗xd5**

2.♗xb7 ♗h3† 3.♗h2 ♗xg2#

**2...♗h3†!**

This leads to a quick mate, although 2...♗xd5 would also be good enough: 3.♗xd4 ♗h3† 4.♗g1 ♗xg2† 5.♗f1 ♗h1#

**3.gxh3 ♗xd5† 4.♗h2 ♗e5#**

In the following position, how can White make use of his bishop on the long diagonal?

Diagram 1-6

**Veiz – Zakhodjakin**

Moscow 1947

**1.♗xf7!!**

1.♗g5 ♗xg5 2.♗xd4† f6 3.fxg5 ♗b4 4.gxf6 ♗xd4 5.f7 also wins for White, although this solution is unnecessarily complicated.

**1...♗xf7 2.♗xd4† ♗g7 3.♗xg7†**

**1–0**

White finds a way to decisively activate his bishop in the following position too.

Diagram 1-7

**Y.Estrin – A.Zhivtsov**

Moscow 1945

**1.♗e8†!**

1.♗f3 ♗g6 2.♗a3± is less convincing.

1... $\mathbb{W}xe8$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$   $\mathbb{W}e7$

Or 2... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  3. $\mathbb{W}d5\#$ .

3. $\mathbb{W}d5\#$ !

1-0

Next is another typical tactical motif, which makes use of the position of the bishop on the long diagonal.

Diagram 1-8

G. Levenfish – B. Goldenov

USSR Ch, Leningrad 1947

1. $\mathbb{B}xb7!$

1. $\mathbb{B}xb7??$   $\mathbb{B}xb7$  2. $\mathbb{B}xb7$  would be a blunder, because of 2... $\mathbb{W}d5-+$ .

1... $\mathbb{B}xb7$  2. $\mathbb{B}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  3. $\mathbb{B}xa8$   $\mathbb{W}xa8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$

White has won a pawn, although 4... $\mathbb{W}c6$  (threatening ... $\mathbb{W}a6$ ) would offer Black a certain amount of compensation.

The next four positions illustrate various motifs. Try to find the solutions yourself. The bishop has an important role to play in each; it is often ready to sacrifice itself. And you do not always have to deliver mate!

Diagram 1-8

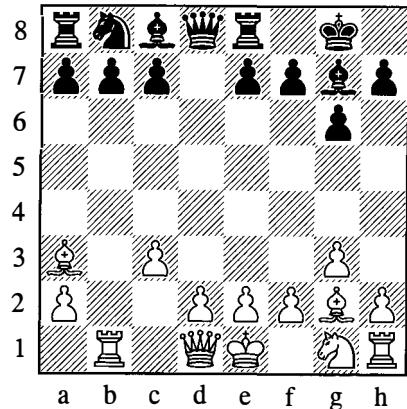


Diagram 1-9

L. Shamkovich – G. Borisenko

USSR Ch, Kiev 1954

1. $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$

The immediate 1. $\mathbb{Q}c7!+-$  is equally good, and will transpose to the following note.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  2. $\mathbb{B}fe1?!$

2. $\mathbb{Q}c7!+-$  is simpler, in view of 2... $\mathbb{W}e7$  3. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ .

2... $\mathbb{B}xe1\#$  3. $\mathbb{B}xe1$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{B}f5$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xe6\#$   $\mathbb{B}xe6$

6. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$

6. $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  7. $\mathbb{W}xg6!+-$  is quite convincing.

6... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  7. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  8. $\mathbb{W}xg6\#?!$

The more circumspect 8. $\mathbb{Q}g3$  should still be enough to win.

8... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  9. $\mathbb{Q}f4??$

This completes a surprising reversal of fortunes.

9... $\mathbb{B}xf4$  10. $\mathbb{W}xe6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  11. $\mathbb{B}c1\#$

Probably White had overlooked that 11. $\mathbb{W}e5\#$  is

Diagram 1-9

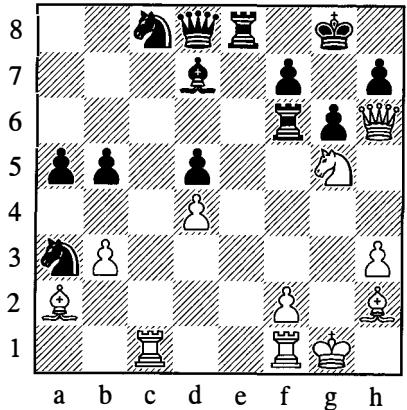


Diagram 1-10

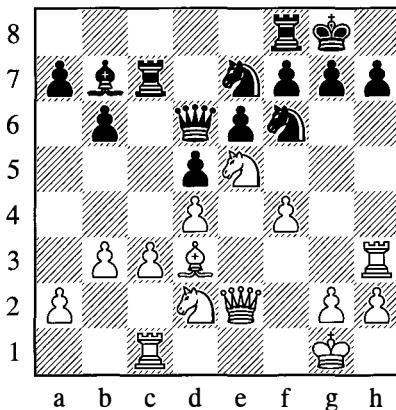


Diagram 1-11

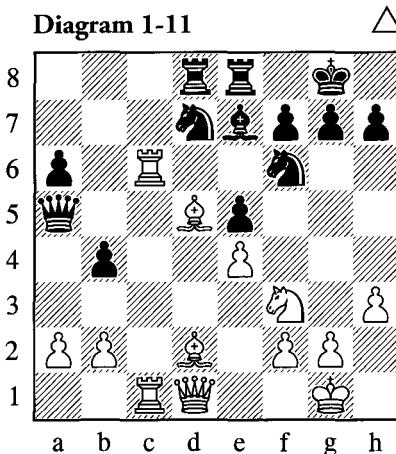
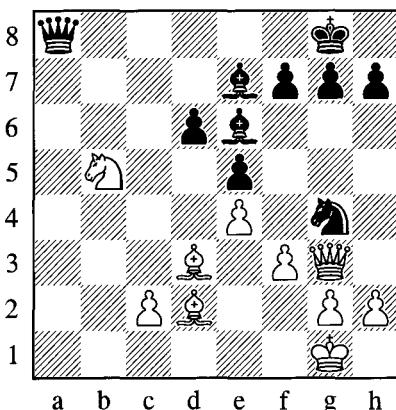


Diagram 1-12



met by 11... $\mathbb{W}d6$ –.

11... $\mathbb{Q}b7$  12. $\mathbb{W}c6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$ –

Black went on to win.

Diagram 1-10

A.Yusupov – A.Rustemov

Bastia (rapid) 2004

1. $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$ !

1–0

1... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  2. $\mathbb{W}h5$  leads to a quick mate, while after 1... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$  the black queen drops.

Diagram 1-11

M.Tal – W.Unzicker

Stockholm 1960

1. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  2. $\mathbb{W}b3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$

2... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ – is no better; nor is 2... $\mathbb{Q}g6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$  when Black is mated next move.

After 2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  Black resigned, without waiting for White to demonstrate the obvious 3. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ –.

Diagram 1-12

G.Kuzmin – V.Akopian

Rostov-on-Don 1993

1... $\mathbb{Q}g5!$

1... $\mathbb{W}a1\#$  2. $\mathbb{W}e1$  achieves nothing.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$   $\mathbb{W}a1\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$ –

2... $\mathbb{Q}xd2\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f1?$

3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ – would allow White to struggle on.

3... $\mathbb{Q}xg4!$

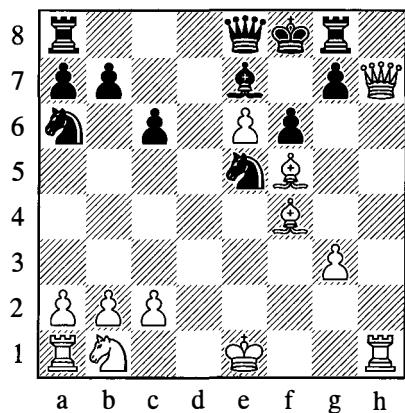
0–1

If 3. $\mathbb{W}xg4$  then 3... $\mathbb{W}a1\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}e1\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}e3\#$ .

# Exercises

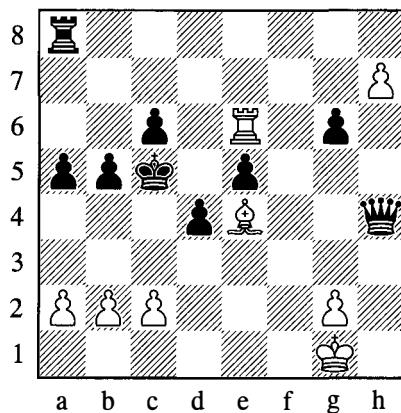
►Ex. 1-1◀

★★



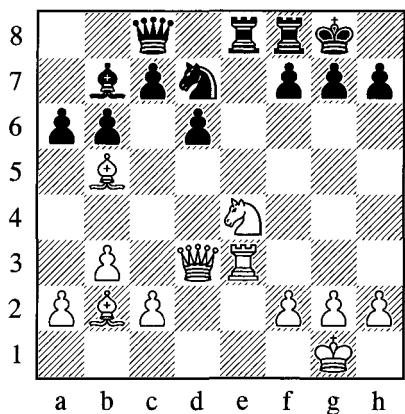
►Ex. 1-4◀

★



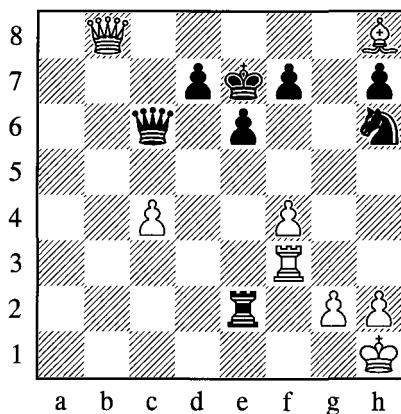
►Ex. 1-2◀

★★



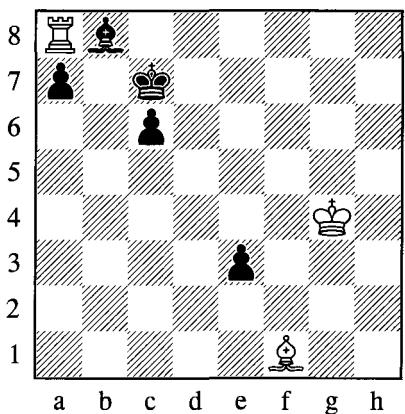
►Ex. 1-5◀

★★



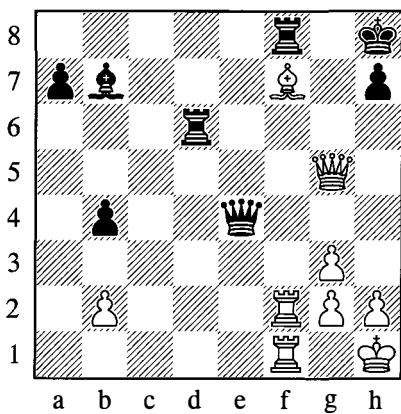
►Ex. 1-3◀

★★



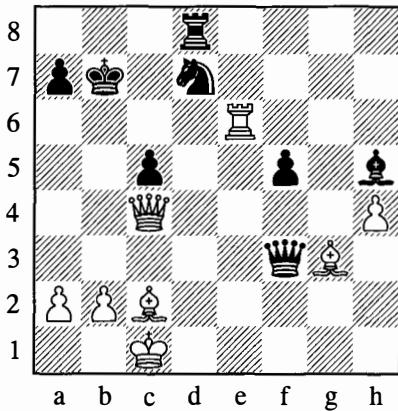
►Ex. 1-6◀

★★

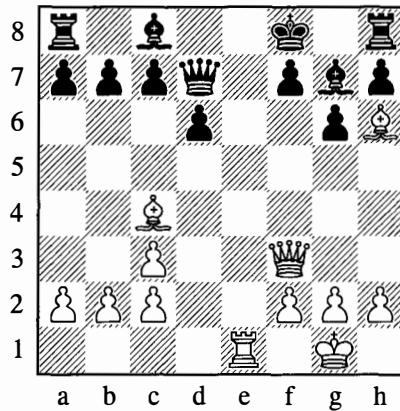


## Exercises

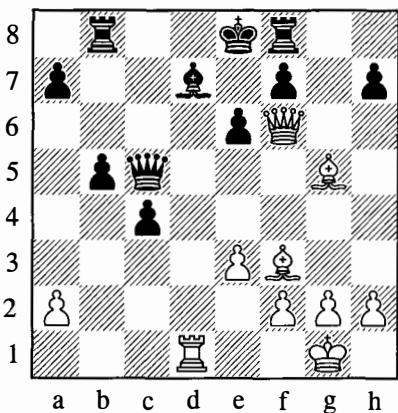
►Ex. 1-7◀



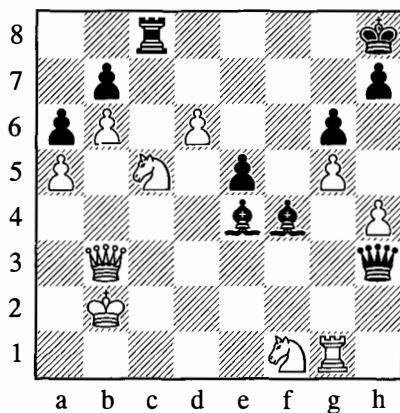
➤Ex. 1-10◀ ★★



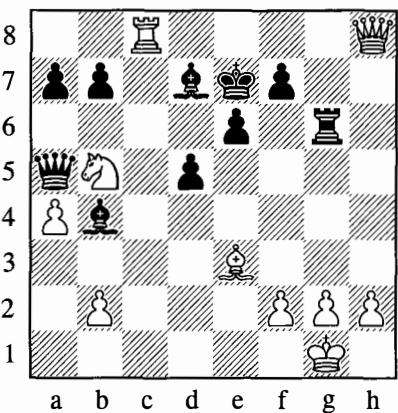
➤ Ex. 1-8 ◀



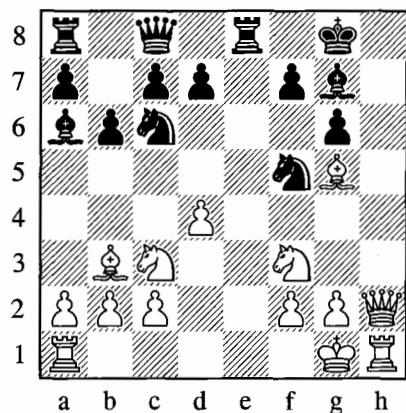
►Ex. 1-11◀ ★★★



➤ Ex. 1-9 ◀



➤Ex. 1-12◀ ★



# Solutions

## Ex. 1-1

**A.Alekhine – S.Gajdukevich**

Correspondence game 1907

**1.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$ !!**

(2 points)

The strongest continuation. However White is so well placed that he can also win without this sacrifice. For example: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  fxe5 2.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  (1 point) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}b4\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$  6.0–0–0 (threatening both  $\mathbb{Q}h4\#$  and  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ ) 6...  $\mathbb{Q}af8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  8.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$  – 1–0

Mate is not far off: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  (1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ ) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$  (or 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h7\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$  2...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$ ) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5\#$

## Ex. 1-2

Analysis by

**J.Capablanca**

1936

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$   $\mathbb{W}xd7$**

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  loses to 2.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  (or 2.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$ ).  
(1 point for this variation)

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$**   
(another 1 point)

## Ex. 1-3

The end of a study by

**V.Korolkov**

1935

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}a6!$**

(1 point)

Otherwise Black simply plays 1...  $\mathbb{Q}b7=$ .

**1...  $\mathbb{e}2!$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f3!$   $\mathbb{Q}xa8$**

If Black moves his bishop, the rook escapes from the corner, and 3...  $a6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xb8$  is also hopeless for him.

**4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6\#$**

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 1-4

**B.Kliukin – V.Gergel**

1971

White mates by force.

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  2.  $\mathbb{a}3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$   $\mathbb{b}xc4$**

3...  $b4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$

**4.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$**

(1 point)

## Ex. 1-5

**R.Bogdanovic – A.Suetin**

Budva 1967

Here too, White can mate by force.

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}d8\#$**

**1–0**

2...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  is met by 3.  $\mathbb{W}g5\#$ .

2...  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  succumbs to 3.  $\mathbb{W}g5\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  4.  $\mathbb{W}e5\#$ .  
(1 point for these variations)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  also loses quickly: 3.  $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$   
4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg4\#$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 1-6

Based on the game

**M.Euwe – G.Thomas**

Hastings 1934/5

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$**

1.  $\mathbb{Q}b3??$  is bad: 1...  $\mathbb{W}xg2\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1\#$

(1 point for this variation)

If 1.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$  then 1...  $\mathbb{Q}df6!$  gives Black chances to defend.

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf2$**

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8\#$  –

**2.  $\mathbb{W}g8\#$**

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 1-7

**A.Urzica – K.Honfi**

Bucharest 1975

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$**

(1 point)

# Solutions

The bishop check can equally well be delayed a move. Either of the continuations 1.  $\mathbb{W}a6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$  or 1.  $\mathbb{W}b5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$  also earn you 1 point.

1...  $\mathbb{fxe}4$

1...  $\mathbb{W}xe4$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xe4$   $\mathbb{fxe}4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}d5\#$

2.  $\mathbb{W}d5\#$

Or 2.  $\mathbb{W}a6\#$ .

2...  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}c6\#$

## Ex. 1-8

**Erbis – Kempf**

West Germany 1954

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$

(1 point)

This leads to a quick mate in all lines: 1...  $\mathbb{W}xc6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}e7\#$ ; or 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  2.  $\mathbb{B}d8\#$   $\mathbb{B}xd8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd8\#$ ; or 1...  $\mathbb{B}g8$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xd7$   $\mathbb{W}xg5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$ .

## Ex. 1-9

**M. Tal – N.N.**

USSR 1964

1.  $\mathbb{Q}b6!!$

(2 points)

There is an alternative solution available:

1.  $\mathbb{W}f8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$   $e5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$  (1 point)  
3...  $\mathbb{B}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$  (another 1 point for the whole variation).

1...  $\mathbb{W}xb6$

1...  $\mathbb{axb}6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}d8\#$

2.  $\mathbb{W}h4\#$

2...  $f6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h7\#$   $\mathbb{B}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$

3.  $\mathbb{W}xb4\#$

1-0

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 1-10

**Training position**

1.  $\mathbb{W}f6$

(1 point)

A typical tactical motif.

1...  $\mathbb{B}g8$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xh8\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$

(another 1 point)

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7\#$   $\mathbb{B}xg7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$  (also 1 point) is just as good.

2...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$

Taking the other bishop also leads quickly to mate: 2...  $\mathbb{W}xf7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}d8\#$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe8\#$   
3.  $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$   $\mathbb{W}f7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$

## Ex. 1-11

**V.Ivanchuk – A.Yermolinsky**

Frunze 1988

1...  $\mathbb{Q}c1\#$

(1 point)

0-1

Of course 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc1$  is simply met by 2...  $\mathbb{W}xb3\#$ .

If 2.  $\mathbb{Q}a2$  then 2...  $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}a3\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b1\#$   $\mathbb{W}b2\#$ .

(1 point for this variation)

2.  $\mathbb{Q}a1$  is answered by 2...  $\mathbb{B}xc5\#$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xh3$   $\mathbb{W}xa5\#$ .

(another 1 point for this variation)

## Ex. 1-12

**B.Rytov – A.Malevinsky**

USSR 1969

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$

(1 point)

It is just as effective for White to bring his bishop here a move later: 1.  $\mathbb{W}h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$  (also 1 point) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}cc7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  4.  $\mathbb{B}h8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$

1-0

All lines lead to mate:

- 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xh8\#$
- 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xh6$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xh6\#$
- 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$



## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **22**

- **19** points and above → **Excellent**
- **16** points and above → **Good**
- **12** points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **12** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Opening diagonals
- ✓ The light-squared bishop in the Queen's Gambit
- ✓ Fianchettoing the bishop
- ✓ Some guidelines for playing with the bishop

Diagram 2-1

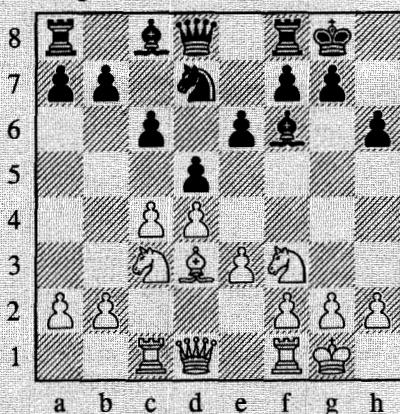
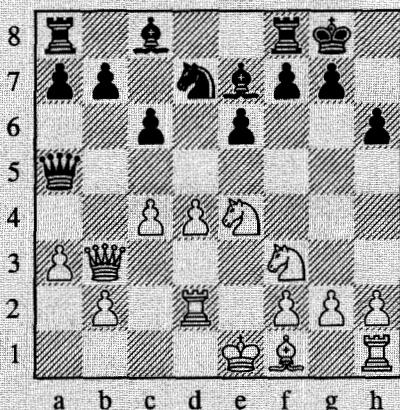


Diagram 2-2



## Diagonals

Just as rooks need open files, so bishops require open diagonals in order to take an active part in affairs. However, it is not always easy to find jobs for both of our bishops. If, for example, we have a lot of pawns on the light squares, then our dark-squared bishop will cooperate very well with them but the light-squared bishop will tend to be a problem. Black often has this type of difficulty in the Queen's Gambit. The bishop being a valuable piece, some attempt must be made to bring it into the game. So in the Queen's Gambit various plans have been developed for Black which involve the opening of a diagonal for the light-squared bishop.

## Theoretical variation

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5.e3 h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  0-0 8. $\mathbb{E}c1$  c6 9. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  10.0-0

Diagram 2-1

This is a well-known theoretical position. White is ready to take measures in the centre with e3-e4. First and foremost, Black must bring his light-squared bishop into play.

10... $\mathbb{d}xc4$  11. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  e5

A typical operation. Not only does the bishop on f6 become somewhat more active, but the bishop on c8 gets an open diagonal for its development.

12.h3  $\mathbb{d}xd4$  13. $\mathbb{d}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  14. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{E}e8$  15. $\mathbb{E}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}f5=$

The light-squared bishop is actively posted on f5, and Black solves his opening problems.

## V.Korchnoi – A.Yusupov

Barcelona 1989

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  7. $\mathbb{W}b3$  c6 8. $\mathbb{E}d1$  0-0 9.e4  $\mathbb{d}xe4$  10. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{W}a5\uparrow$  11. $\mathbb{E}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  12.a3  $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Diagram 2-2

Black is ready to strike in the centre with ...e5. In order to prevent that, White exchanges queens.

13.  $\mathbb{W}c3$   $\mathbb{W}xc3$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{E}d8$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$

**Diagram 2-3**

Now Black finds a different way to bring his light-squared bishop into the game.

15...  $b6!$  16.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  17.  $\mathbb{E}fd1$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $c5$

The bishop is activated, making the position level.

19.  $d5$

$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

19...  $exd5$  20.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  21.  $\mathbb{E}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  22.  $\mathbb{E}xd8\#$   
 $\mathbb{E}xd8$  would result in total equality.

On the whole there tend to be fewer problems with a fianchettoed bishop. But sometimes its scope may be limited by pawns, either our own or the opponent's. In that case we have to try to open the long diagonal so as to activate the bishop.

**Diagram 2-4**

**M.Euwe – M.Goldstein**

Weston 1926

Although the black bishop on h7 has an open diagonal, it has nothing to aim at. Meanwhile the white bishop on the long diagonal is restricted by the black barrier c6-b7. White opens the diagonal with a typical pawn thrust.

1.b5!  $cx b5$  2.  $cx b5$   $\mathbb{W}c7?$

Black would do better to play 2...  $b6$  here, as he will have to play it soon anyway.

3.  $\mathbb{W}d4$   $b6$

If 3...  $\mathbb{W}c1\#$  then 4.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $b6$  5.  $\mathbb{W}d7$  and Black cannot save his knight.

4.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\pm$

**Diagram 2-5**

We can see the difference between the bishops; the knight on e8 provides a target for the white bishop.

4...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $f6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$

Defending the knight is also hopeless: 6...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  8.  $exf6+-$

7.  $exd6$   $\mathbb{W}d8$  8.  $d7$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  9.  $\mathbb{W}a4$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  10.  $\mathbb{W}xa7!$   $\mathbb{W}d8$

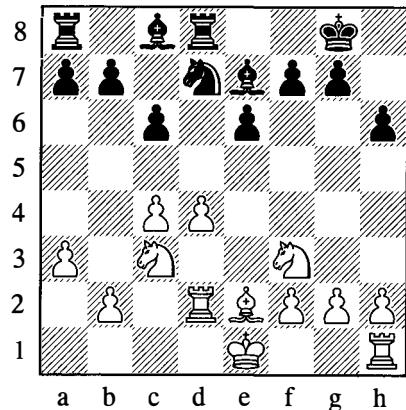
10...  $\mathbb{W}xa7$  11.  $d8\mathbb{W}\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  12.  $\mathbb{W}e8\#$

11.  $a4$

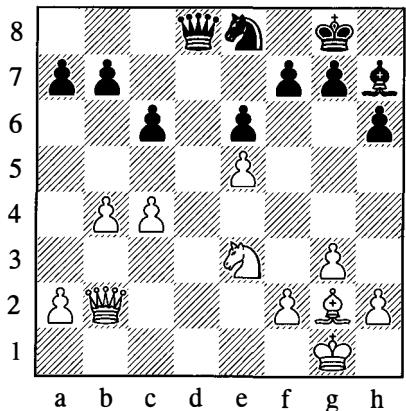
Black has no answer to 12.  $a5$ , creating a second passed pawn.

1-0

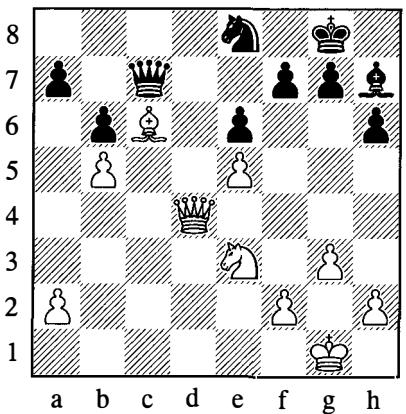
**Diagram 2-3**



**Diagram 2-4**



**Diagram 2-5**



## Strategy 1

On other diagonals too, the bishop often turns out to be a key piece. If we manage to open a diagonal for the bishop and to support its activity with our other forces, the opponent's situation may become difficult.

Diagram 2-6

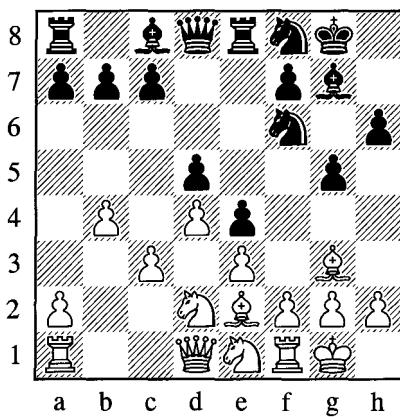


Diagram 2-6

G.Kamsky – J.Nunn

Belgrade 1991

White's strategy is based on the bishop on g3. It is protecting the kingside and at the same time doing useful work on the h2-b8 diagonal.

1.  $\mathbb{E}c1$

In such positions it is important to support the bishop with one or more of the other pieces. White prepares c3-c4, after which the rook and bishop will both be exerting pressure on c7.

The immediate 1.c4 was not bad either.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$

Black aims to get counterplay with ...g4 followed by ...h5-h4.

2. c4 c6 3. b5

3. cxd5?! would be a little more accurate, intending to advance with b4-b5 only if Black recaptures on d5 with the knight.

3... cxb5?! 4. cxb5  $\mathbb{E}e7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$  g4!

Black counters on the kingside, threatening ...h5-h4. White prepares a rescue operation for his g3-bishop.

6.  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  h5 7.  $\mathbb{W}c2$

Now the bishop will be able to go to c7.

7...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$ !?

7...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$ ! is correct, and after 8.  $\mathbb{W}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  the game is unclear

8.  $\mathbb{Q}c7$ !  $\mathbb{W}d7$  9. b6  $\mathbb{Q}e8$ !?

Black would do better to play 9... axb6 10.  $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  h4 11.  $\mathbb{W}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5\infty$ .

Diagram 2-7

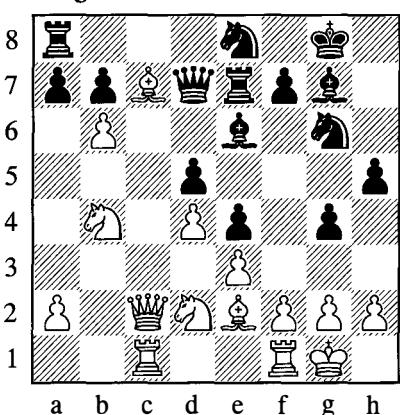


Diagram 2-7

10.  $\mathbb{W}c5$

White wants to activate his light-squared bishop too; the threat is 11.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$ .

10...  $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  11. bxc7  $\mathbb{E}c8$  12.  $\mathbb{W}xa7$

White can initiate some tactics: 12.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ ! (less good is 12...  $\mathbb{W}xc7$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  14.  $\mathbb{W}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}xc1$

15.  $\mathbb{E}xc1$   $\mathbb{E}xc1\uparrow$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}f1\pm$ ) 13.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{E}xc5$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{E}xd7$  Black has reasonable compensation for the exchange.

12...  $\mathbb{E}xc7$  13.  $\mathbb{W}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$

13...  $h4!?\pm$  might be a better attempt to obtain counterplay.

14.  $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$

White had a clear positional advantage, which he successfully converted into victory.

Of course, sometimes the bishop has to be developed to a relatively passive position. This may be necessary because we need to develop the rooks, and the best way to do that is to connect them. However, occasionally the a1-rook (or more rarely the h1-rook) can be brought into play without moving the bishop from c1 (or f1).

### A.Yusupov – Xie Jun

Linares 1997

1. e4 e5 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$  a6 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  dxc6 5. 0–0  $\mathbb{W}d6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}a3$  b5 7. c3 c5 8.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$  f6

Diagram 2-8

9.a4

White can develop his bishop after moving his d-pawn, but it would take some time for his a1-rook to get into the game. Instead White opens the a-file for a possible exchange of rooks, and thus develops his queenside more quickly.

9...  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  10. axb5  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$

10... axb5 would be followed by 11.  $\mathbb{E}xa8\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}xa8$  12. d4  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  13.  $\mathbb{E}e1$  with a dangerous initiative for White.

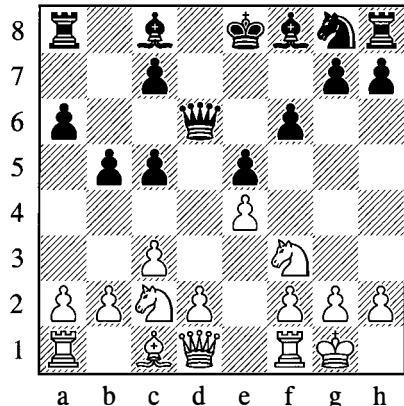
11. d4

White has a promising attack.

Here are a few useful guidelines, which can be very helpful in some (but not all!) situations.

1) **If a bishop is developed outside its own pawn chain, then pawns placed on the same-coloured squares as that bishop will not hamper the other bishop either.** So we can have both bishops in active posts. White follows this sort of strategy in, for example, the Torre Attack.

Diagram 2-8



## Strategy 1

2) **If a bishop is exchanged for a knight, you should try to place your pawns on the same-coloured squares as the bishop that has been exchanged** (Capablanca's rule). This will help avoid any weakness on these squares, and also free the other bishop.

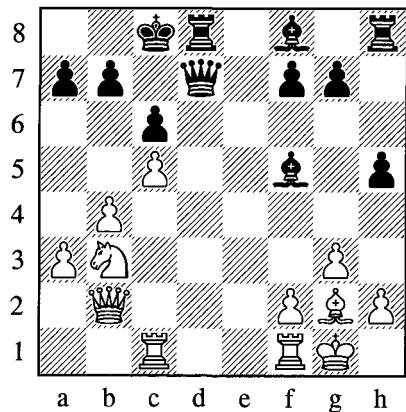
3) There are two contrasting strategies for combating an opposing bishop:

a) **Post your pawns on opposite-coloured squares to the bishop.** This is very effective in the endgame, but it is sometimes a disadvantage in the middlegame, as the opponent is allowed to control a lot of squares and can use them to penetrate with his pieces.

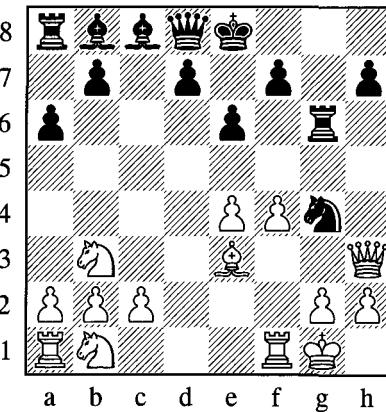
b) **Set up a barrier of pawns on squares of the same colour as the bishop.** This is often good in the middlegame, but care has to be taken in the endgame to ensure that the bishop cannot attack your pawn chain from the rear.

## Exercises

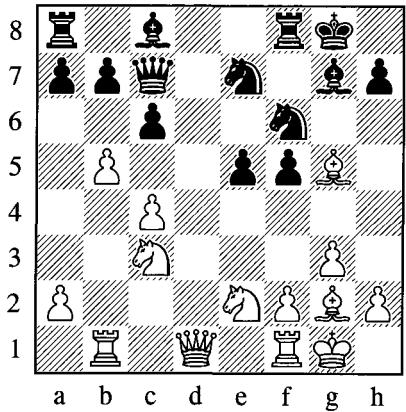
➤ Ex. 2-1 ◀ ★



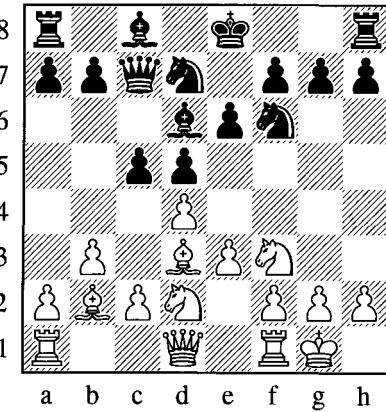
➤ Ex. 2-4 <      ★★★



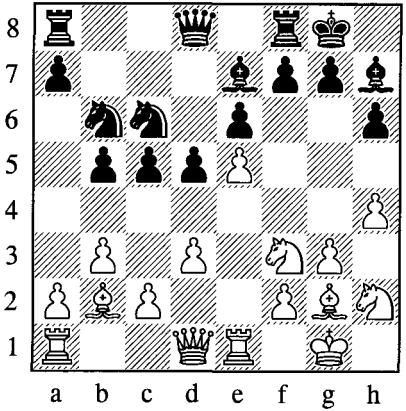
➤ Ex. 2-2 ◀



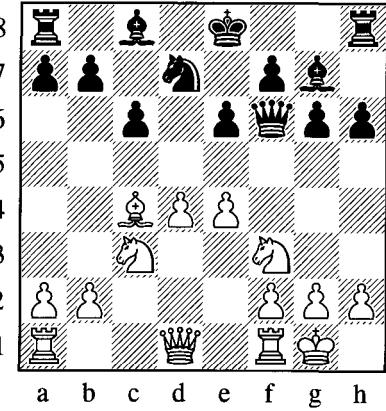
➤ Ex. 2-5 ◀ ★★



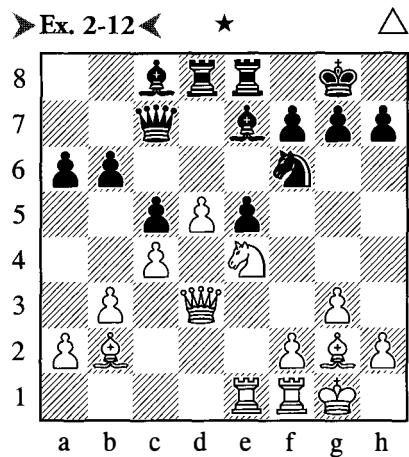
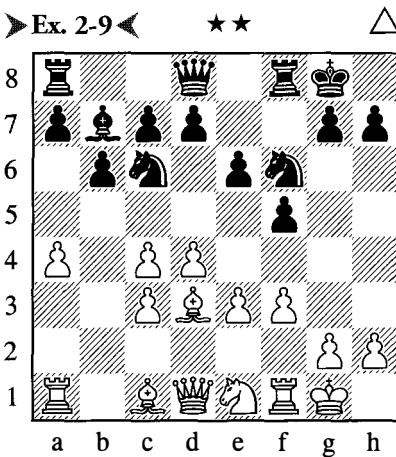
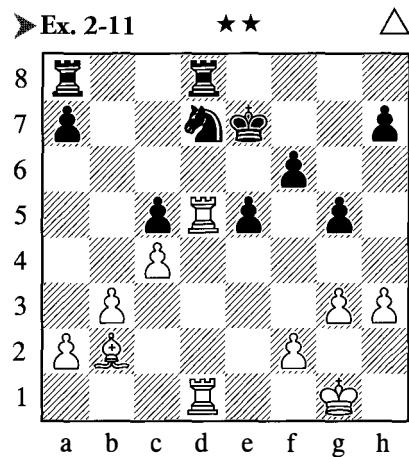
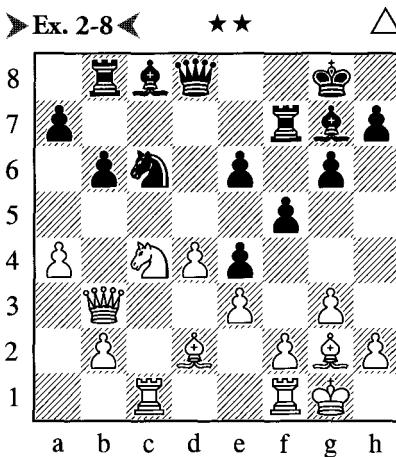
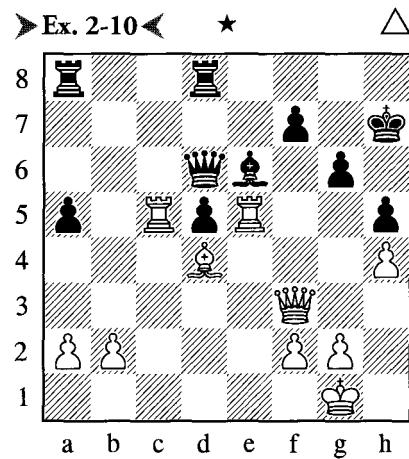
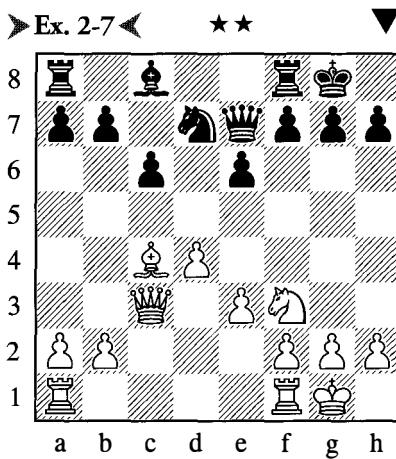
➤ Ex. 2-3 ◀ ★



► Ex. 2-6 ◀



# Exercises



# Solutions

## Ex. 2-1

**A.Lilienthal – S.Tartakower**

Paris 1933

**1.b5!**

(1 point)

Breaking up the black pawn chain and activating the g2-bishop.

**1...h4**

1...cxb5 2.c6 bxc6 3.♗xc6† ♖b8 4.♕e5!+–

**2.bxc6 bxc6 3.♗a5± hxg3**

After 3...h6 4.♗cd1 ♕c7 5.♗xd8† ♖xd8 6.♗d1† White has a powerful attack.

**4.hxg3**

4.fxg3!?+– is even stronger.

**4...♕c7**

Black had to try 4...♗h6, although White retains an attack with 5.♗cd1 ♕c7 6.♗xd8† ♖xd8 7.♗d1†.

**5.♗xc6 ♕d7 6.♗d4 ♕h3 7.c6 ♕d8 8.♗b7† ♕xb7 9.cxb7† ♖d7 10.♗xh3† ♕xh3 11.♗c6**

**1–0**

## Ex. 2-2

**S.Tiviakov – E.Gleizerov**

St Petersburg 1993

White exploits the active position of the fianchettoed bishop.

**1.bxc6 bxc6 2.♗b5!**

(1 point)

**2...cxb5**

Neither 2...♗d8?! 3.♗xd8 ♕xd8 4.♗c7!+– nor 2...♗a5?! 3.♗d6 ♕f7 4.♗c7!– is any good.

But Black could try 2...♗d7?! 3.♗d6±.

**3.♗xa8 bxc4 4.♗c3± ♕d8 5.♗a4 ♕d7 6.♗a3**

The tactical shot 6.♗b7!+– is very strong.

**6...♗xa8 7.♗xe7 ♕e8 8.♗b4 ♕e6 9.♗fd1 ♕c8? (9...♗d7±) 10.♗d6 ♕f7 11.♗a6 (11.♗b7!+–) 11...♗e7? 12.♗xf6 ♕xf6**

**13.♗d5 ♕xd5 14.♗xc8†**

**1–0**

## Ex. 2-3

**G.Vallifuoco – A.Yusupov**

Tunis 1979

**1...c4!**

(1 point)

Black provides support to his bishop on the h7-b1 diagonal.

**2.♗d4 ♕xd4 3.♗xd4 cxd3 4.cxd3**

Black has successfully created a weakness at d3.

**4...♗b4 5.♗e3 ♕c8 6.♗f3 ♕e7 7.g4 ♕c7 8.g5 h5 9.a4 bxa4 10.bxa4 ♕fc8 11.♗h2 ♗d7 12.♗g1 ♕c3 13.♗xc3 ♕xc3 14.♗e2 ♕c2†**

See Ex. 4-10 of *Boost Your Chess 1*.

## Ex. 2-4

**K.Kulaots – V.Chuchelov**

Istanbul 2003

**1...♗xe3! 2.♗xe3 ♕a7**

(1 point)

The pin on the a7-g1 diagonal brings Black a decisive advantage.

**3.♗d4**

3.♗c5 d6!–

**3...e5!**

(another 1 point)

Preparing ...e5 with 3...d6?! (also 1 point) is not quite as incisive, but it also promises Black a decisive advantage.

**4.fxe5 ♕g5!**

(another 1 point)

**5.♗f2**

5.♗xg5 ♕xd4!+–

**5...d6!**

**0–1**

Neither 6.♗xg5 ♕xg5 7.c3 dxe5!– nor 6.exd6 ♕f6† 7.♗e2 ♕xg2!+– offer White any hope.

# Solutions

## Ex. 2-5

**A.Yusupov – M.Chandler**

Hastings 1989/90

1...e5!

(2 points)

Black improves his position in the centre.

2.dxe5 ♜xe5 3.♘xe5 ♜xe5 4.♗b5† ♜f8!?

5.♗xe5 ♜xe5 6.♗e2 g6 7.♘e1 ♜g7 8.e4 dxe4 9.♘xe4 ♜xe4 10.♗xe4 ♜xe4 11.♗xe4 ♜e6 12.♗c4

½-½

## Ex. 2-6

**A.Yusupov – R.Knaak**

Altensteig 1993

1...e5!

(2 points)

A typical idea. Black attacks the white centre and opens the diagonal for his light-squared bishop.

2.d5 ♜b6 3.♗b3 0-0 4.a4 a5 5.♗e2 ♜g4=

6.♗fd1 ♜xf3 7.♗xf3 ♜xf3 8.gxf3 ♜fd8

9.♗ac1

½-½

## Ex. 2-7

**A.Yusupov – G.Dizdar**

Sarajevo 1984

1...b6!

(2 points)

Black fianchettos his light-squared bishop.

He is unable to arrange to play ...e5 here. After 1...♗e8?! 2.♗fd1 e5? 3.dxe5 ♜xe5?

4.♘xe5 Black cannot recapture the knight: 4...♗xe5? 5.♗xe5 ♜xe5 6.♗d8†+-

2.♗d3 ♜d8 3.♗fd1 ♜b7 4.♗e2=

White should not fall for 4.♗a6?! ♜c5! although he can just about survive: 5.♗a3! ♜xa6 6.dxc5 ♜b5=

## Ex. 2-8

**A.Yusupov – J.Timman**

Candidates Match (1), Linares 1992

1.f3!±

(2 points)

Opening the long diagonal for the bishop.

1...exf3 2.♗xf3 ♜b7

White is also doing well after both 2...♗e7 3.♗b4± and 2...♗c7 3.♗a3±.

3.♗xc6!

This strong follow up secures an advantage for White.

3...♜xc6 4.♗e5 ♜xa4!? 5.♗xf7 ♜xb3!?

6.♗xd8 ♜xd8 7.♗c3! ♜d5 8.♗fc1+-

White intends to exchange a pair of rooks with ♜c8, after which Black clearly lacks compensation.

## Ex. 2-9

**E.Geller – H.Kramer**

Helsinki Olympiad 1952

1.♗a2!

(2 points)

In this way White develops his queen's rook. After an eventual e3-e4, the c1-bishop will be activated.

1...♗a5 2.♗af2 ♜e7 3.♗e2 d6 4.e4 fxe4

5.fxe4 e5 6.♗g5±

## Ex. 2-10

**A.Yusupov – S.Barbeau**

Skien 1979

1.♗xh5†!

(1 point)

1.♗f6 (threatening ♜xh5†) is less convincing, as Black can struggle on with 1...♗g8.

1-0

Black is quickly mated by 1...gxh5 2.♗xh5† ♜g8 3.♗h8#.

# Solutions

## Ex. 2-11

R.Reti – J.Szekely

Debrecen 1913

1.f4!

(2 points)

Opening the long diagonal for the bishop. Black is then unable to release the pin, since a knight move can be met by ♜xf6†.

1...gx f4 2.gxf4 exf4 3.♗f2±

The weakness of the c5- and f6-pawns gives White the advantage.

3...♝e8

Black should try to obtain counterplay with 3...a5 followed by ...a4.

4.♗f3 ♜e7 5.♗xf4 ♜e6 6.♗d6† ♜e7 7.♗f5

1–0

## Ex. 2-12

S.Tartakower – J.Kleczynski

Poland Ch, Lodz 1927

1.f4!

(1 point)

1...♝xe4?

1...exf4 was a better defensive try, although White has 2.♗xf6† ♜xf6 3.♝xe8† ♜xe8 4.♗xf6 gxf6 5.♝xf4±.

2.♗xe4 exf4 3.♗xh7† ♜f8 4.♗xf4+– ♜d6

5.♗ff1

The direct 5.♗xf7†? is also good. After 5...♝xf7 6.♗f1 the black king is too exposed to survive for long.

5...♝e5 6.♗xe5! ♜xe5 7.d6! ♜c6

7...♝xd6 8.♗xe5!+–

8.♗xe5

1–0

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is 20

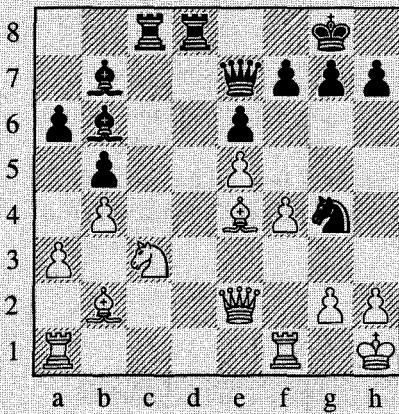
- 17 points and above → Excellent
- 14 points and above → Good
- 10 points → Pass mark

*If you scored less than 10 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Forcing the play after a queen sacrifice
- ✓ Material compensation
- ✓ Attacking the opposing queen

Diagram 3-1



## Queen sacrifices

In this chapter we shall study combinations in which the strongest piece is sacrificed. Such queen sacrifices are relatively rare, because it takes extremely well-coordinated pieces to be able to mount a mating attack without the queen. If we are contemplating a queen sacrifice, we have to check the variations very carefully. We must try to make the play as forcing as possible, in order to prevent the opposing queen from successfully leading a counter-attack. We should be aware that although the queen is very strong, it does not show itself at its best in defence; to a certain extent this is because it is so valuable.

Diagram 3-1

G.Rotlewi – A.Rubinstein

Lodz 1907

1... $\mathbb{W}h4!$ 

Black brings his queen into the attack.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xh2!$  is also very strong. If 2. $\mathbb{W}h5$  then simply 2... $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$  kills all hope.

2.g3

2.h3 is met by 2... $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$  and now:

3. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3\#$  4. $\mathbb{g}xh3$   $\mathbb{W}xh3\#$  5. $\mathbb{W}h2$   $\mathbb{W}xh2\#$
3. $\mathbb{W}xg4$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3\#$  4. $\mathbb{W}xh3$   $\mathbb{W}xh3\#$  5. $\mathbb{g}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4\#$
6. $\mathbb{W}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$  8. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$  9. $\mathbb{Q}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$

c) 3. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  4. $\mathbb{W}xg4$  (or 4. $\mathbb{W}xe4$   $\mathbb{W}g3!+)$  4... $\mathbb{W}xg4$  5. $h\times g4$   $\mathbb{Q}d3!$  The threat of mate on h3 nets Black a material advantage. 6. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3+$

2... $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$ 

All of Black's pieces are attacking. To speed up his attack along the long diagonal, Black sacrifices his queen.

3. $\mathbb{g}xh4$ 

White cannot really decline the sacrifice:

3. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4\#$  4. $\mathbb{W}xe4$   $\mathbb{W}xh2\#$
3. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  (4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}xh2+)$  4... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g1$  (nor is 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  any better, in view of 6... $\mathbb{W}h3\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$  8. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ ) 6... $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  (9. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ ) 9... $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$  White's situation is hopeless.

**3...♝d2!**

With this new sacrifice, the white queen is deflected from the defence of the e4-bishop.

**4.♛xd2**

White loses in all variations:

- a) 4.♛xg4 ♜xe4† 5.♝f3 ♜xf3→
- b) 4.♜xc3 ♜xe2 5.♝f2 ♜xe4† 6.♝g1 ♜xf2† 7.♝f1 ♜f3 8.♝d1 ♜xh2#
- c) 4.♝xb7 ♜xe2 5.♝g2 ♜h3→
- d) 4.♝ae1 ♜xe4† 5.♛xe4 ♜xh2#

**4...♜xe4† 5.♝g2 ♜h3!!→****Diagram 3-2****0-1**

Rubinstein's Immortal Game! White resigned because of mate in three: 6.♝f3 (or 6.♝f2 ♜xf2 7.♛xe4 ♜xh2#) 6...♜f3 7.♝d4 ♜xd4 8.♛xf3 ♜xh2#

Very interesting situations can arise when in return for the sacrificed queen a player obtains some material compensation (often a rook plus a minor piece), along with an attack on the opposing king. This attack can sometimes be combined with threats against the opposing queen.

**Diagram 3-3****E.Geller – B.Spassky**

Moscow 1964

**1...♝g5!**

This move prepares a queen sacrifice. Spassky has accurately calculated the required variations and correctly evaluated the position.

**2.♝c7**

2.♝xf8† ♜xf8 3.♝c7 is even worse for White: 3...♜e3† 4.♝h2 ♜f2† 5.♝h1 ♜xd2 6.♝xd7 ♜e4† 7.♝g1 ♜e2#

**2...♛xc7!! 3.♝c7 ♜e3† 4.♝g2**

The other king move is no better: 4.♝h2 ♜xd2 5.♝xf8† ♜xf8 6.♝xd5 ♜f2† 7.♝g2 (7.♝g3 transposes to the game) 7...♜e4→

**4...♜xd2 5.♝xf8† ♜xf8**

Spassky has only got a rook and knight for the queen. However, his forces are very well coordinated and are attacking the white king, which has been stripped of defenders.

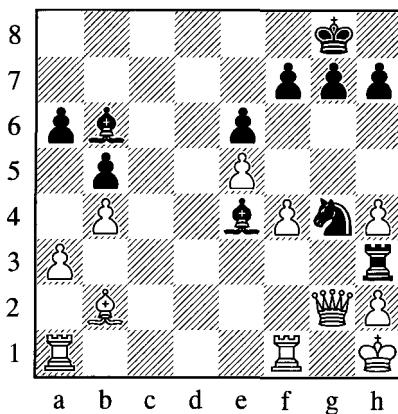
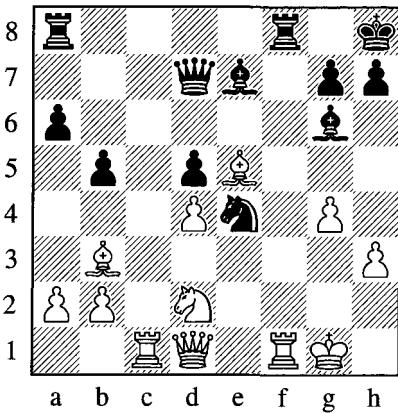
**Diagram 3-2****Diagram 3-3**

Diagram 3-4

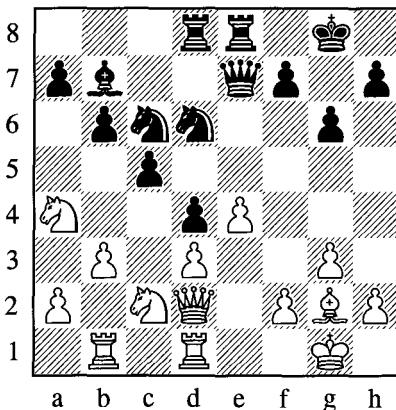


Diagram 3-5

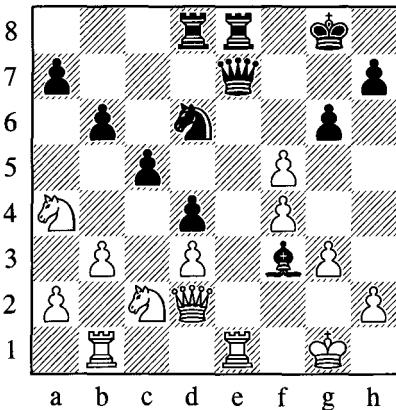
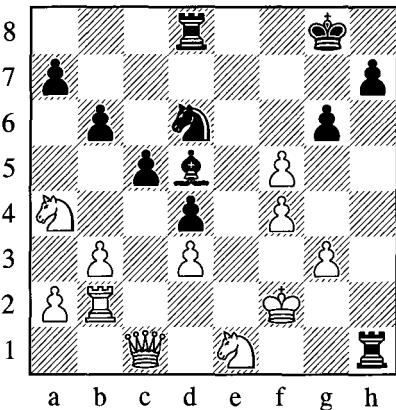


Diagram 3-6 (analysis)



6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{E}f2\#$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $h6$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}d8$   $\mathbb{E}f8$   
0-1

White has no sensible way to defend against the threat of ... $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$ .

Diagram 3-4

V.Smyslov – M.Tal

Moscow 1964

1... $\mathbb{E}5!$ 

Black opens up the game and prepares a combination.

2.  $exf5$   $\mathbb{Q}e5!$  3.  $f4$ 

After 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7?$   $\mathbb{W}xb7$ , the threat of ... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$  gives Black the advantage.

3...  $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  5.  $\mathbb{E}e1$ 

Diagram 3-5

5... $\mathbb{W}e2!!$ 

A positional queen sacrifice! Tal only gets a rook for the queen, but he has faith in the strength of his active pieces.

6.  $\mathbb{E}xe2$   $\mathbb{E}xe2$  7.  $\mathbb{W}e2$ 

Hoping to survive in a worse endgame.

If Smyslov had dared to hang on to the queen with 7.  $\mathbb{W}c1$ , then Tal intended to play 7...  $\mathbb{E}g2\#$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ . Black has a very dangerous initiative, and will have at least a perpetual check with ... $\mathbb{E}h1-h2\#$  in reserve. A possible continuation is: 9.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  10.  $\mathbb{E}b2$   $\mathbb{E}h1\#$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$

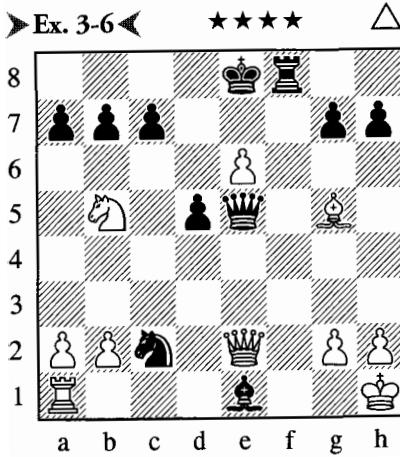
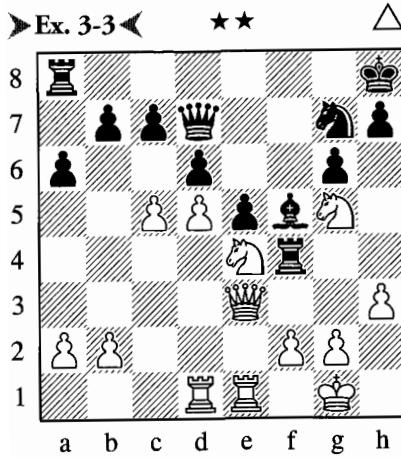
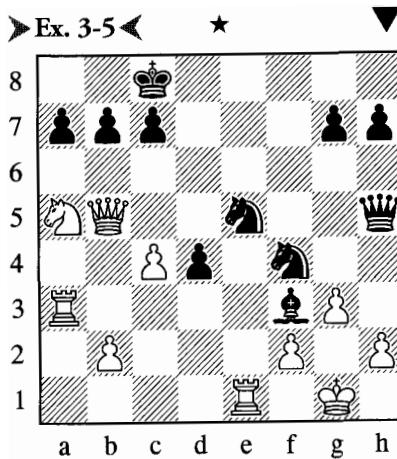
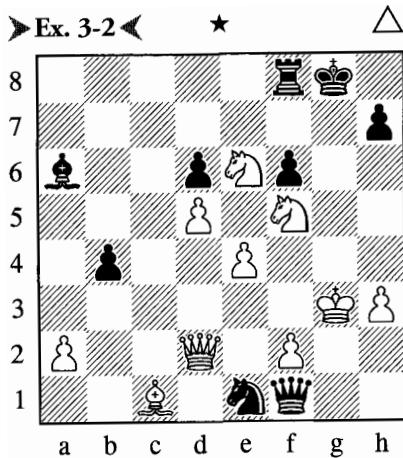
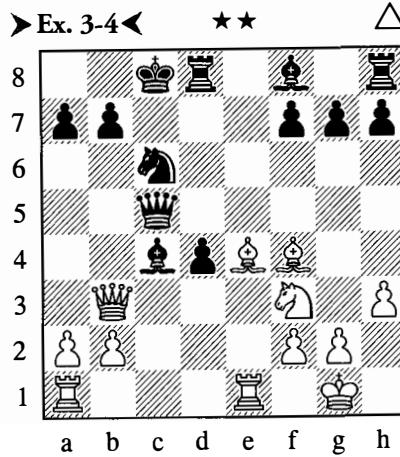
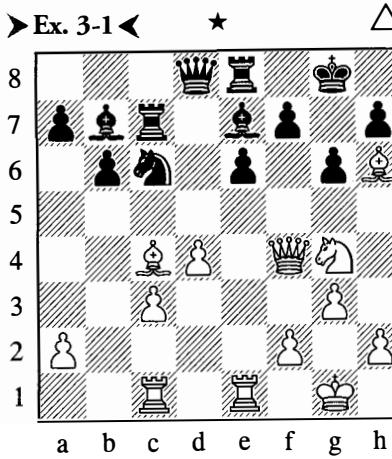
Diagram 3-6

11...  $\mathbb{Q}xf5?$  12.  $g4$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $h5$  14.  $gxh5$   $gxh5$   
Black's threats to the white king (such as ... $h4\#$  followed by ... $\mathbb{E}f8$ ) are overwhelming.

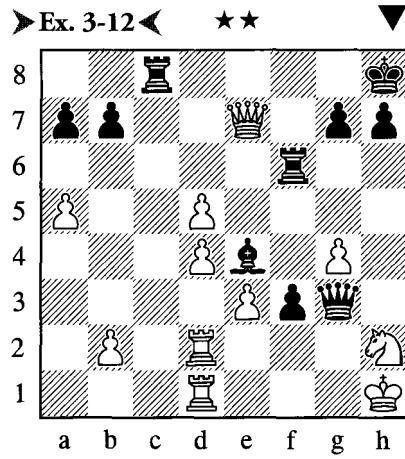
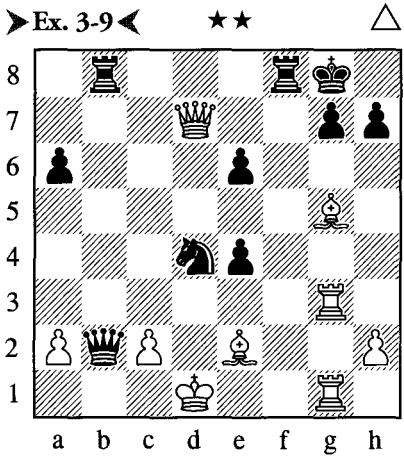
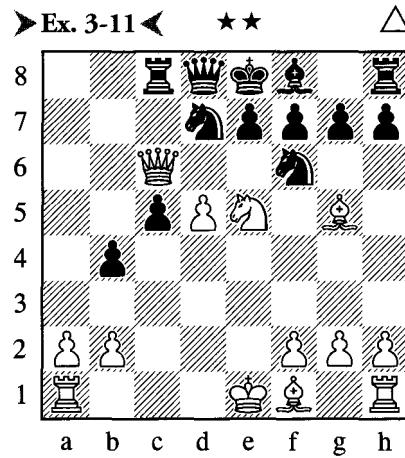
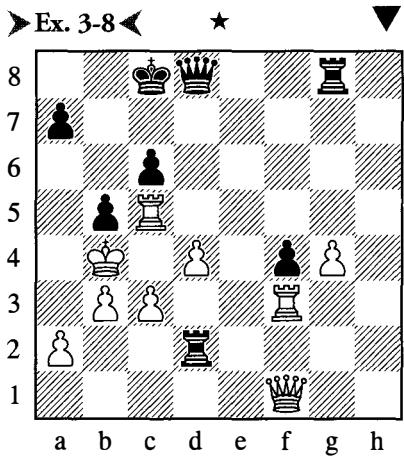
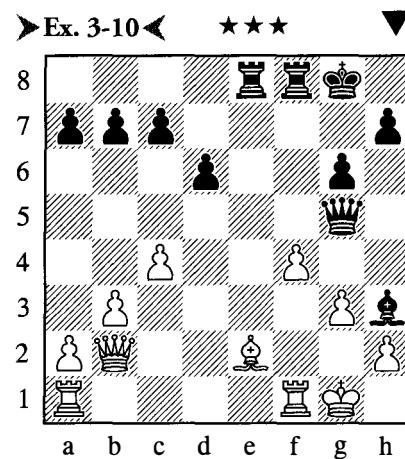
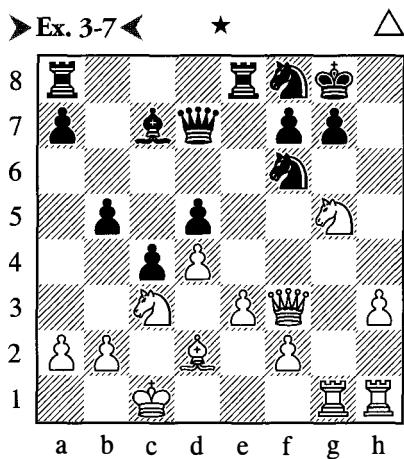
8...  $\mathbb{E}xe2$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $gxh5!$ 

Black is better (see *Boost Your Chess 2*, Ex. 17-5).

# Exercises



## Exercises



# Solutions

## Ex. 3-1

J.Bolbochan – L.Pachman

Moscow Olympiad 1956

1.  $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 3-2

S.Urusov – Kalinovsky

St Petersburg 1880

1.  $\mathbb{W}g5\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}e7\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b2\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 3-3

Em.Lasker – W.Steinitz

St Petersburg 1895

1.  $\mathbb{W}xf4\#$

White can play his moves in a different order. You also get 1 point for: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$  2.  $\mathbb{W}e7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xf4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h4\#$

1...  $\mathbb{W}xf4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$

(1 point)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$

The black queen cannot flee: 2...  $\mathbb{W}b5$ ? 3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$

(another 1 point for this variation)

If 2...  $h6$  then 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $h\times g5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ .

3.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7\#$

## Ex. 3-4

Variation from the game

S.Tarrasch – S.Tartakower

Berlin 1920

1.  $\mathbb{W}xc4\#$

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{W}xc4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$

(1 point)

2...  $\mathbb{W}e6$  is more resilient: 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $fxe6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6\#$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4\#$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$

(another 1 point)

4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  is just as good: 4...  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$

4...  $\mathbb{Q}b5$

4...  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8\#$

7.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}a8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8\#$

5.  $\mathbb{Q}c1\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7\#$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8\#$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$

## Ex. 3-5

K.Emmrich – B.Moritz

Germany 1922

In the game, Black went on to lose after missing the forced mate:

1...  $\mathbb{W}xh2\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xh2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 3-6

M.Tal – Miller

Los Angeles 1988

1.  $h4\#$

(2 points)

Of course not 1.  $\mathbb{W}xe5??$   $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$ .

1...  $\mathbb{W}g3$

If 1...  $\mathbb{W}xe2$  then 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc7\#$ .

2.  $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$

(another 1 point)

Threatening both  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  and  $\mathbb{Q}d3$ .

2...  $\mathbb{Q}f2$

2...  $c6$  is met by 3.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{W}b8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ .

3.  $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$

(another 1 point)

3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc7\#$  also wins: 3...  $\mathbb{W}xc7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}b5\#$   $\mathbb{W}c6$

5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $g\times f6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$

9.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$  10.  $e7\#$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$

3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf2$

3...  $\mathbb{W}xf2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc7\#$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5.  $e7\#$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5\#$

# Solutions

## Ex. 3-7

A.Tolush – G.Mititelu

Warsaw 1961

1.  $\mathbb{W}xf6!!$   $\mathbb{g}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}ge4\#$

(1 point)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  is met by 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ , not only threatening mate on g8, but also attacking the queen on d7.

1-0

## Ex. 3-8

Based on the game

Syversen – J.Podgorny

Correspondence game 1933

1...  $\mathbb{W}a5\#$ !! 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{E}xa2\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  a5#

(1 point)

## Ex. 3-9

H.Westerinen – G.Sigurjonsson

New York 1977

1.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$ !!  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$

(1 point)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$  or 2...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$ .

3.  $\mathbb{E}g8\#$ !

But not 3.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ ??  $\mathbb{E}xf6$  4.  $\mathbb{E}g8\#$   $\mathbb{E}xg8\#$ .

3...  $\mathbb{E}xg8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$   $\mathbb{E}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4\#$ +-

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 3-10

V.Alatortsev – I.Boleslavsky

USSR Ch, Moscow 1950

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ !

(1 point)

2.  $\mathbb{f}xg5$   $\mathbb{E}xe2$  3.  $\mathbb{W}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}g2$ +-

(another 1 point)

The bishop is very well placed on the long diagonal.

3...  $\mathbb{Q}h3$  (also 1 point) is not bad either, although White can struggle on with 4.  $\mathbb{g}4\#$ .

## 4. $\mathbb{W}d3$

4.  $\mathbb{E}e1$  is followed by: 4...  $\mathbb{E}xe1\#$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xe1$   $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xf1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ +- Effectively Black has an extra pawn in this ending.

(another 1 point for this variation)

4...  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  5.  $\mathbb{E}f1$

No better is 5.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{E}xh2$  6.  $\mathbb{W}d4$  c5 and now:

- a) 7.  $\mathbb{W}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$  (or 8.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{E}f1\#$ ) 9.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4\#$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{E}e2\#$ ) 8...  $\mathbb{E}ff2$ +-
- b) 7.  $\mathbb{W}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{E}e8\#$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{E}h1\#$ +-

5...  $\mathbb{E}g2\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$  7.  $\mathbb{E}xf8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  8.  $\mathbb{W}f1\#$   $\mathbb{E}f2\#$

0-1

## Ex. 3-11

Vogel – Barlov

West Germany 1981

1.  $\mathbb{Q}b5!$

(1 point)

1.  $\mathbb{W}b5\#$  is less clear.

1.  $\mathbb{W}a4$   $\mathbb{E}a8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}c6$   $\mathbb{E}c8$  leads to a repetition of moves.

1...  $\mathbb{E}xc6$  2.  $\mathbb{d}xc6!$

(another 1 point)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$

2...  $\mathbb{W}c7$  is met by: 3.  $\mathbb{c}xd7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  (3...  $\mathbb{Q}d8$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{W}b6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$ +-

3.  $\mathbb{c}7\#$ +-

## Ex. 3-12

G.Salwe – A.Rubinstein

Lodz 1907

1...  $\mathbb{W}e1\#$ !!

(1 point)

The less spectacular 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  (1 point) also wins.

2.  $\mathbb{E}xe1$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{E}h6\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$  (3.  $\mathbb{E}h2$   $\mathbb{W}f2$ !+-) 3...  $\mathbb{f}2\#$

4.  $\mathbb{E}xf2$   $\mathbb{E}h1\#$

2...  $\mathbb{f}2\#$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xe4$   $\mathbb{f}xe1\mathbb{W}\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}xd2\#$

(1 point)

White will quickly be mated.

0-1

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **22**

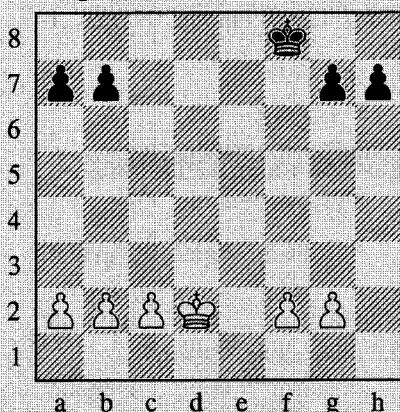
- 19 points and above → **Excellent**
- 15 points and above → **Good**
- 11 points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **11** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ The standard plan of ‘winning by deflection’
- ✓ The ‘semi-stalemate’ method
- ✓ Drawn positions
- ✓ Positions with fixed rook’s pawns and an extra pawn on the other wing
- ✓ The endgame of g- and h-pawns against an h-pawn

Diagram 4-1



## Realizing a material advantage in a pawn ending

“In pawn endings one extra pawn is sufficient for a win, apart from some rare exceptions. It is not especially difficult to realize such an advantage in material.” – Averbakh

In the following example we shall examine the standard plan of **winning by deflection**.

Diagram 4-1

M.Euwe – A.Olland

Amsterdam (10) 1922

1.c4

White has an advantage in material on the queenside. Therefore it is logical that he will create a passed pawn there.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$

1) “Before creating a passed pawn, it is usually a good idea to improve the position of one’s king.” – Averbakh

The white king advances into the centre, in order to prevent counterplay by the opposing king and to support its own pawns.

2... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$  a5 4.b3

White does not have to hurry. Pay attention to how Euwe advances his pawns. Instead 4.a3?! a4 would have allowed a blockade on the queenside.

4... $\mathbb{Q}d6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d4$  b6 6.a3

2) “One has to create a passed pawn and then queen it.” – Averbakh

Counterplay on the kingside is easily thwarted, since Black does not have a pawn majority there.

6...h5 7.b4 g5

6...axb4 7.axb4 g5 8.c5† bxc5† 9.bxc5†  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  would be slightly more resilient, but White nevertheless wins: 10. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  11. $\mathbb{Q}f5$  g4 12. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  13. $\mathbb{Q}xh5+$ –

3) “If the opposing king manages to stop the pawn, the stronger side’s king makes use of the deflection

that has occurred in order to break through towards the opposing pawns and gain a decisive advantage in material.” – Averbakh

### 8.bxa5 bxa5 9.c5† ♜c6 10.a4 h4

If Black tries 10...g4, then 11.g3! prevents the creation of a passed pawn.

#### Diagram 4-2

11.f3!

Black is now denied the chance to continue ...g4.

11...♜c7 12.♝d5 ♜d7 13.c6† ♜c7 14.♝c5 ♜c8

15.♝b6 ♜b8 16.♝xa5

White wins another pawn on the queenside. Black naturally has no chance against two passed pawns.

1–0

If the pawns are not totally fixed, the stronger side can make use of another winning plan: playing for zugzwang and thus putting the opposing king in a ‘semi-stalemate’ situation.

#### Diagram 4-3

1.b6!

The plan with deflection does not win here, because the black king can reach the saving f8-square in time: 1.♝d5 ♜b6 2.♝e5? (White can return with 2.♝c4 and still win as in the main line) 2...♜xb5 3.♝f5 ♜c6 4.♝xg5 ♜d7 5.♝xh4 ♜e7 6.♝g5 ♜f8= 1...♜b8 2.♝c6 ♜c8 3.b7† ♜b8 4.♝b6

This is the ‘semi-stalemate’ method. Black now has to surrender his g-pawn.

4...g4 5.hxg4 h3 6.♝c6+–

“However, an extra pawn does not automatically guarantee victory in a pawn ending. Specific factors in the position can not only considerably complicate the stronger side’s task, they can also deprive it of all chances of success.” – Averbakh

#### Diagram 4-4

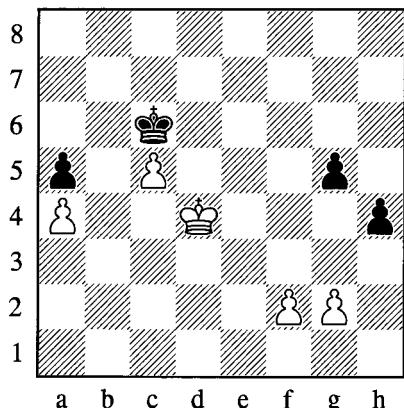
P.Romanovsky

1960

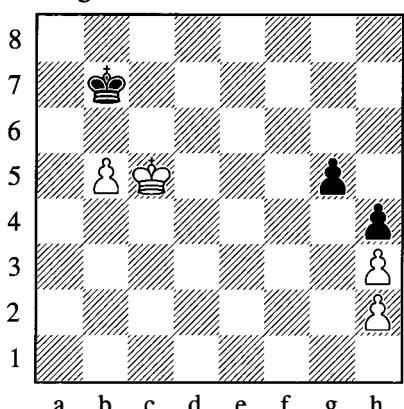
1.e5

1.♝c5?? ♜e5+–

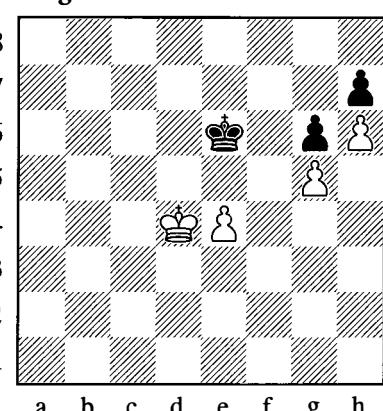
#### Diagram 4-2



#### Diagram 4-3



#### Diagram 4-4



## Endgame 1

1... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  3. $e6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$

Black takes advantage of the pawn structure on the kingside and his proximity to that side.

4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$

White uses triangulation, which does gain him access to f6; but even that is not enough to win the game.

4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  achieves nothing, in view of 4... $\mathbb{Q}d8$  5. $e7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e6$  stalemate.

4... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$

6... $\mathbb{Q}d8?$  7. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  8. $e7\#$

7. $\mathbb{Q}e5$

### Diagram 4-5

7... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$

7... $\mathbb{Q}f8??$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  9. $e7\#$

8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  9. $e7\#$  10. $\mathbb{Q}g7$

White has executed the deflecting plan, but his king will find itself trapped in the corner.

10... $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  11. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$   $\mathbb{Q}f7=$

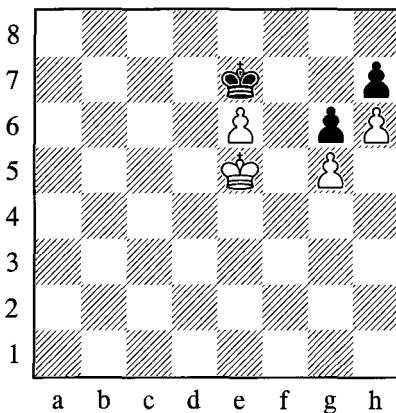
The white king cannot escape from its prison.

12. $\mathbb{Q}h8$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  13. $h7$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  stalemate!

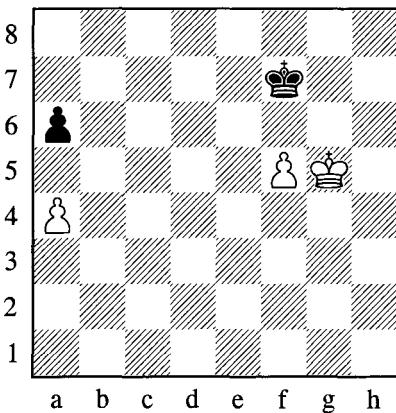
We shall take a look at another two important theoretical positions.

Various rules have been formulated for **positions with fixed rook's pawns and an extra pawn on the other wing**, but I find that it can be difficult to remember these rules. The following example simply gives a few useful pointers, which are helpful in coming to a quick evaluation.

### Diagram 4-5



### Diagram 4-6



### Diagram 4-6

M.Dvoretsky

2002

In order to win, White has to capture the black pawn without letting the opposing king reach the c8-square.

1. $a5!$

**Some important guidelines:**

1) If the stronger side's rook's pawn has reached the opponent's half of the board, the position is always won.

2) For the defending side, it is important to advance



his rook pawn as far as possible. (If it were Black's move, 1...a5 would be sufficient to draw.)

3) In a standard situation (pawns on a4 and a5), it is better for the stronger side not to advance his passed pawn too far. Otherwise, whenever he surrenders that pawn, the opposing king can get to c8 (or c1) more quickly.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   
 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  6. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$ –

The white king prevents the opposing king from going to the saving square c8.

## The ending with g- and h-pawns against h-pawn

**Diagram 4-7**

### Theoretical position

1.h3

Because the black pawn is ideally placed on h7, the only way White can try to win is to seize the h6-square for his king. But to do this he has to move his h-pawn too soon. Subsequently he will no longer have the choice between a single or double move with his h-pawn, and so will be unable to put his opponent in zugzwang: 1.h4 ♖h8! (or 1...♖f8) 2.♔h6 (2.♔f6 ♖g8 3.♔e7 ♖g7 4.♔e6 ♖g8 5.♔f6 ♖f8 6.g5 ♖g8 7.h5 h6=) 2...♖g8 (see the rule about colours below) 3.g5 ♖h8 4.h5 ♖g8=

If White tries 1.♗h5 then Black can draw by an exchange of pawns: 1...h6! 2.♗h4 ♗g6 3.♗g3 h5!= 1...♗g8!

Black must choose the correct square!

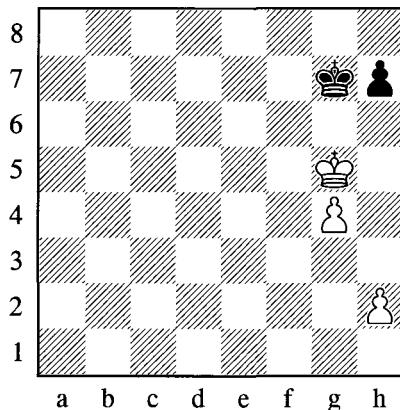
2.  $\text{h}6 \text{ h}8$

For the defender here, there is a **rule about colours**:

If the connected pawns are on squares of different colours, then the kings (after the white king gets to h6) must also be on squares of different colour (that is, Black must be able to answer  $\mathbb{K}h6$  with ... $\mathbb{K}g8$ ). But if the pawns are on squares of the same colour, the kings must also be on squares of the same colour (Black must be able to answer  $\mathbb{K}h6$  with ... $\mathbb{K}h8$ ).

3.g5 ♔g8 4.h4 ♔h8 5.h5 ♔g8 6.g6 hxg6 7.hxg6  
♔h8 8.g7† ♔g8=

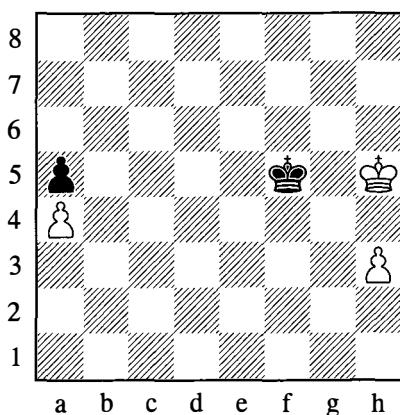
Diagram 4-7



# Exercises

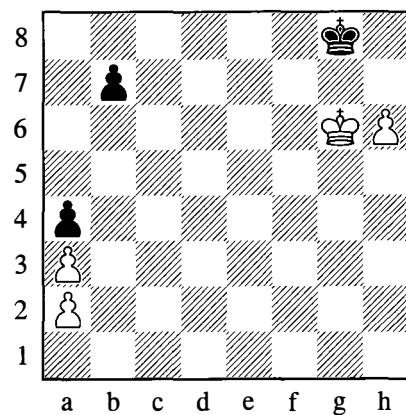
► Ex. 4-1 ◀

★★



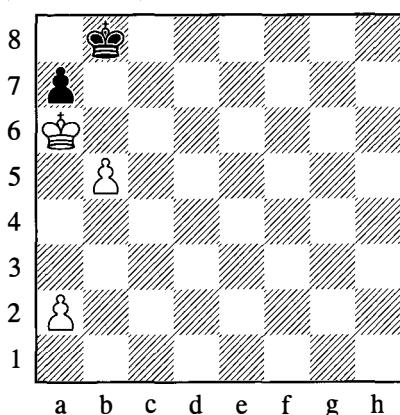
► Ex. 4-4 ◀

★



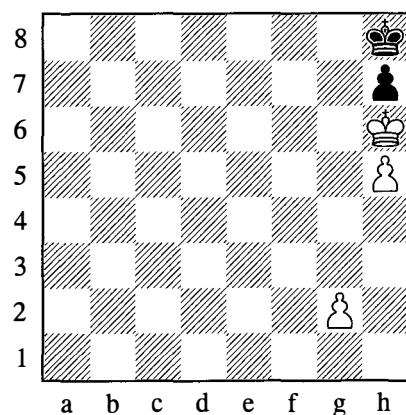
► Ex. 4-2 ◀

★



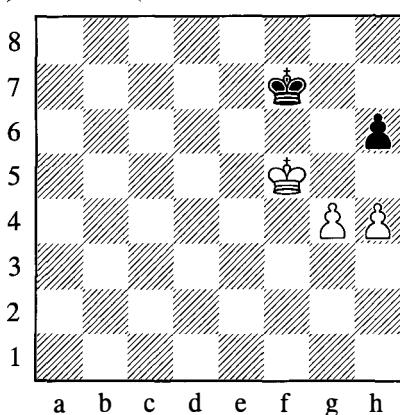
► Ex. 4-5 ◀

★



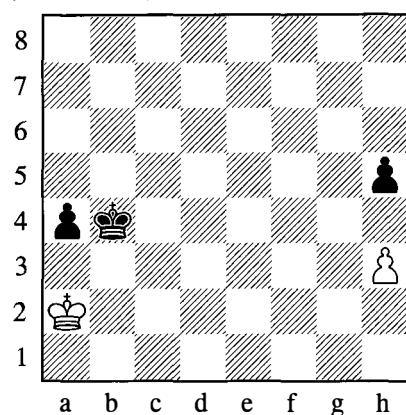
► Ex. 4-3 ◀

★

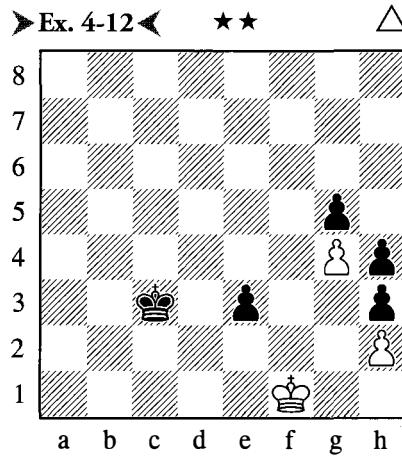
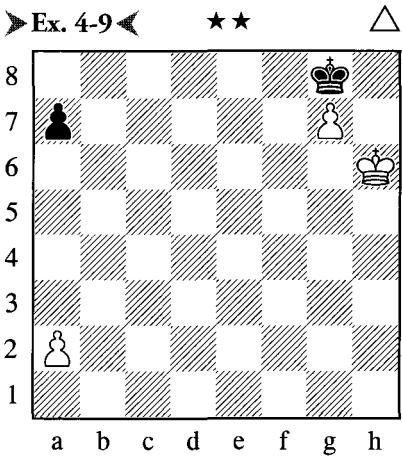
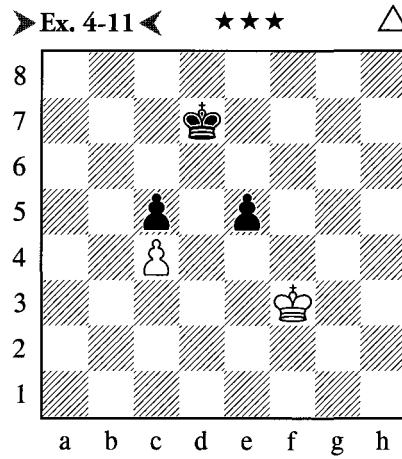
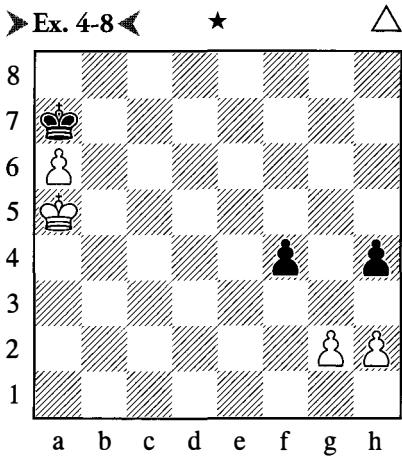
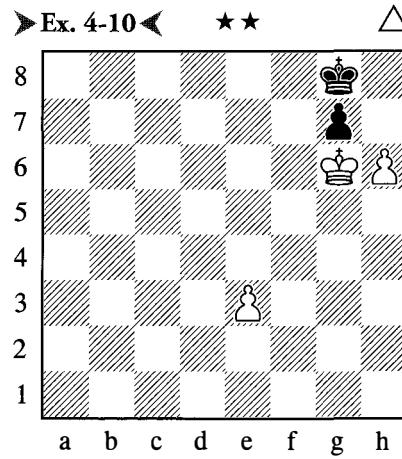
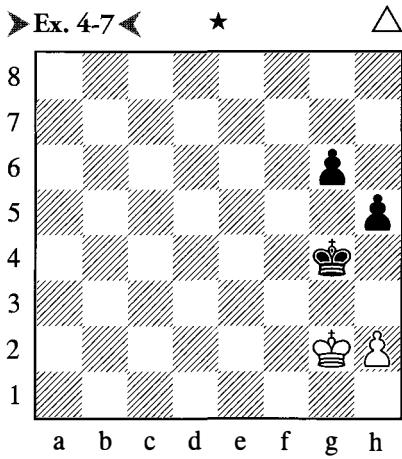


► Ex. 4-6 ◀

★



# Exercises



# Solutions

## Ex. 4-1

The end of a study by

**M.Dvoretsky**

2002

**1... $\mathbb{Q}f4!$**

(1 point)

As we already know, in positions with fixed rook's pawns and an extra pawn on the other wing, it is to the defender's advantage to entice the passed pawn forward (see Guideline 3).

1... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$  would be bad: 2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  9. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  10. $\mathbb{Q}b7+-$

**2.h4**

Immediately heading for the queenside also fails to win: 2. $\mathbb{Q}g6$   $\mathbb{Q}g3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{Q}c8=$

**2... $\mathbb{Q}f5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h6$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.h5**

4. $\mathbb{Q}h7$   $\mathbb{Q}f7!$  also leaves White unable to make progress: 5.h5  $\mathbb{Q}f6!$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g8$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f7$   $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  8. $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  9. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  11. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  12. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{Q}c8=$

**4... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$**

Or 5. $\mathbb{Q}h7$   $\mathbb{Q}f6!$  and draws as in the previous note.

(another 1 point for this variation)

**5... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  8. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  9. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  11. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  12. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}c8=$**

## Ex. 4-2

**Training position**

**1.a3!**

(1 point)

See the rule about colours. The double advance throws away the win: 1.a4?  $\mathbb{Q}a8$  2.a5  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  3.b6 axb6 4.axb6  $\mathbb{Q}a8$  5.b7†  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}b6=$

**1... $\mathbb{Q}a8$  2.a4  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  3.a5  $\mathbb{Q}a8$  4.b6 axb6 5.axb6  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  6.b7+-**

## Ex. 4-3

The end of a study by

**T.Von der Lasa**

**1.h5!**

(1 point)

Since the black pawn has already moved there is no longer any chance of stalemate in the corner, and White easily wins by means of zugzwang.

**1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f6$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g6+-$**

## Ex. 4-4

**Training position**

**1.h7†**

White employs the 'semi-stalemate' method.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}e6?$  would be bad: 2... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}e7=$   
**1... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  2. $\mathbb{Q}h6$  b6 3. $\mathbb{Q}g6$  b5 4. $\mathbb{Q}h6$  b4 5.axb4 a3 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  7.b5+-**

(1 point)

## Ex. 4-5

The end of a study by

**J.White**

1873

**1.g4!**

(1 point)

See the rule about colours.

1.g3? would be a mistake: 1... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  2.g4  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.g5  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.g6  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  6.g7†  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g6=$   
**1... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  2.g5  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.g6  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.g7+-**

## Ex. 4-6

**Training position**

**1.h4!=**

(1 point)

Guidelines 1 and 2. White must certainly avoid 1. $\mathbb{Q}b2??$  h4 and Black wins.

# Solutions

## 1...a3

Going for the pawn straight away is no better: 1... $\mathbb{Q}c4$  2. $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xh4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}g3$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f1=$   
**2. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}c3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}a2$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xa3$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  5. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}g3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xh4$  8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}g3$  9. $\mathbb{Q}f1=$**

## Ex. 4-7

The end of a study by

**M.Zinar**

1988

## 1. $\mathbb{Q}g1!$

(1 point)

See the rule about colours. Other moves lose:

- a) 1. $\mathbb{Q}h1?$   $\mathbb{Q}h3$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $h4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $g5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $g4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $g3$  6. $hxg3$   $hxg3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $g2-$
- b) 1. $h3\#?$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $h4-$

**1... $\mathbb{Q}h3$  2. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $g5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $g4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $h4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $g3$  6. $hxg3$   $hxg3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $g2\#$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $g3$  stalemate**

## Ex. 4-8

**Training position**

## 1.h3!+-

(1 point)

1. $\mathbb{Q}b5??$  would be a horrendous blunder:  
1... $h3\#-$   
**1... $\mathbb{Q}a8$  2. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}xa6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xf4-$**

## Ex. 4-9

**P.Van Zuylen van Nijevelt**

1792

## 1. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$

(1 point)

Other moves lead to a draw:

- a) 1. $a4?$   $a5=$
- b) 1. $a3?$   $a6!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g6$   $a5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f6$   $a4=$

It is important to be able to choose whether to advance the a-pawn one square or two!

## 1...a6

Or 1... $a5$  2. $a3!$   $a4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$ .

## 2. $a4!$ $a5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f6+-$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 4-10

The end of a study by

**F.Prokop**

1929

## 1.h7† $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}f7$

(1 point)

White only draws after 2. $e4?$  stalemate, or 2. $\mathbb{Q}f5?$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  3. $e4$   $\mathbb{Q}g8=$ .

## 2... $g5$ 3. $e4$ $g4$ 4. $e5$ $g3$ 5. $e6$ $g2$ 6. $e7$ $g1\mathbb{W}$ 7. $e8\mathbb{W}\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ 8. $\mathbb{W}e4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 9. $\mathbb{W}h4\#$

(another 1 point for this variation)

## Ex. 4-11

The end of a study by

**J.Hasek**

1946

## 1. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$

(1 point)

1. $\mathbb{Q}e4?$  is obviously bad: 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6-$

Note that after 1. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$  Black should not reply: 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6?$  2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $e4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $e3$  7. $c5$   $e2$  8. $c6$   $e1\mathbb{W}$  9. $c7$   $\mathbb{W}b4\#$  10. $\mathbb{Q}a7$  (10. $\mathbb{Q}c6?$   $\mathbb{W}e4\#-$ ) 10... $\mathbb{W}a5\#$  11. $\mathbb{Q}b7$   $\mathbb{W}b5\#$  12. $\mathbb{Q}a7$   $\mathbb{W}c6$  13. $\mathbb{Q}b8$   $\mathbb{W}b6\#$  14. $\mathbb{Q}a8=$

The correct way to answer 1. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$  is by 1... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}g6+-$ .

(another 1 point for this variation)

## 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6$

Black does not get anywhere with: 1... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  (2... $\mathbb{Q}d6$  returns to the main line)

3. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}a5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$   $\mathbb{Q}b6!=$

## 2. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4. $\mathbb{Q}g4!=$

(another 1 point)

# Solutions

## Ex. 4-12

The end of a study by

S.Shigis

1930

**1. ♖e2 ♖d4 2. ♖f3! ♖d3** stalemate

(1 point)

Giving up the e-pawn also fails to win: 2...e2  
3. ♖xe2 ♖e4 4. ♖f2 ♖f4 5. ♖g1 ♖xg4 6. ♖h1  
♖f3 7. ♖g1 g4 8. ♖h1 g3 9. ♖g1= An unusual  
drawn position!

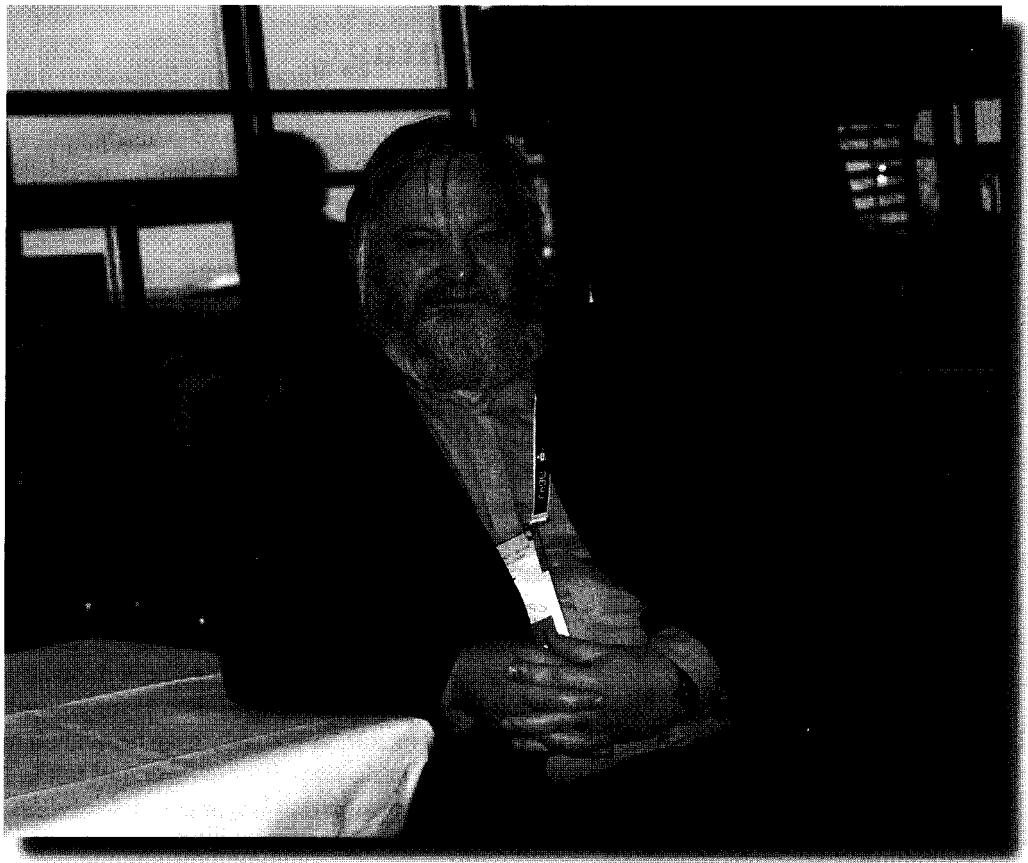
(another 1 point for this variation)

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is 18

- 16 points and above → Excellent
- 12 points and above → Good
- 9 points → Pass mark

*If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*



The author in  
relaxed mood at the 2008 Olympiad  
in Dresden

## Contents

- ✓ Two methods
- ✓ How to force an exchange of pieces
- ✓ Combining both methods

## Realizing a material advantage

This important practical theme was already dealt with in Chapter 13 of *Build Up Your Chess 1*. The side with a material advantage has at its disposal two different methods of converting it.

We can **play for an attack** with the justified hope that we can make our extra forces count.

The second method is used more often. If we **simplify the position** (exchange pieces), then we can normally realize our material advantage more easily. However, less experienced players often make the typical mistake of simply chasing the opponent's pieces about, in the vague hope that the opponent will tire and allow the exchange of pieces. It is much better to **put your pieces in active positions**. Then the opponent will be the one trying to exchange off these active pieces.

In some cases both methods can be combined: the threat of an attack can force the desired simplification of the position. Or an exchange may be offered, and if the opponent declines this exchange and moves his piece away, then an attack becomes possible.

We shall look at some practical examples.

Diagram 5-1

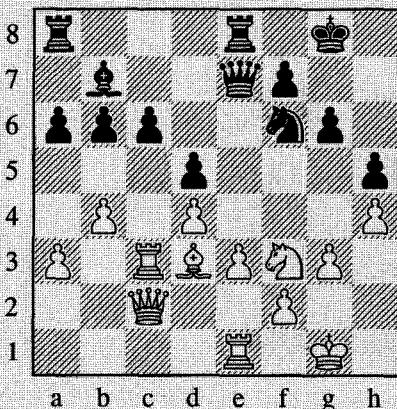


Diagram 5-1

A.Yusupov – A.Reuss  
German Ch, Altenkirchen 2005

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4?$

This move allows White to occupy the important e5-square, and leads to the loss of a pawn.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g4!$  is correct. Then after 2.e4  $\mathbb{W}f6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $dxe4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{E}ad8$  Black obtains counterplay.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $dxe4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{E}ac8$  4. $\mathbb{E}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5. $\mathbb{W}xe4!$

It is correct to take the central pawn. 5... $\mathbb{Q}xc6?$  would give Black more chances. For example: 5... $\mathbb{W}d6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{E}xc3$  7. $\mathbb{W}xc3$   $\mathbb{E}c8$  8. $\mathbb{W}e1$   $\mathbb{E}xc1$  9. $\mathbb{W}xc1$  f6 10. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  Black has good play for the pawn.

5... $c5$  6. $\mathbb{W}f4$   $cx b4$

6...f6 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  would not be good: 8.bxc5 (or 8.dxc5  $\mathbb{W}d5$  9.f3  $\mathbb{W}xf3$  10.c6  $\mathbb{W}xf4$  11. $\mathbb{Q}xf4+-$ )

8... $\mathbb{W}d5$  9.f3 g5 10.hxg5 fxg5 11. $\mathbb{W}d6$   $\mathbb{W}xf3$

12.c6+-

**7.axb4 a5 8. $\mathbb{B}xc8?$ !**

The exchange of rooks results in serious technical problems for White, since Black can obtain dangerous counterplay on the long diagonal.

The best option is perhaps 8.bxa5!? bxa5 9. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{B}xc3$  10. $\mathbb{B}xc3$  followed by  $\mathbb{Q}c5$ , with advantage to White.

White could also consider 8.b5  $\mathbb{B}xc3$  9. $\mathbb{B}xc3$ , although 9...a4 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  offers Black some counterplay.

**8... $\mathbb{B}xc8$  9. $\mathbb{B}xc8$   $\mathbb{B}xc8$  10.bxa5**

After 10. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{W}e6$  11. $\mathbb{W}c7$  a4 Black's passed pawn is dangerous.

**10...bxa5 11. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{W}b7!$**

**Diagram 5-2**

**12.d5**

Here White saw that the planned 12. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$  is followed by 12... $\mathbb{W}b1\#$  13. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  with the annoying threat of ... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ . If White is forced to play f2-f3, then his king will inevitably be exposed to perpetual check. So White changed his plans and aimed for play against the opposing king.

**12... $\mathbb{W}b1\#$  13. $\mathbb{Q}h2$**

The rest of the game was heavily influenced by time trouble.

**13... $\mathbb{W}f1?$**

Black should have played 13... $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ . For example: 14. $\mathbb{W}e5\#$  (14.g4  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  15.f3  $\mathbb{W}a2\#$  16. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}a1=$ ) 14... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  15. $\mathbb{W}e7$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  16. $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  17.f3 (17. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  18. $\mathbb{W}e7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6=$ ) 17... $\mathbb{W}c2\#$  18. $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{W}f2!=$  Black forces a draw.

**14. $\mathbb{W}e5\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  15. $\mathbb{W}f6!$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$**

**Diagram 5-3**

Black threatens to take on f2, but White had prepared a surprising combination.

Instead 15... $\mathbb{W}h3\#$  16. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  loses to 17. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  18. $\mathbb{Q}xg6\#$ .

**16. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  17. $\mathbb{Q}xg6\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  18.d6**

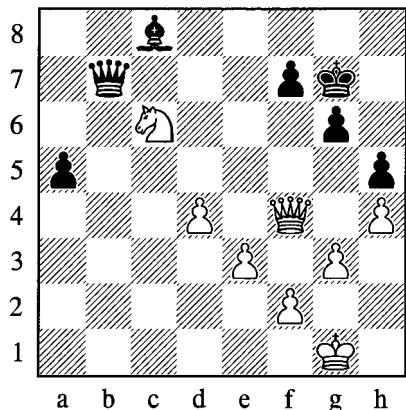
The threat is  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ .

**18... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  19.d7**

**1-0**

Technique failed to do the job on this occasion, but fortunately tactics came to the rescue.

**Diagram 5-2**



**Diagram 5-3**

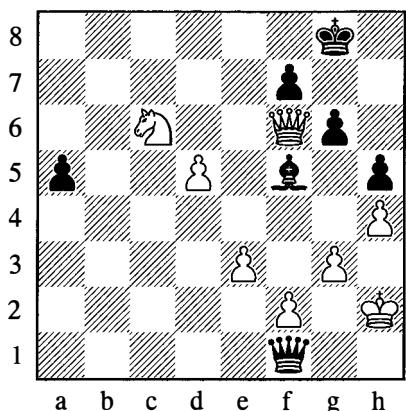


Diagram 5-4

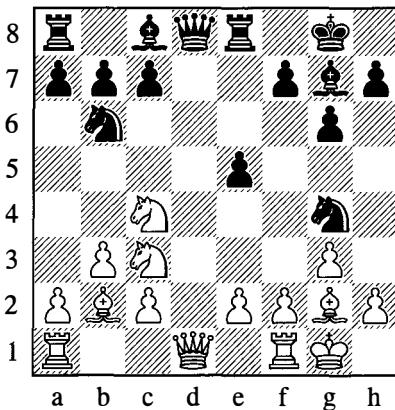


Diagram 5-5

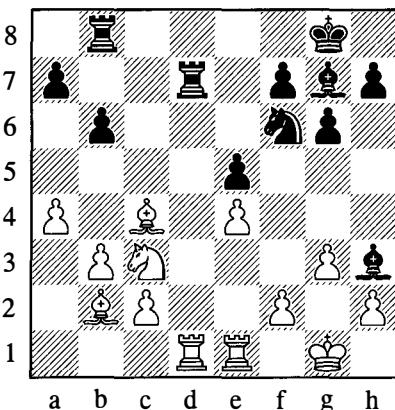


Diagram 5-6

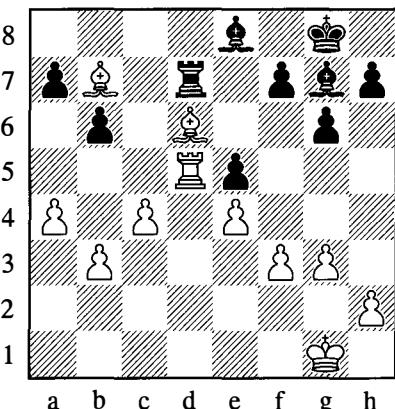


Diagram 5-4

A.Yusupov – A.Zapata

Innsbruck 1977

White quickly obtains an advantageous endgame. His bishop on the long diagonal exerts strong pressure on b7.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xb6!$   $\mathbb{C}xb6$

1...  $\mathbb{A}xb6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xd8$   $\mathbb{E}xd8$  3.  $\mathbb{E}fd1$  is quite similar to the game. For example: 3...  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  (3...  $\mathbb{E}e8?$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ –) 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2?$  (4...  $\mathbb{E}ab8\pm$ ) 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xa8$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ –

2.  $\mathbb{W}xd8$   $\mathbb{E}xd8$  3.  $\mathbb{E}ad1$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$

Black surrenders his b7-pawn. 3...  $\mathbb{E}e8?$  would be even worse for Black after 4.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$ .

4.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7\pm$   $\mathbb{E}ab8$  5.  $\mathbb{E}e4$

White consolidates his position.

5.  $\mathbb{E}d7$

5...  $\mathbb{E}xd1$  6.  $\mathbb{E}xd1$   $\mathbb{E}xb7$  7.  $\mathbb{E}xf5$   $\mathbb{G}xf5?$  loses to 8.  $\mathbb{E}d8\pm$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}a3$ .

6.  $\mathbb{E}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  7.  $a4$   $\mathbb{Q}h3$  8.  $\mathbb{E}fe1$   $\mathbb{E}d7$  9.  $\mathbb{E}c4$

Diagram 5-5

It is clear that Black has not obtained sufficient compensation. White wants to swap off some pieces in order to avoid possible counterplay.

9...  $\mathbb{E}bd8$  10.  $\mathbb{E}xd7$   $\mathbb{E}xd7$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  12.  $\mathbb{E}xd5$

The simplest, as the bishop is very well placed on d5. I prefer this to taking with the pawn: 12.  $\mathbb{E}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2$  15.  $f4\pm$

12...  $\mathbb{E}c7$  13.  $c4$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  14.  $f3$

Opening up the way for the white king.

14...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Otherwise the bishop could be in danger after  $g3-g4$ .

15.  $\mathbb{Q}a3\mp!$

Activating the other bishop.

15...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{E}c8$  17.  $\mathbb{E}d1$

White continues to improve the position of his pieces.

17...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}b7$

The simple 18.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$  would be even better.

18...  $\mathbb{E}d8$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{E}d7$

Diagram 5-6

20.  $\mathbb{Q}a6\!+\!–$

White now noticed that 20.  $\mathbb{Q}c6?$  is met by 20...  $\mathbb{E}xd6$ ! 21.  $\mathbb{E}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  and Black gets good drawing

## Realizing a material advantage

chances in the endgame with opposite-coloured bishops: 22.♗xg6† hxg6 23.♗xe8 a5±

**20...f6 22.♗b8! ♜e7 22.♗d8**

Now the white rook is also very actively posted.

**22...♗f8 23.♗f1!**

It could be useful to avoid the possible check from the c5-square.

**23...♗f7 24.♗d6 ♜e6 25.c5**

25.♗xf8 ♜xf8 26.♗a8 ♜e7 27.♗b5 a5 28.♗b8 would also be good enough.

**25...♗e7 26.♗a8 ♜xd6 27.♗c4**

Gaining the exchange makes the win even simpler.

**27...♗xc5 28.♗xe6† ♜e7 29.♗c4 a5 30.♗a7† ♜d6**

**31.♗xh7 ♜d4 32.h4 ♜c5 33.♗h8 ♜d7 34.g4 ♜b4**

**35.h5 gxh5 36.gxh5**

**1-0**

**Diagram 5-7**

**A.Yusupov – K.Shirazi**

Lone Pine 1981

White's next move is played according to the motto: 'Why do things simply when you can complicate matters!'

**1.g5?**

1.♗e6! is correct, and after 1...♗xb3† 2.♗f4+– the white passed pawns are far ahead in the race.

**1...♗e5!**

White had overlooked this resource. Now the win requires a bit more work.

**2.♗f7**

2.♗g4? would allow Black to save the game by 2...♗g1† 3.♗h5 ♜f4!=.

**2...♗f1† 3.♗g4!**

This is more logical than 3.♗e2 ♜xf5 4.g6±. The king should be trying to support its passed pawns.

**3...♗g1† 4.♗h5 ♜f4! 5.♗g7!**

5.g6?? would be a tragic conclusion after 5...♗h1#.

**5...b5**

5...♗xf5 loses to 6.♗f7† ♜e5 7.♗xb7.

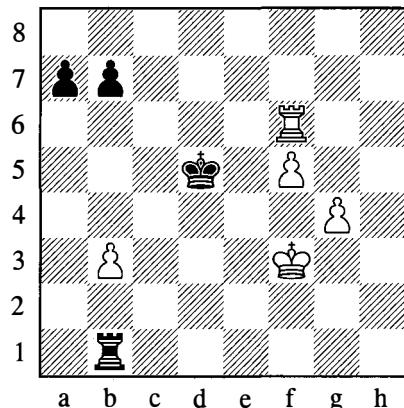
**6.f6 ♜f5**

Black tries to exploit the position of the white king on the edge of the board.

**7.♗h4 ♜f4 8.♗h3 ♜f3 9.♗h2 ♜g2† 10.♗h1 ♜d2**

**Diagram 5-8**

**Diagram 5-7**



**Diagram 5-8**

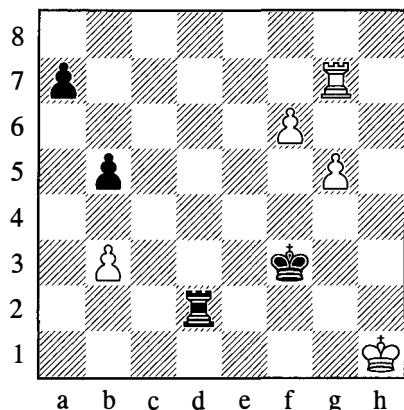
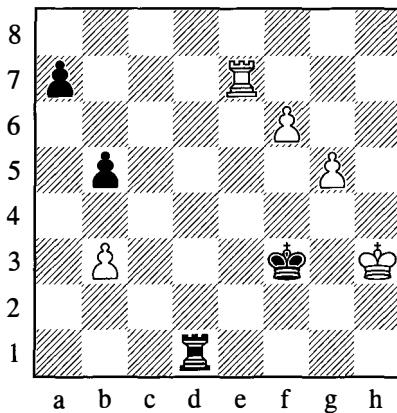




Diagram 5-9



**11.♕e7!**

White plays carefully and sidesteps a trap set by his opponent. 11.f7?? would lose to 11...♗g3 and mate is unavoidable.

**11...♗d1† 12.♗h2 ♗d2† 13.♗h3 ♗d1**

Diagram 5-9

**14.♗e3†!**

Winning a decisive tempo.

**14...♗xe3 15.f7 ♗f1 16.g6+–**

The white pawns are unstoppable.

**16...♗d4 17.♗g2 ♗f6 18.g7 ♗xf7 19.g8♗ ♗f5**

Such endgames are difficult only when the defence can construct a fortress, which is not the case here.

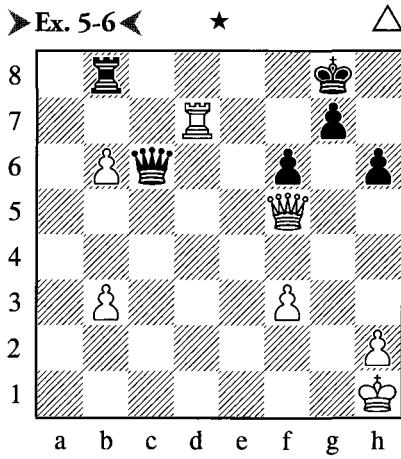
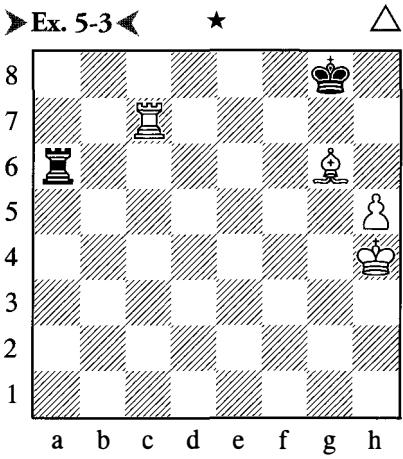
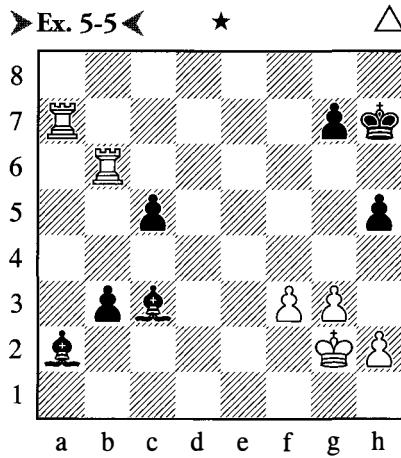
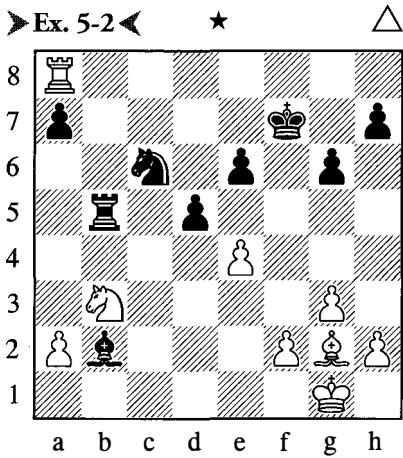
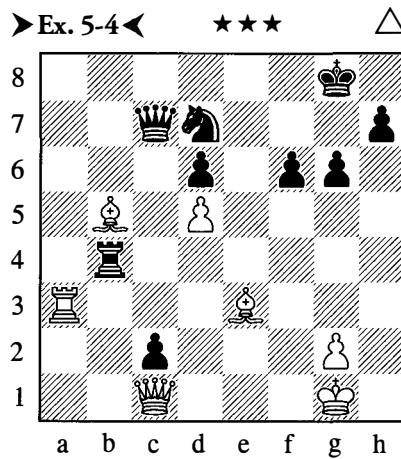
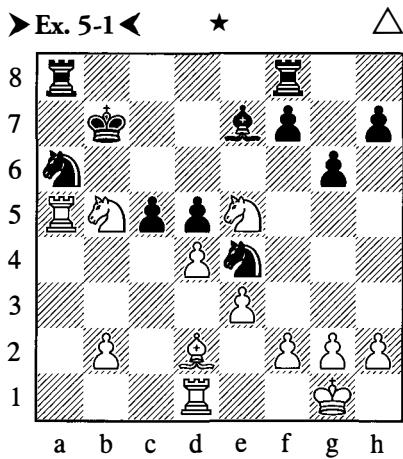
**20.♗g4† ♗e5 21.♗g7†**

White wins another pawn.

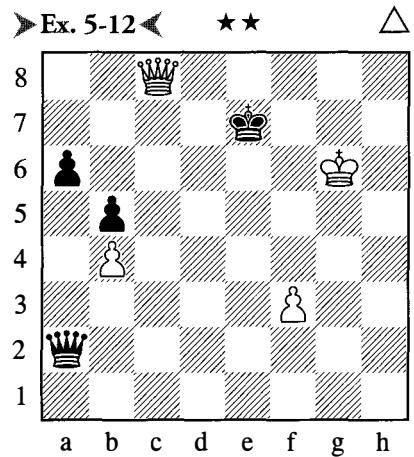
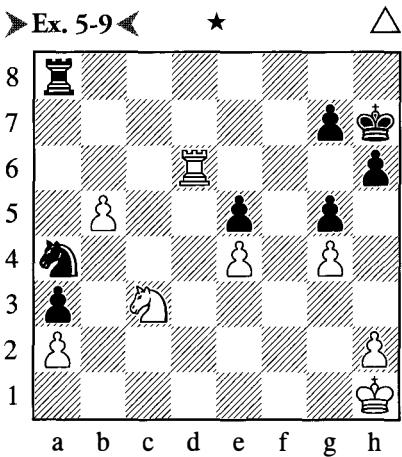
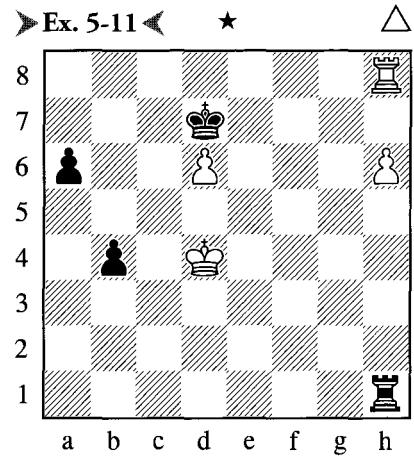
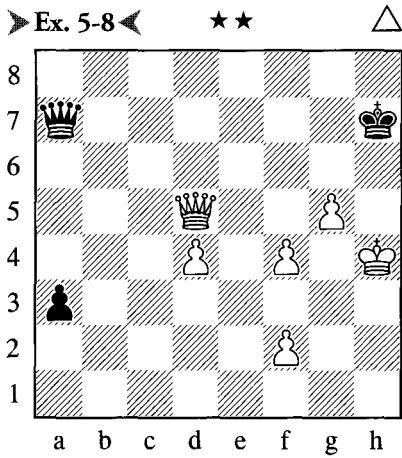
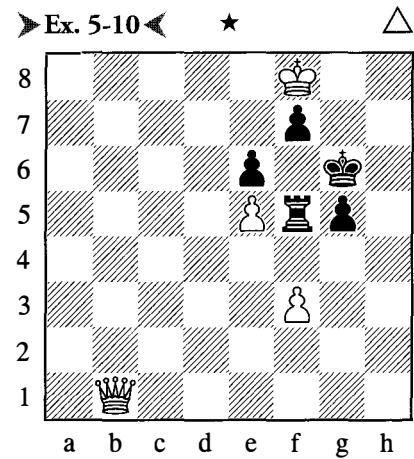
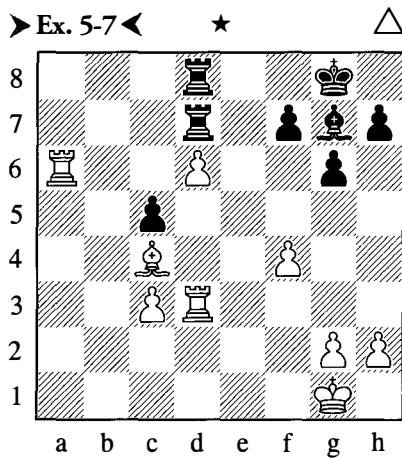
**21...♗e4 22.♗xa7 ♗d5 23.♗f2 ♗d4 24.♗e7†**

Wherever his king goes, Black loses further material, for example: 24...♗d5 25.♗e3! ♗g4 26.♗d7†+– 1–0

# Exercises



# Exercises



# Solutions

## Ex. 5-1

A.Yusupov – V.Golod

Basle (rapid) 2005

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c3!$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3+$

(1 point)

The position is simplified, and Black is saddled with a weakness on d5.

2...  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xb4$   $cx b4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b5+$

4...  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  is met by 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ .

1-0

## Ex. 5-2

A.Yusupov – Z.Lanka

Batumi 1999

29.  $exd5$   $exd5$  30. a4!

(1 point)

White wins two pawns.

30...  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  31.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  32.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}xb3$

33.  $\mathbb{Q}xa7$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  34.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ ?

A very instructive moment. Despite the opposite-coloured bishops, White chooses to simplify the position. Since his passed pawns will be a long way apart, the opponent has no drawing chances.

34...  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  35.  $\mathbb{Q}d5+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  36.  $\mathbb{Q}xb3$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$

37.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$  g5 38. f4 h6

Advancing the g-pawn does not make any difference: 38... g4 39. h3 h5 40.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  41.  $\mathbb{Q}d3+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  42.  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  ( $\Delta \mathbb{Q}c8$ ) 42... gxf3+ 43.  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  44.  $\mathbb{Q}d3+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  45. g4+ – White's plan is standard: his king will go across to the a-pawn and win the bishop for it.

39.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}g1$  40. h3  $\mathbb{Q}b6$  41.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  42. fxg5+ hxg5 43. h4 gxf4 44.  $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ !

Of course not 44. gxf4?? and white has the "wrong bishop". Black would reach a simple draw by sacrificing his bishop for the a-pawn and putting his king in the h8-corner.

44...  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  45.  $\mathbb{Q}h5$

After 45...  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  46. g4  $\mathbb{Q}d2$  47.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$  Black is in zugzwang. White will push his pawn to g6 and then run with his king to the queenside.

1-0

## Ex. 5-3

A.Yusupov – V.Tukmakov

USSR Ch, Frunze 1979

A natural plan quickly leads to victory.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!$   $\mathbb{Q}a5+$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6$

Threatening mate on the back rank.

2...  $\mathbb{Q}a8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g7+$

(1 point)

3...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$

3...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+–$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}h7$

If 4...  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  then 5.  $\mathbb{Q}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  and the pawn will soon queen.

1-0

## Ex. 5-4

A.Yusupov – P.De Roode

Amsterdam 1978

White attacks and forces Black into an exchange of pieces.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}a7!$

(1 point)

But not 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{Q}b1$  and Black obtains counterplay.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xa7$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}c3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{Q}b1$  is worse, in view of 3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}a8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f8#$ .

(another 1 point for this variation)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  is met by 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}a2+$ .

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xa7$   $\mathbb{Q}b1$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$

(another 1 point)

It is important to prevent ...  $\mathbb{Q}b3$ . With the c2-pawn now securely blockaded, White is in control.

4...  $g5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}xc1$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xc1$  h5 7.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  h4 8.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$  g4 9.  $\mathbb{Q}xc2$  h3 10. gxh3 gxh3 11.  $\mathbb{Q}f4+–$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  20.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  21.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$

1-0

# Solutions

## Ex. 5-5

A.Yusupov – G.Agzamov

Baku 1979

1.  $\mathbb{Q}a4!$

(1 point)

This is by far the simplest way to win; White stops any counterplay associated with ...c4 and prepares to bring his king to the queenside.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $cxd4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f2+-$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  5.  $f4$   $\mathbb{Q}b2$   
5...  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $cxd4$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d3+-$

5.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}a3$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $h4$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xb3$   $hxg3$  8.  $hxg3$   $\mathbb{Q}c1$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xb3$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}xb3$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}b6\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  19.  $g4$

1-0

## Ex. 5-6

A.Yusupov – Belnov

Moscow 1980

1.  $\mathbb{W}g4!$

(1 point)

The kingside attack deflects his opponent away from the b-pawn.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}c1\uparrow$

1...  $g5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g2\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h7+-$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}b2\uparrow$

If 2...  $\mathbb{W}g5$  then 3.  $\mathbb{W}xg5$   $fxg5$  4.  $b7$  wins easily.

3.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $f5$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xf5$   $\mathbb{W}xb3$

4...  $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$

5.  $b7$   $\mathbb{W}c4$  6.  $\mathbb{W}e5$   $\mathbb{W}f1\uparrow$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $g5\uparrow$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}h5$

The finish could be: 8...  $\mathbb{W}xf3\uparrow$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$   $\mathbb{W}h3\uparrow$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$   $\mathbb{W}xd7$  11.  $\mathbb{W}xb8\uparrow+-$

1-0

## Ex. 5-7

A.Yusupov – I.Glek

Moscow 1980

1.  $\mathbb{Q}b5!$

(1 point)

In this way White ensures that he can maintain his strong passed pawn.

Much less clear is 1.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}f8\!±$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  2.  $c4$   $\mathbb{Q}d4\uparrow$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}db8$  5.  $g4$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  7.  $d7$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}f3+-$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}a6\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  13.  $f5$   $gx5$  14.  $gx5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}a2\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}e2\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7\uparrow$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $f6$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  20.  $\mathbb{Q}g8$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  21.  $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  22.  $\mathbb{Q}h8$

1-0

## Ex. 5-8

A.Yusupov – L.Spassov

Skara 1980

White uses his extra material to attack the king.

1.  $f5\uparrow$   $a2$  2.  $g6\uparrow$

(1 point)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$

An important line is 2...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}e5\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}e8\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g5\uparrow$  and Black is soon mated. (another 1 point for this variation)

3.  $\mathbb{Q}d8$   $\mathbb{W}xd4\uparrow$

3...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g5+-$

4.  $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $a1\mathbb{W}$

An amusing little attempt at stalemate.

5.  $\mathbb{W}e3\uparrow$

Mate is forced: 5...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6.  $\mathbb{W}e7\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  7.  $\mathbb{W}f7\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  8.  $\mathbb{W}f8\#$

1-0

# Solutions

## Ex. 5-9

**A.Yusupov – B.Ivkov**

Vrbas 1980

1.  $\mathbb{Q}a6!$

(1 point)

A simple exchanging combination.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xa6$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xa6$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  3.  $a7$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$   
5.  $\mathbb{Q}xa3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$

Black's position is lost. If he heads towards the a-pawn, White will take the e5-pawn and then attack on the kingside.

1-0

## Ex. 5-10

**A.Yusupov – J.Eslon**

Can Picafort 1981

1.  $\mathbb{Q}g8$

(1 point)

Black is in zugzwang. For example 1...  $g4$   
2.  $fxg4+-$  or 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ .

1-0

## Ex. 5-11

**A.Yusupov – F.Sanz**

Can Picafort 1981

1.  $h7!+-$

(1 point)

White threatens the decisive  $\mathbb{Q}a8$ , and he can meet 1...  $b3$  with 2.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$ , renewing the threat.

## Ex. 5-12

**A.Yusupov – M.Gerusel**

Moscow 1981

A mating attack forces the opponent to exchange queens.

1.  $\mathbb{W}c7\#!$

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}f7\#+-$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6!$

Threatening two different mates in one.

2...  $\mathbb{W}b2\#$  3.  $\mathbb{W}e5\#!$

1-0

# Scoring

Maximum number of points is 16

- 14 points and above → **Excellent**
- 11 points and above → **Good**
- 8 points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than 8 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Coordination of the pieces
- ✓ The strength of the queen and knight duo
- ✓ Typical attacking ideas

## Attacking with queen and knight

The queen and the knight have very different capabilities. From the same square they attack completely different sets of squares. For that reason they complement each other wonderfully well. It is very simple to coordinate their efforts; indeed it often happens automatically when we attack a particular square with both pieces. These pieces are particularly dangerous when they are attacking, although the nimble knight must first make its way to a good position close to the opposing king. The fine coordination of queen and knight often makes this duo stronger than a queen and bishop.

Diagram 6-1

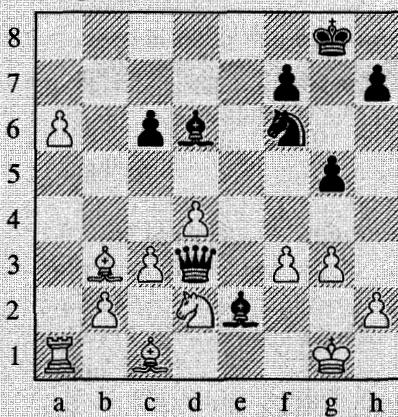
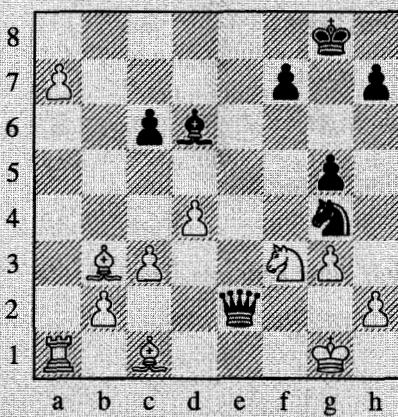


Diagram 6-2 (analysis)



In this instructive example, even World Champion Vladimir Kramnik was surprised by how strongly the tandem of queen and knight worked together.

Diagram 6-1

V.Kramnik – P.Leko

World Ch (8), Brissago 2004

Kramnik's team had prepared this line, hoping that the passed pawn would give him the advantage. The computer appeared to support this view, but it was not given enough time on the position. With more time, its assessment changes in Black's favour.

Kramnik now had a long think, and played:

**1.♘f2**

The move that White would like to play is 1.a7, in order to promote the pawn as quickly possible, but after 1...♛e3† 2.♘g2 Black has a decisive combination: 2...♝xf3†!! 3.♝xf3 ♛e2† 4.♝g1 ♜g4+

Diagram 6-2

White is unable to hold out against the well-coordinated attacking pieces. For example: 5.a8♛† ♜g7 6.♝xc6 ♛f2† 7.♝h1 ♛f1† 8.♝g1 ♜f2#

**1...♝xf3! 2.♝xf3**

White still cannot push the a-pawn: 2.a7 ♛e2† 3.♝g1 ♜g2#

## Attacking with queen and knight

2... $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$

Leko plays the conclusion of the game with great accuracy.

3. $\mathbb{Q}e1$

3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$ +

3... $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$

But not 3... $\mathbb{Q}xg3?$  when White may be able to defend with 4. $\mathbb{Q}d1!..$

4.bxc3  $\mathbb{Q}xc3\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}xal$  6.a7 h6! 7.h4 g4

0-1

The following game illustrates some typical attacking ideas.

### R.Vaganian – A.Yusupov

Istanbul Olympiad 2000

1. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  d5 2.g3 c6 3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  4.c4 e6 5.cxd5

This variation is a speciality of several Armenian players. White plans to take action in the centre later by playing d2-d3 and eventually e2-e4.

5...exd5 6. $\mathbb{Q}b3$

#### Diagram 6-3

A relatively new try. White wants to entice the black queen to b6, then show that it is worse there than on d8. The main line is 6.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  7.d3  $\mathbb{Q}e7$ .

6... $\mathbb{Q}b6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  8.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  9.d3  $\mathbb{Q}bd7?$

Black prepares a good defensive idea against e2-e4.

10. $\mathbb{Q}c3$

If 10.e4, then Black replies 10... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$  11. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  (11. $\mathbb{Q}c3??$  d4-+) 11...dxe4 12.dxe4  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  with equality.

#### Diagram 6-4

10... $\mathbb{Q}xf3!$

This is the only way that Black can prevent his opponent taking control of matters in the centre with e2-e4.

After the immediate 10...d4? 11. $\mathbb{Q}a4$ , the defence of the d4-pawn is a problem. For example: 11... $\mathbb{Q}b4$  12.a3  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  13. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  14. $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4?$  15.e3+-

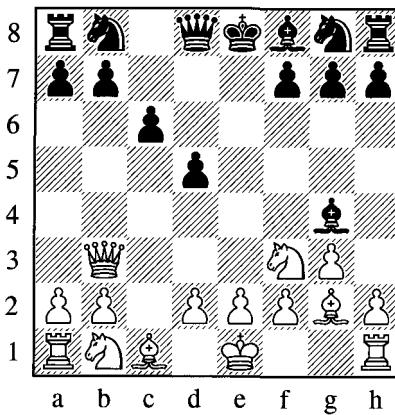
11. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  d4 12. $\mathbb{Q}b1$

12. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  13.dxe4 does not give Black any difficulties.

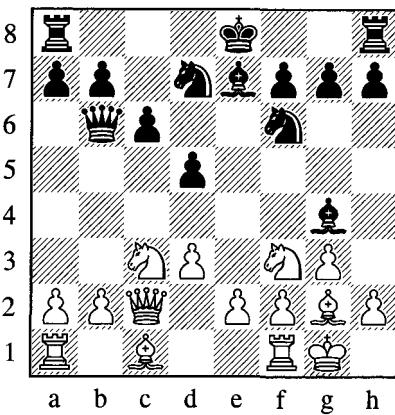
12...h5?

Since the centre remains closed, Black feels justified

#### Diagram 6-3



#### Diagram 6-4



in trying to take the initiative on the kingside. However, 12... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ ! first would be a bit more accurate.

**13. $\mathbb{Q}d2$**

Here White should play 13. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ ! in order to control the e5-square.

**13... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  14. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $h4$  15. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ ?**

15. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$  16.exf3 would be safer, with approximate equality.

**15... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  16. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$**

**Diagram 6-5**

**16... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ !**

The knight is well placed here, and is ready to support the attack.

**17.b4!**

Vaganian fights for the initiative. If Black takes the pawn, then White will obtain dangerous play on the b-file.

17.h3  $\mathbb{Q}e5$  18. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $hxg3$  19.fxg3 would be slightly better for Black.

**17... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ !**

Defending the d4-pawn, and thereby freeing the black queen to head to the kingside.

**18. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  19.b5 c5 20.b6?**

White underestimates his opponent's attack.

20.h3 is an improvement, although after 20... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  21. $\mathbb{Q}a4$  b6 22.g4 0–0 the weakness of the f4-square gives Black an edge.

**20...axb6 21. $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$**

The decisive mistake. By going away from the c4-square, the queen takes the pressure off the f7-pawn.

21. $\mathbb{Q}ab1$  would be correct, so as to be able to meet 21... $hxg3$  with 22.fxg3. Rather than exchanging pawns, Black would reply 21... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ ! and retain attacking chances.

**21... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  22. $\mathbb{Q}ab1$   $hxg3$**

Black can now take on g3 without any worries.

**23. $hxg3$**

23.fxg3? is simply met by 23... $\mathbb{Q}xh2-$ .

**23... $\mathbb{Q}e5$**

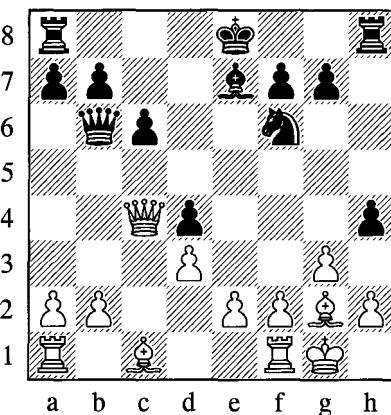
Bringing the queen even closer to the white king, and preparing a typical combination.

**24. $\mathbb{Q}fe1$**

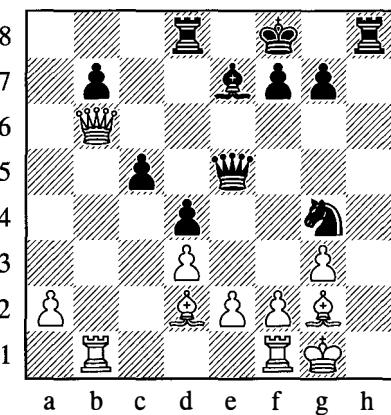
24. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  is the obvious try.

**Diagram 6-6**

**Diagram 6-5**



**Diagram 6-6 (analysis)**



But then comes: 24... $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xh1$  (25. $\mathbb{Q}xh1$   $\mathbb{W}h5\#$  26. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}h2\#$ ) 25... $\mathbb{W}h5$  26. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}h2\#$  27. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$  28. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{W}h5\#$  29. $\mathbb{Q}be1$  (or 29. $\mathbb{W}xb7$   $\mathbb{W}g4\#$  30.f4  $\mathbb{W}xe2\#$  31. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $g6\#$ ) 29... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  Black has a decisive attack.

**24... $\mathbb{Q}h2!$**

Here we can see another typical attacking idea: Black regroups his major pieces and puts his rook in front of the queen.

24... $\mathbb{W}f5$  also wins, but the text is even stronger.

**25.e4**

25. $\mathbb{W}xb6$   $\mathbb{W}h5$  26. $\mathbb{W}xb7$  allows a quick finish:

**Diagram 6-7**

26... $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$  27. $\mathbb{Q}xh1$   $\mathbb{W}h2\#$  28. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$

**25... $\mathbb{W}h5$  26. $\mathbb{Q}f1$**

**Diagram 6-8**

**26... $\mathbb{Q}xg2!$**

Black gets a decisive attack since White will no longer be able to defend the light squares.

**27. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{W}h2\#$  28. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$ !**

The finish would be 29. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ ! 30. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}h1\#$  31. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}f3\#$  32. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  and White no longer has any sensible defence.

**0-1**

Finally we take a look at an interesting combination by Keres.

**Diagram 6-9**

**P.Keres – S.Gligoric**

Zürich 1959

**1. $\mathbb{Q}xd3!$**

This is much more convincing than: 1. $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  3. $\mathbb{W}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{W}e7$   $\mathbb{W}c5$  5. $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}7xc5\#$  Black can still put up some resistance.

**1... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  2. $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6!!$**

Removing the defence of the g5-square allows the other knight to enter the attack.

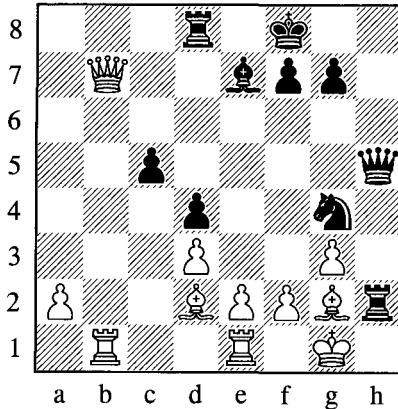
**3... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$**

Black must now lose his queen or be mated.

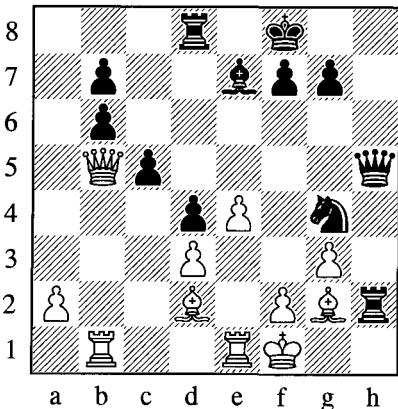
**4... $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$**

This is even better than 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ , although that also wins: 5... $\mathbb{W}c5\#$  (5... $\mathbb{W}b6\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}e3\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{W}f4\#$  8. $\mathbb{Q}h1+-$ ) 6. $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#+-$

**Diagram 6-7 (analysis)**



**Diagram 6-8**



**Diagram 6-9**

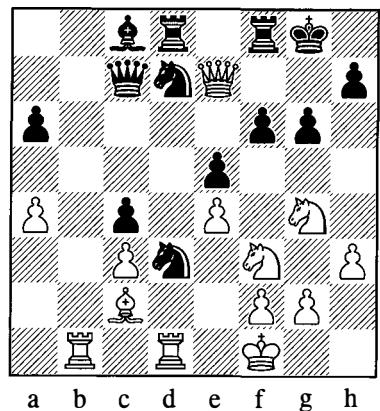


Diagram 6-10

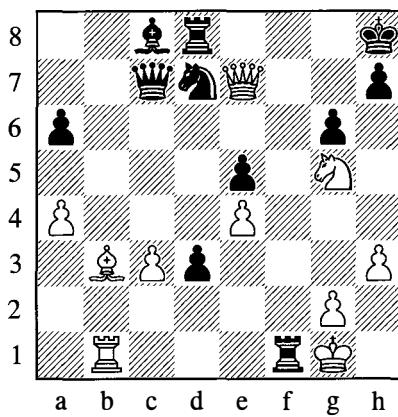
5... $\mathbb{E}f1\#$ 

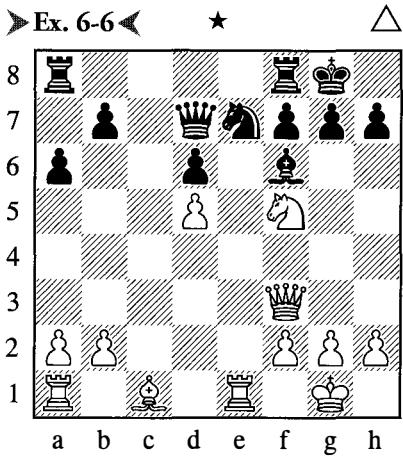
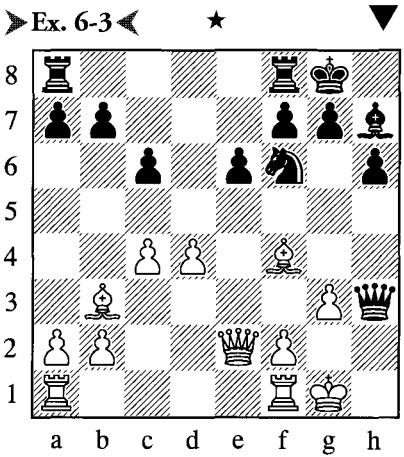
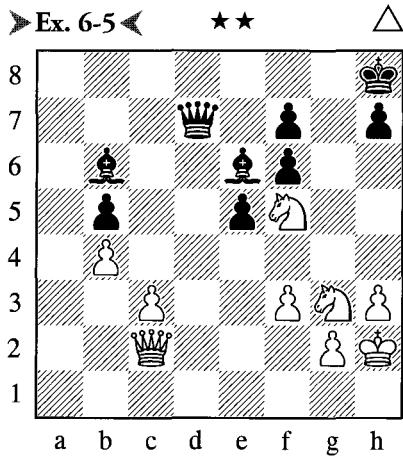
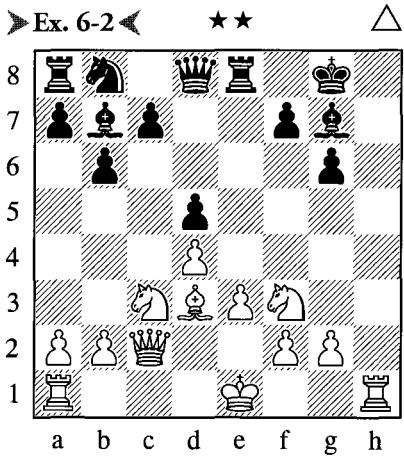
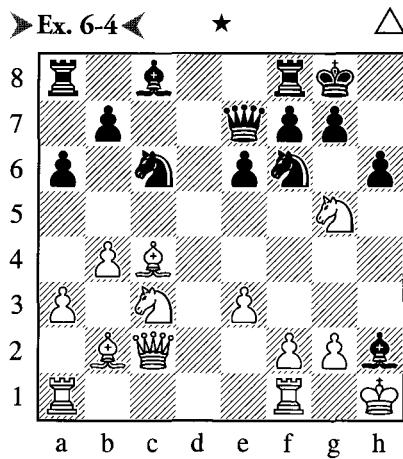
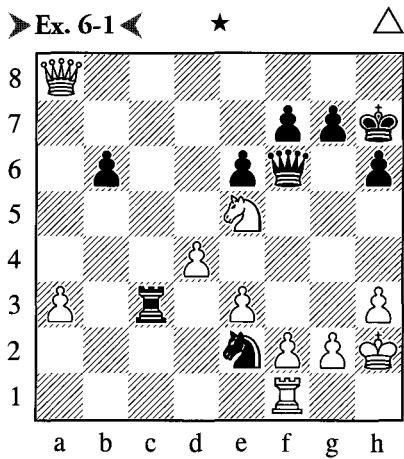
Diagram 6-10

6. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$ 

Not 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf1??$ , which allows Black to escape by 6... $\mathbb{E}f8\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}c5\#$ .

1-0

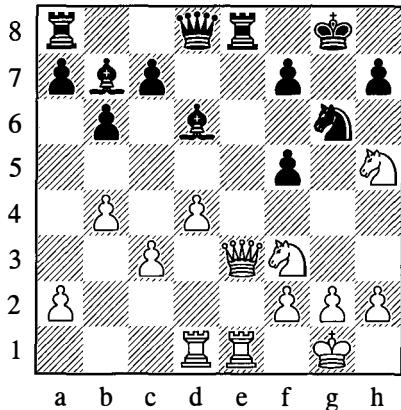
# Exercises



# Exercises

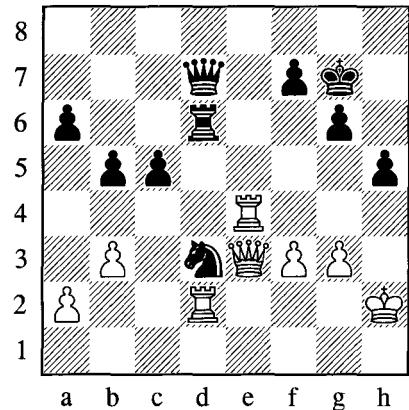
► Ex. 6-7 ◀

★★



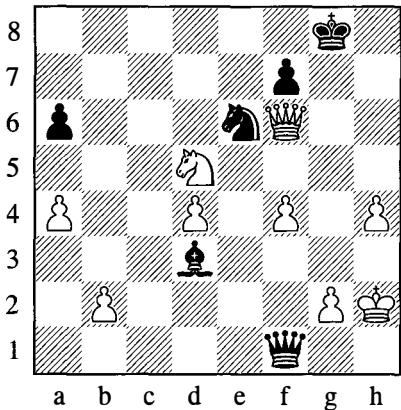
► Ex. 6-10 ◀

★



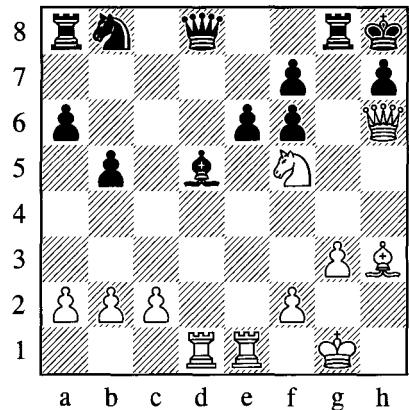
► Ex. 6-8 ◀

★



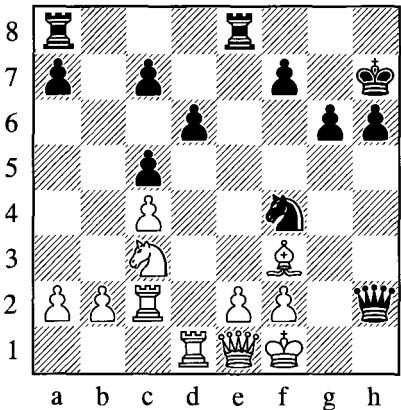
► Ex. 6-11 ◀

★★



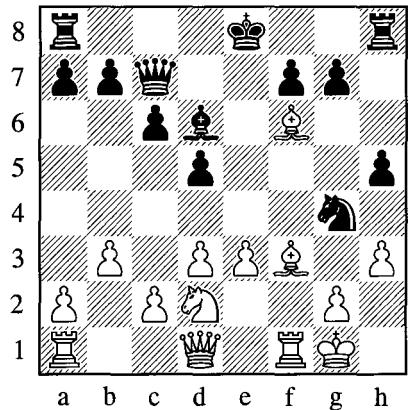
► Ex. 6-9 ◀

★★



► Ex. 6-12 ◀

★



# Solutions

## Ex. 6-1

R.Newman – G.Wood

London 1946

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d7!$

(1 point)

Transferring the knight to f8, where it coordinates beautifully with the queen.

1...  $\mathbb{W}f5$

Other queen moves are no better:

- a) 1...  $\mathbb{W}g5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6\#$  –
- b) 1...  $\mathbb{W}e7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$  –

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e7!$   $\mathbb{W}g5$

5.  $\mathbb{W}g8\#$

## Ex. 6-2

F.Marshall – A.Burn

Paris 1900

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$

A strong combination. White opens up the castled position and brings his queen nearer to the opposing king.

1...  $\mathbb{W}xg6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xg6$

(1 point)

2.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Black tries to develop his pieces. But he is too late!

Other attempts also fail:

a) 2...  $\mathbb{W}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$  and the threat of  $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$  is decisive.

b) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$  –

3.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$

The knight rushes to help the attack. The obvious threat is  $\mathbb{W}f7\#$ .

3...  $\mathbb{W}f6$

The following typical mating motif supplements the well-known attacking ideas that we saw in Vaganian – Yusupov.

4.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  5.  $\mathbb{W}h7\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 6-3

Alekseev – Chernenko

USSR 1961

1...  $\mathbb{Q}d3!$

(1 point)

The other move order is not so strong:

1...  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  2.  $f3$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  3.  $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  4.  $fxg4\#$

2.  $\mathbb{W}xd3$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$

White cannot avoid mate, for example:

3.  $\mathbb{Q}fe1$   $\mathbb{W}h2\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$

0-1

## Ex. 6-4

L.Szabo – A.Kotov

Groningen 1946

Another typical combination.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d5!$   $exd5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$

(1 point)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf5$   $g6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xg6\#$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  is good too: 4...  $gxf5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$

6.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$   $\mathbb{Q}xa1$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5\#$  –

4...  $gxf6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $hxg5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xh2$

$\mathbb{Q}xe7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}ac1\#$  – 10.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}fd1$

$\mathbb{Q}e6$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}dd5$

$\mathbb{Q}e7$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5$   $\mathbb{Q}h1$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}ge5\#$

1-0

## Ex. 6-5

Landa – Klamann

1978

White must bring his queen nearer to the opposing king.

1.  $\mathbb{W}c1!$

(1 point)

1-0

The queen penetration to h6 will be decisive:

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h6$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  (2...  $\mathbb{W}d8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$   $\mathbb{W}g8$

4.  $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$  –) 3.  $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$  –

(another 1 point for this variation)

# Solutions

## Ex. 6-6

H.Kruusiauk – N.Fokina

1975

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g4$

(1 point)

A standard idea. White threatens both mate by 3.  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$  and a discovered attack on the black queen with 3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ .

1–0

## Ex. 6-7

A.Donchenko – Berezhansky

USSR 1962

1.  $\mathbb{W}h6!$

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe1\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e8!$

White threatens  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ , and 3...  $\mathbb{W}xe8$  is followed by 4.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ .

1–0

## Ex. 6-8

A.Yusupov – G.Kamsky

Linares 1991

1.  $\mathbb{f}5!$

(1 point)

White has another way to win: 1.  $\mathbb{W}h6!$  (also 1 point) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e4$

Other moves are no better:

a) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$

b) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}d8\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$

4.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$

c) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$

d) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g5\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}g6\#$

5.  $\mathbb{W}h6\#$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$

It is mate next move.

1–0

## Ex. 6-9

B.Friedmann – Tornblom

Stockholm 1973

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e3!$

(2 points)

This strong move blocks the e-pawn.

The immediate 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h3?$  would allow the white king to escape after 2.  $\mathbb{e}3\pm$ .

2.  $\mathbb{fxe}3$   $\mathbb{Q}h3$

0–1

## Ex. 6-10

V.Osnos – M.Shofman

Leningrad 1970

1...  $\mathbb{Q}f4!+$

(1 point)

2.  $\mathbb{W}c3\#$

Other moves also lose:

a) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2\#$

b) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}g2\#$

c) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$

0–1

## Ex. 6-11

Skuja – Abrosimov

USSR 1965

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$

1...  $\mathbb{W}xd5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e8!$

(another 1 point)

White threatens  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ , and 2...  $\mathbb{W}xe8$  is met by 3.  $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ .

## Ex. 6-12

Vis – G.Barcza

1939

1...  $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$

(1 point)

# Solutions

A typical idea. 3.g3 is followed by: 3... $\mathbb{W}xg3$   
 4. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3!$  (not 4... $\mathbb{Q}f2\uparrow$ ? 5. $\mathbb{B}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   
 6. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $gxf6$  7. $\mathbb{B}f1\pm$  nor 4... $\mathbb{Q}f2?$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$   $hxg4$   
 6. $\mathbb{B}xf2$   $\mathbb{B}xh3\uparrow$  7. $\mathbb{B}h2\pm$ ) 5. $\mathbb{W}g2$   $\mathbb{W}xg2\uparrow$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   
 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  7. $\mathbb{B}ael$  d4 8. $\mathbb{Q}c4\uparrow$

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is 17

- 15 points and above → **Excellent**
- 12 points and above → **Good**
- 9 points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Attacking the f2- and f7-squares
- ✓ Rapid mobilization
- ✓ Security of the king
- ✓ Practical examples

## The open games

In this chapter we shall consider some typical situations arising from open games, in which White mounts an attack on the f7-square (or Black attacks the f2-square). As you already know, you have to be particularly careful in open positions; the pieces may easily reach very active positions, and it can be difficult to recover if you fall behind in development. For that reason, the main motto in the open games is: **rapid mobilization!**

It is also very important to get your king into safety. Every budding chess player who has had some bitter experiences with Scholar's Mate knows how unpleasant an attack on the sensitive f2- or f7-squares can be. In the starting position these squares are protected only by the king, and so are not sufficiently well defended. The simplest way to defend these important points is by castling kingside. But sometimes we underestimate the danger, or we may not yet be ready to castle. If White places his bishop on c4, then his opponent must take particular care!

Here are some examples, taken from various openings, which demonstrate the dangers that may threaten f7 (or f2), and which also show how to defend against these threats.

## Philidor Defence

## 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 d6 3.♗c4 ♘f6?

Black underestimates the danger of being attacked on f7 for a second time.

Black should prefer 3...♗e7 4.d4 (or 4.c3 ♘f6 5.♗b3 0-0 6.♗g5 ♘e8=) and now:

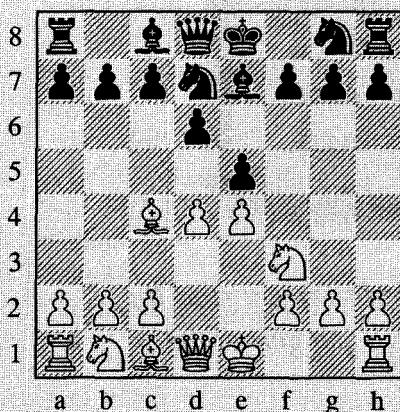
a) 4...♗d7? is not good:

## Diagram 7-1

5.dxe5! ♘xe5 (5...dxe5 6.♗d5!+) 6.♗xe5 dxe5 7.♗h5 and White wins a pawn.

b) The correct way for Black to play is 4...exd4! followed by ...♗f6 and ...0-0.

Diagram 7-1 (analysis)



### Diagram 7-2

4.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!$   $d5!$

The only sensible option.

5.  $exd5$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$

5...  $\mathbb{Q}xd5?$  is simply met by 6.  $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{W}xg5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5\pm$  with a double attack on f7 and b7.

6.  $d3$

White has a clear advantage.

### Scotch Gambit

1.  $e4$   $e5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.  $d4$   $exd4$  4.  $c3$   $dxc3$

4...  $d5$  is a safer variation.

5.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}e7?!$

5...  $d6$  is better, and Black can successfully defend the f7-pawn:

a) After 6.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  Black can even play 6...  $cxb2!$

b) 6.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  7.  $\mathbb{W}b3$  (7.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  is met by 7...  $\mathbb{Q}e5!)$

7.  $\mathbb{W}d7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$

### Diagram 7-3

6.  $\mathbb{W}d5!$

Now it is not so easy for Black to protect f7.

6...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  0-0-0! 8.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$

Less good is: 8.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}b4!$  9.  $\mathbb{W}d1$  (9.  $\mathbb{W}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}c2\uparrow$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}xa1$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  12.  $h4$   $d5\uparrow$ ) 9...  $c2\uparrow$

However, White has a reasonable alternative in 8.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3?!$   $gxf6$  9. 0-0  $d6$  10.  $\mathbb{W}h5$  with a dangerous attack.

8...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xc3\pm$

The black king is very exposed.

### Two Knights Defence

1.  $e4$   $e5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$

### Diagram 7-4

4...  $d5!$

An important defensive resource. This is one of the main lines of the Two Knights Defence.

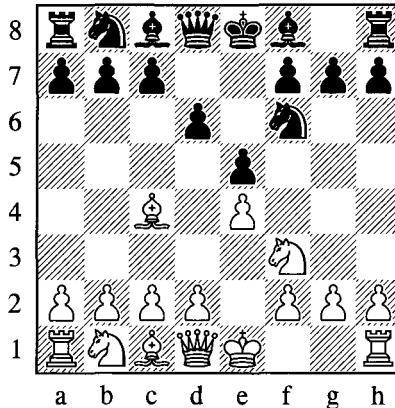
5.  $exd5$   $\mathbb{Q}a5!$

For 5...  $\mathbb{Q}xd5?!$  see the lesson on 'Opening traps' (Chapter 8 of *Boost Your Chess 1*).

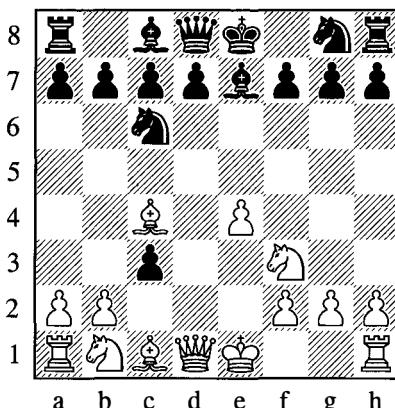
6.  $\mathbb{Q}b5\uparrow$   $c6$  7.  $dxc6$   $bxc6$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $h6$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$

9.  $\mathbb{Q}h3?!$  is Fischer's move.

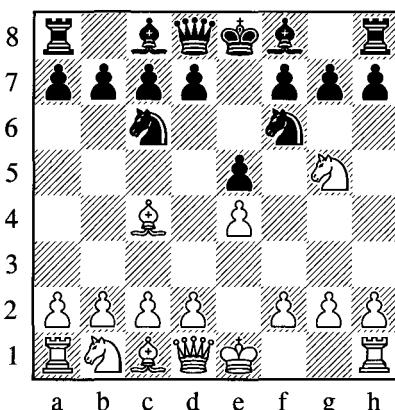
### Diagram 7-2



### Diagram 7-3



### Diagram 7-4



9...e4 10.♗e5 ♖d6 11.f4 exf3 12.♗xf3 0-0  
13.0-0 c5

Black has good compensation for the sacrificed pawn.

## Gioco Piano

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗c4 ♗c5 4.c3 ♘f6 5.d3

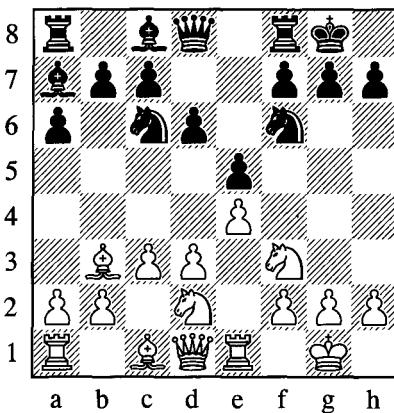
5.d4 exd4 6.cxd4 ♕b4† is the old main line.

5...a6 6.0-0 ♕a7 7.♕b3 d6 8.♘bd2 0-0 9.♕e1

9.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$  is a safer alternative. White may then continue with  $\mathbb{Q}e3$ , either straight away or after first exchanging dark-squared bishop with  $\mathbb{Q}e3$ .

Another idea is 9.h3 h6 10.¤e1. Black can now play 10...¤h5 (planning ...¤f4 and ...¤f6), since 11.¤xe5? is met by 11...¤xe5 (or 11...¤h4!!) 12.¤xh5 ¤xd3.

**Diagram 7-5**



### Diagram 7-5

9...  $\text{Qg4!}$

White can easily parry the attack on f2, but that is not Black's only idea.

10.  $\mathbb{E}e2$   $\mathbb{H}h8$

Black is preparing ...f5.

11.h3 9hG

After 11... $\mathbb{Q}xf2?$  12. $\mathbb{E}xf2$  Black gets only rook and pawn for two minor pieces, which is not quite enough.

12.  $\mathbf{Qf1}$   $\mathbf{f5}$

Play has become very sharp

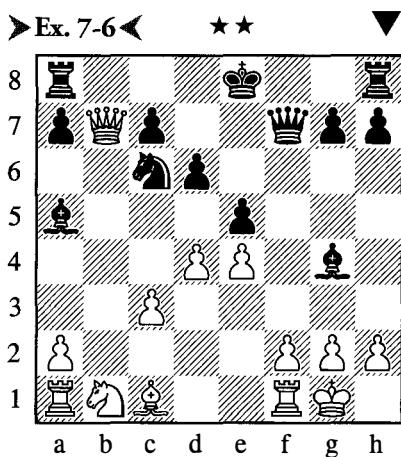
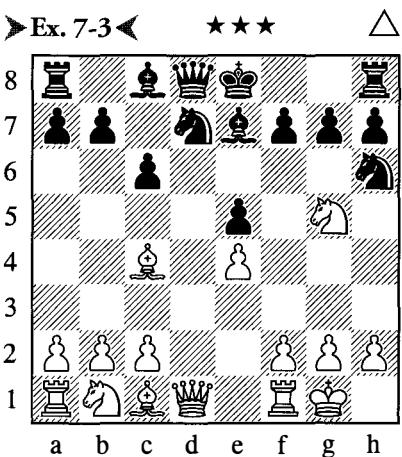
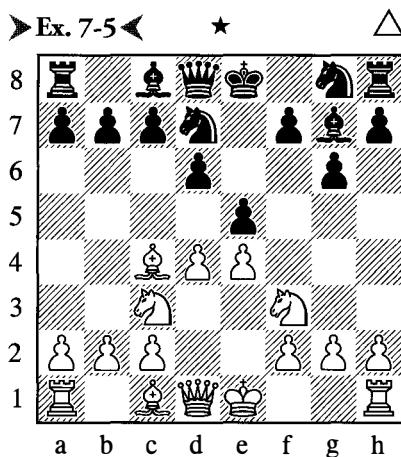
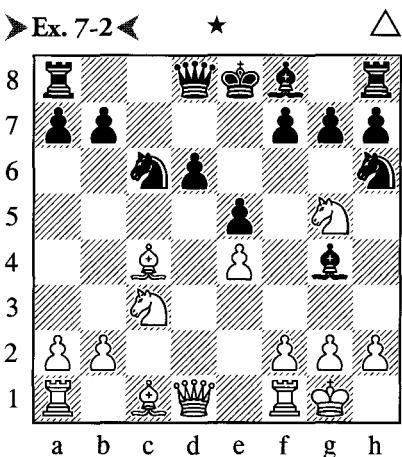
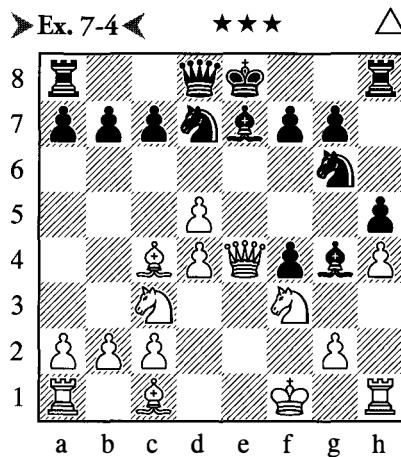
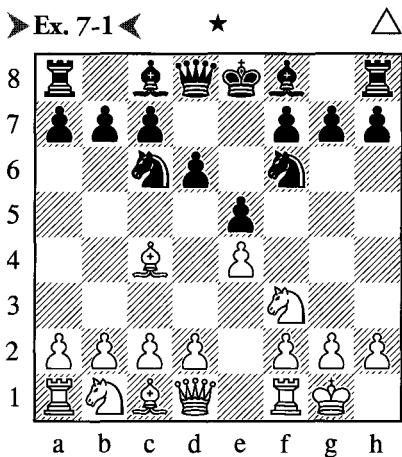
13. ♕xh6?

White should probably prefer 13.d4∞

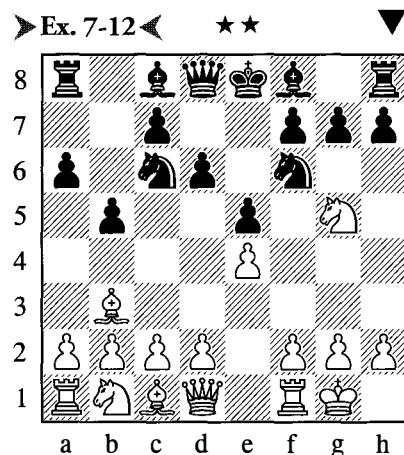
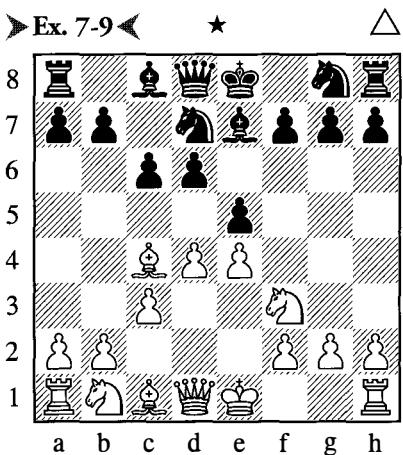
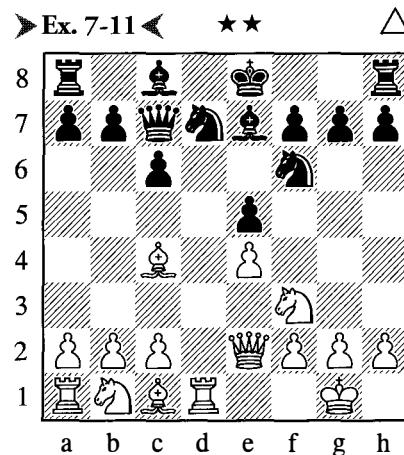
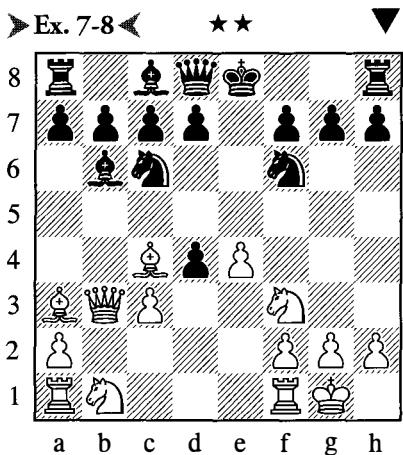
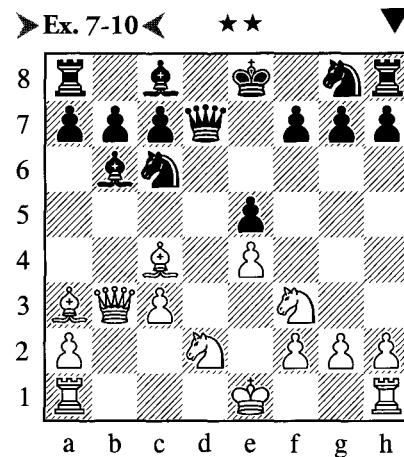
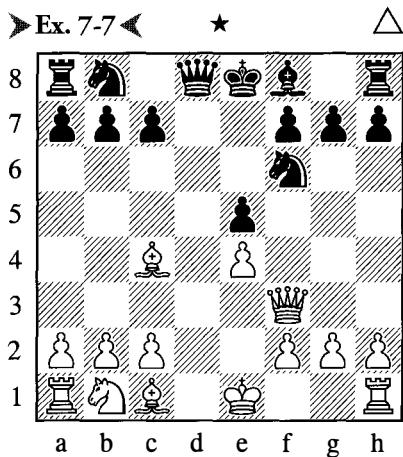
13...gxh6 14.exf5 ♕xf5

Black obtains a dangerous initiative on the king-side. He has the bishop pair along with some open lines against the white king. In practice, Black has scored well from this position.

# Exercises



# Exercises



# Solutions

## Ex. 7-1

I.Kolisch – I.Shumov

St Petersburg (6) 1862

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗c4 ♘f6 4.0–0 d6  
(4...♗c5 and 4...♘xe4 are Black's principal options)

### Diagram Ex. 7-1

5.♘g5!

(1 point)

5...d5 6.exd5 ♘a5 7.d3

7.♗b5†?±

7...♗d6 8.f4

Simply developing with 8.♘c3 looks good for White.

8...♘xc4 9.dxc4 h6?

Either 9...0–0 or 9...e4 10.♘c3 ♘f5 11.♗e1 ♘e7 would keep Black in the game.

10.♘xf7! ♘xf7 11.fxe5 ♘c5†

11...♗xe5 12.♗h5†! ♘g8 13.♗xe5+–

12.♗h1 ♘e8 13.exf6+–

## Ex. 7-2

I.Bondarevsky – A.Petersons

Moscow 1959

1.d4 c5 2.e4 cxd4 3.♘f3 e5 4.c3 dxc3 5.♘xc3 d6 6.♗c4 ♘c6 7.♘g5 ♘h6 8.0–0 ♘g4?

### Diagram Ex. 7-2

9.♘xf7†!

(1 point)

9.♗b3 is weaker, since Black can defend with 9...♗d7.

However, 9.♘xf7! (also 1 point) is equally good: 9...♗xd1 10.♗xd8 ♘g4 11.♘e6±

9...♘xf7 10.♗xg4± ♘xg5 11.♘xg5 ♘e7  
12.♗xe7 ♘xe7 13.♗d5 ♘d7 14.♗h5†! g6  
15.♗h4 ♘d8 16.♗h6! ♘a5 17.b4 ♘xb4  
18.♗g7 0–0–0 19.♗ab1!

1–0

## Ex. 7-3

J.Van der Wiel – C.Van Baarle

Amsterdam 1983

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 ♘d7 4.♗c4 c6 5.dxe5 dxe5 6.♗g5?!! ♘h6 7.0–0 ♘e7? (07...♗f6 8.f4 ♘c5† 9.♗h1 0–0)

### Diagram Ex. 7-3

8.♗e6!

Much stronger than: 8.♗h5 (1 consolation point) 8...♗f6±

8...fxe6 9.♗xh6!

(1 point)

But not 9.♗h5†? ♘f7 10.♗xe6 0–0+–.

9...♗b6

After 9...gxh6 Black is quickly mated: 10.♗h5† ♘f8 11.♗xe6 ♘e8 12.♗xh6#

(another 1 point for this variation)

10.♗h5† ♘f8?

10...g6± was necessary.

11.f4!+–

(another 1 point)

11...♗c5† 12.♗h1 ♘g8 13.f5

Not the only way; 13.fxe5 and 13.♗xg7 also win.

13...gxh6

13...♘xc4 14.f6 gxf6 15.♗g4† ♘f7  
16.♗g7†+–

14.fxe6 ♘e7 15.♗f7 ♘g5 16.♗f8†!

1–0

## Ex. 7-4

A.Fedorov – P.H.Nielsen

Aaland-Stockholm 1997

1.e4 e5 2.f4 exf4 3.♘f3 ♘e7 4.♗c4 ♘h4†  
(4...♗f6!) 5.♗f1 d5 6.exd5 ♘g4 (6...♗e7?!)  
7.d4 ♘e7 8.♗c3 ♘g6 9.♗e2† ♘e7 10.h4 h5  
11.♗e4 ♘d7? (11...0–0 12.♗e5±)

### Diagram Ex. 7-4

12.d6!!

(1 point)

White opens the diagonal for his bishop.

12...cxd6

# Solutions

12... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  13.dxe7  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  14.exd8 $\mathbb{W}\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$   
15. $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$  is hopeless for Black.

**13. $\mathbb{Q}g5$**  (another 1 point)

**1-0**

Even grandmasters are not immune to the attack on f7! Black resigned, faced with the lines 13...0-0 14. $\mathbb{W}xg6+$  or 13...d5 14. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  0-0 15. $\mathbb{W}xg6!$  fxe7 16. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  17. $\mathbb{Q}xg6\#$ .

(another 1 point for this variation)

## Ex. 7-5

**Lachex – J.Santiago**

USA 1990

1.d4 d6 2.e4 g6 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c4$  e5?

**Diagram Ex. 7-5**

**6. $\mathbb{Q}g5!$**

6. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g5\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  8. $\mathbb{Q}e6$  (also 1 point) is an alternative way for White to win.

**6... $\mathbb{Q}h6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}e6$**

(1 point)

**8... $\mathbb{W}h4$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xg7\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$**

9... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e6\dagger+$ –

**10. $\mathbb{Q}d5\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  11. $\mathbb{Q}e6\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  12. $\mathbb{W}g4!$**

**1-0**

## Ex. 7-6

**S.Duerdorff – H.Lutzka**

Germany 1994

1.e4 e5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  4.b4  $\mathbb{Q}xb4$  5.c3  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  6.0-0 d6 7.d4  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  8. $\mathbb{W}b3$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  (8... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ ) 9. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  (9. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\dagger$ !  $\mathbb{W}xf7$  10. $\mathbb{W}xb7\pm$ ) 9... $\mathbb{Q}h6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  11. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\dagger$   $\mathbb{W}xf7$  12. $\mathbb{W}xb7$

**Diagram Ex. 7-6**

**12... $\mathbb{Q}d7\text{?}$**

Black could turn the tables and mount his own attack. 12...0-0! is correct: 13. $\mathbb{W}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}e2\dagger$

(2 points for this variation)

**13.d5!  $\mathbb{Q}d4?$**

If your intention was to play 13... $\mathbb{W}g6\text{?}$  14. $\mathbb{W}xc6\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}e7\infty$ , you get 1 consolation point.

**14.cxd4  $\mathbb{Q}e2$  15.dxe5 dxe5 16. $\mathbb{W}c6\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$**

**17. $\mathbb{Q}a3\dagger$**

**1-0**

## Ex. 7-7

**P.Morphy – 'Allies'**

Paris Opera 1858

1.e4 e5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  d6 3.d4  $\mathbb{Q}g4\text{?}$  4.dxe5  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  5. $\mathbb{W}xf3$  dxe5 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$

**Diagram Ex. 7-7**

**7. $\mathbb{W}b3\text{!}$**

(1 point)

A double attack on b7 and f7.

**7... $\mathbb{W}e7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}c3$**

8. $\mathbb{W}xb7$  is also good: 8... $\mathbb{W}b4\dagger$  9. $\mathbb{W}xb4$   $\mathbb{Q}xb4\dagger$  10.c3+–

**8... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  9. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  b5?**

We have already seen the conclusion of this game in *Build Up Your Chess 1* (Ex. 3-9).

**10. $\mathbb{Q}xb5\text{!}+$ – cxb5 11. $\mathbb{Q}xb5\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  12.0-0–0  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  13. $\mathbb{Q}xd7\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  14. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{W}e6$  15. $\mathbb{Q}xd7\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  16. $\mathbb{W}b8\dagger\text{!!}$   $\mathbb{Q}xb8$  17. $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$**

## Ex. 7-8

**W.Steinitz – Rock**

London 1863

1.e4 e5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  4.b4  $\mathbb{Q}xb4$  5.c3  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  6.d4 exd4 (6...d6?) 7.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  (7... $\mathbb{Q}ge7$ ) 8. $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  (8...d6?) 9. $\mathbb{W}b3\text{!}$

**Diagram Ex. 7-8**

**9...d5?**

This standard move does not work here, since White can quickly make use of the open e-file.

9...d6 is correct: 10. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\dagger$   $\mathbb{Q}f8\infty$

(2 points)

Even the exchange sacrifice 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  (1 point) would be an improvement on the game.

**10.exd5  $\mathbb{Q}a5$**



## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **21**

- **18** points and above → **Excellent**
- **15** points and above → **Good**
- **11** points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **11** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*



*M. Paul Morphy.*

In the mid-19th Century the  
American Paul Morphy was renowned for  
his handling of the open games

# CHAPTER

# 8

## Contents

- ✓ Coordination of the pieces
- ✓ The exposed king

Diagram 8-1

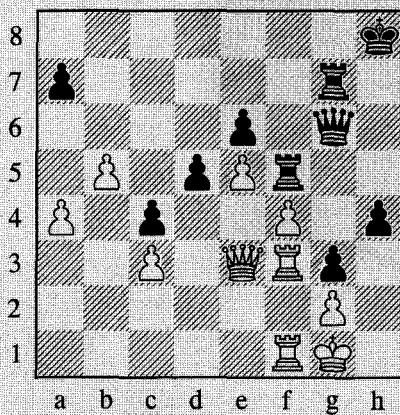
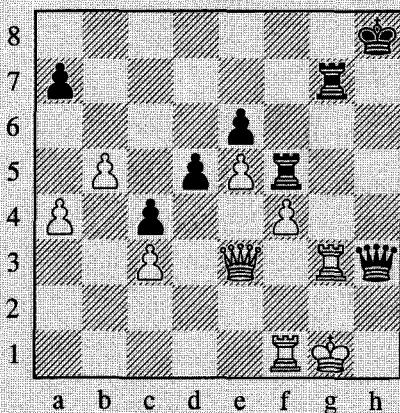


Diagram 8-2 (analysis)



## Attacking with queen and rook

It is relatively easy to coordinate a queen and a rook. We saw some examples of this in 'Mating motifs' (*Build Up Your Chess 1*, Chapter 1). A rook is excellent at giving the queen the required support. The queen and rook can either form a battery or attack the king along parallel lines. Although the major pieces can be dangerous at a distance, it is often important to bring the queen near to the opposing king, so as to deprive it of possible escape squares.

In this chapter we shall deal with various forms of cooperation between the major pieces. The situation of the defending side becomes particularly delicate when his king does not have a pawn shield in front of it. It is then that the major pieces display all their power, and are often able to outwit a numerically superior army and mate the opposing king.

In the following examples, the attacking side profits from weaknesses in the opponent's castled position.

Diagram 8-1

M.Wahls – A.Yusupov

Bundesliga 1992

Black has an advantage on the kingside. He needs an open file to effectively utilize his major pieces.

1...h3!

Black's breakthrough is based on an interesting criss-cross motif.

2.gxh3  $\mathbb{Q}h7!!$

It will later become clear why the queen must remain on the b1-h7 diagonal.

3.Qg2

3... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  is met by 3... $\mathbb{Q}xh3!-$ .

Diagram 8-2

This cross-pin leads to rapid success: 4.Qf3  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  5.Qxg7  $\mathbb{Q}h1\uparrow$  6.Qf2  $\mathbb{Q}h2\uparrow$  7.Qg3  $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$

3... $\mathbb{Q}h5$  4.Qxg3

If 4.Qh1, then 4... $\mathbb{Q}c2\uparrow!$  (only possible due to 2... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ ) 5.Qg1 g2 6.Qh2  $\mathbb{Q}d1\uparrow$  and Black wins.

## Attacking with queen and rook

4... $\mathbb{E}xh3$ 

Once more Black makes use of the criss-cross motif.

5. $\mathbb{E}xg7$ 

5. $\mathbb{E}ff3$  is no better: 5... $\mathbb{E}h2\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g1$  (or 6. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}b1\#$  7. $\mathbb{W}e1$   $\mathbb{E}h1\#$ ) 6... $\mathbb{E}h1\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}h2\#$

Now the combined power of the queen and rook comes into its own.

Diagram 8-3

5... $\mathbb{E}h2\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 

The other king moves also lose:

a) 6. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}h3\#$

b) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}h5\#$  7. $\mathbb{E}g4$   $\mathbb{E}h3\#$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}xg4$  9. $\mathbb{W}c1$  (9. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}xg1\#$ ) 9... $\mathbb{E}f3\#$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}g3\#$  11. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{W}g2\#$

6... $\mathbb{E}h1\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ 

7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  is followed by 7... $\mathbb{W}h2\#$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{E}xf1\#$ .

7... $\mathbb{W}c2\#$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 

8. $\mathbb{W}e2$  loses to 8... $\mathbb{E}h2\#$ .

And if 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  then 8... $\mathbb{E}xf1\#$  9. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7\#$ .

8... $\mathbb{W}h2\#$  9. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{W}h5\#$  10. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}h3\#$ 

White will soon be mated.

0-1

Diagram 8-4

V.Lazarev – A.Yusupov

Bundesliga 2003

1... $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ 

Black forces a weakening of the castled position. White had been hoping for 1... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ ? 2. $\mathbb{W}e8\#$ !.

## 2.g4

2.g3 would have been more resilient.

2... $\mathbb{Q}e3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 

Black is happy to exchange knights, because his major pieces can still attack the exposed white king.

4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{W}d8$ 

Centralizing the queen by 4... $\mathbb{W}e5\#$  is also worth considering.

5. $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 

5. $\mathbb{W}d2$  is met by 5... $\mathbb{E}e6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{E}e5$  and White cannot benefit from the pin on the d-file: 7. $\mathbb{E}d1?$  ( $\mathbb{Q}7.\mathbb{E}f1\#$ ) 7... $\mathbb{W}h4\#$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}xh3\#$  9. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}xg4\#$  10. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{E}f5\#$  11. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}g3\#$  12. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}f3\#$  13. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}f1\#$

Diagram 8-3

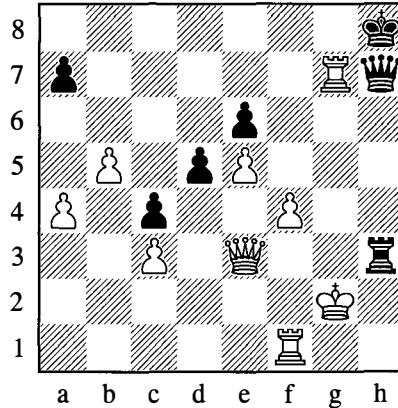
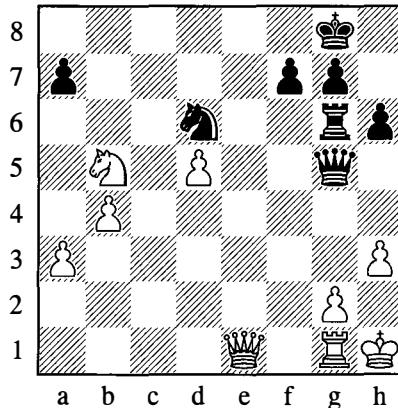


Diagram 8-4





If 3... $\mathbb{Q}xc3?$  then 4. $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xg8$  5. $h\mathbb{x}g8\mathbb{Q}\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xg8$   
 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xf5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  9. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$   
 10. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ +-.

The only way for Black to fight on is: 3... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$   
 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   
 Black has 'succeeded' in reaching a highly unpleasant ending.

Diagram 8-8

**4.h8 $\mathbb{Q}\#$ !**

After this new sacrifice the black king remains completely bare.

4. $\mathbb{Q}g5\#?$  would be wrong, on account of 4... $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$ ; the white pawn on h7 gets in the way of the attack and simply protects the opposing king.

**4... $\mathbb{Q}xh8$**

Or 4... $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xg4\#$   
 $\mathbb{Q}f7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ .

**5. $\mathbb{Q}g5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$**

5... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xh3\#$

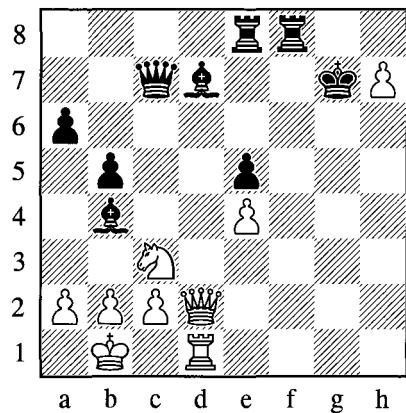
**6. $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xf5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$**

7... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  loses the queen to 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$ .

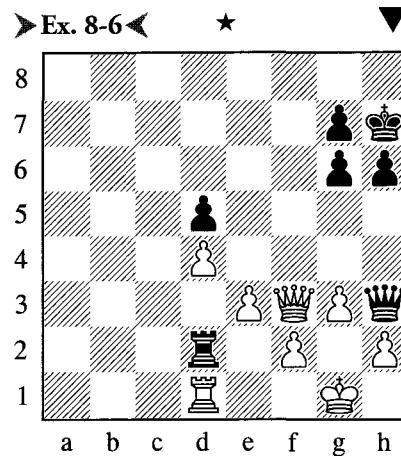
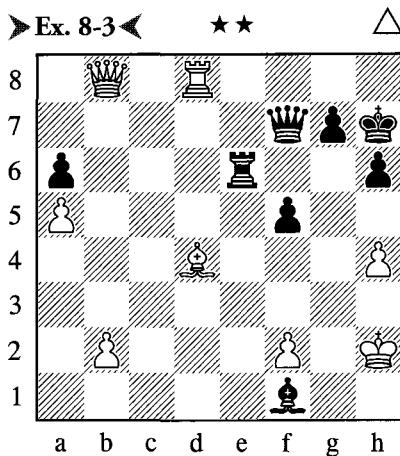
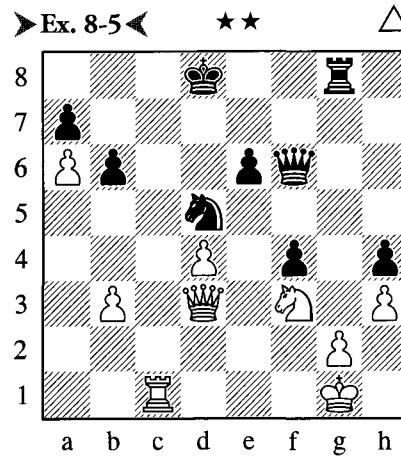
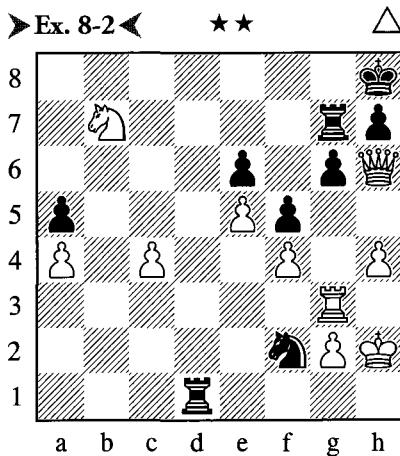
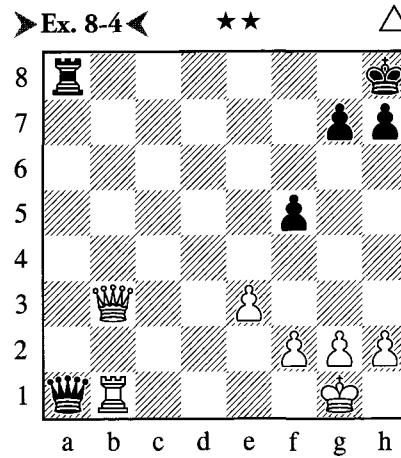
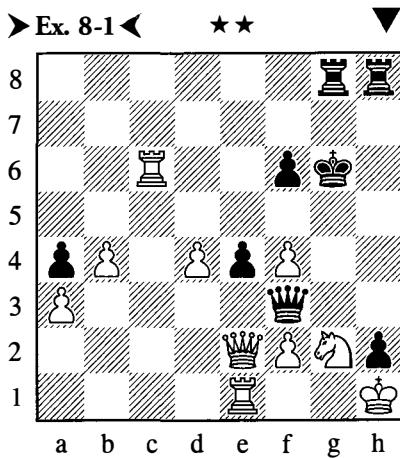
**8. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xe8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$**

**1-0**

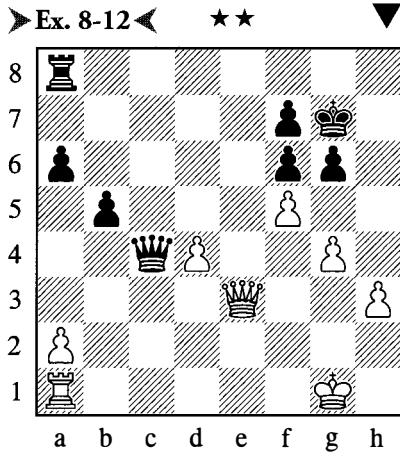
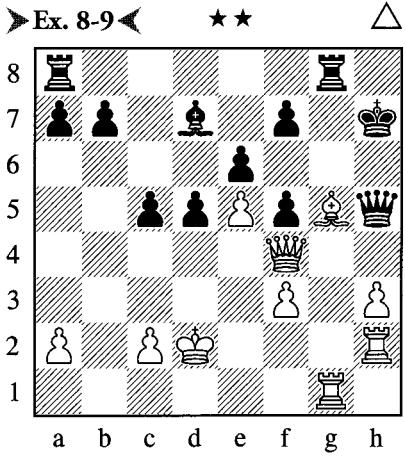
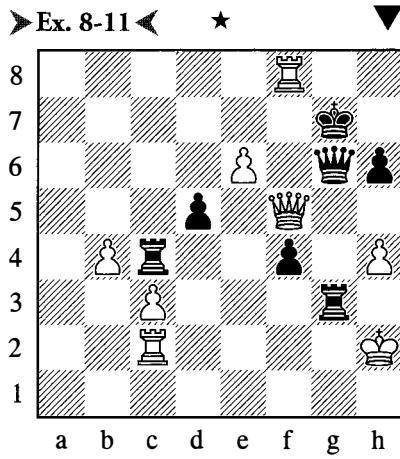
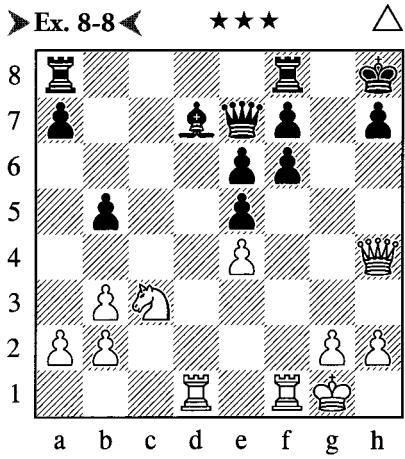
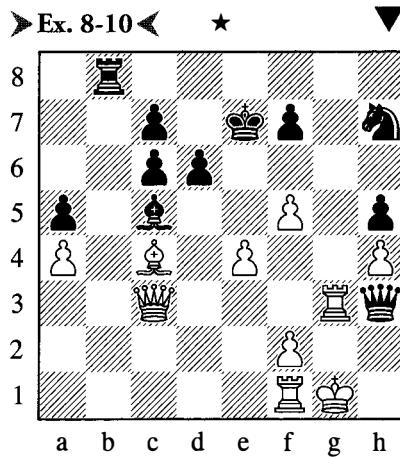
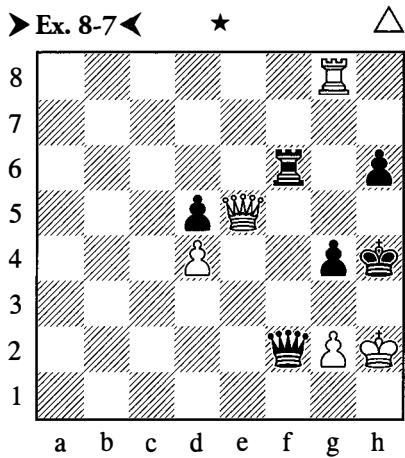
Diagram 8-8



# Exercises



# Exercises



# Solutions

## Ex. 8-1

Variation from the game

P.Blatny – A.Yusupov

Bundesliga 1994

1... $\mathbb{W}xg2\#!!$

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{h}1\mathbb{W}\#!!$

(another 1 point)

3. $\mathbb{E}xh1$   $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

4. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{E}xh1\#$

4... $\mathbb{E}xh1\#$

## Ex. 8-2

A.Yusupov – Y.Meister

German Ch, Altenkirchen 2005

1. $\mathbb{E}g5!$

(2 points)

Of course not 1. $\mathbb{E}b3??$   $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$ .

1. $\mathbb{W}xg7\#!!$  2. $\mathbb{E}a3$  (1 consolation point) is also inferior: 2... $\mathbb{E}h1\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{E}xh4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{E}g4$  Black has good counterplay.

1... $\mathbb{E}h1\#$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$

White's advantage in material will decide the game. In a few more moves White will be able to consolidate his position, either freeing the queen from h6 or supporting its attack.

3... $\mathbb{Q}g8$

Black has nothing better: 3... $\mathbb{Q}xg5\#$  (3... $\mathbb{E}xb7$ ? 4. $\mathbb{W}f8\#$ ) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  (or 4. $\mathbb{W}xg5$   $\mathbb{E}xb7$  5. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  6. $\mathbb{W}xe6\#$ ) 6... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  7. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{E}e7$  8.c5  $\mathbb{E}c1$  9.c6  $\mathbb{E}xc6$  10.h5+– 4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{E}f1\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{E}xf4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{E}xe4\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f2+–$   $\mathbb{E}xc4$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{E}xa4$  9. $\mathbb{Q}c3!$   $\mathbb{E}a2\#$  10. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$

White's simplest win is 11. $\mathbb{E}c8\#$   $\mathbb{E}g8$  12. $\mathbb{E}c7$ .

1–0

## Ex. 8-3

E.Geller – V.Tukmakov

USSR Ch, Moscow 1983

1. $\mathbb{E}h8\#!!$  2. $\mathbb{W}g3\#!!$

(1 point)

1 consolation point for 2. $\mathbb{E}g8+–$ .

1... $\mathbb{Q}h5$  3. $\mathbb{W}g5\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 8-4

L.Polugaevsky – L.Psakhis

USSR Ch, Moscow 1983

1. $\mathbb{g}4!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{W}e5$

Other moves lose:

- a) 1... $\mathbb{W}xg4?$  2. $\mathbb{E}xa1+–$
- b) 1... $\mathbb{W}f6$  2. $\mathbb{W}b8\#$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  3. $\mathbb{W}xf8\#$   $\mathbb{E}xf8$  4. $\mathbb{W}xf5+–$  (Polugaevsky)

2. $\mathbb{f}4!$

(another 1 point)

Polugaevsky wants to win a second pawn. Black would have reasonable drawing chances after 2. $\mathbb{W}xf5$   $\mathbb{W}xf5$  3. $\mathbb{W}b8\#$   $\mathbb{W}b8\#$ .

2... $\mathbb{W}d6?!$

Black loses after 2... $\mathbb{W}f6?$  3. $\mathbb{W}b8\#$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  4. $\mathbb{W}xf8\#$   $\mathbb{E}xf8$  5. $\mathbb{W}xf5+–$ .

However, 2... $\mathbb{W}e8?!$  would be more resilient; after 3. $\mathbb{W}xf5$   $h6\#$  White still has some work to do.

3. $\mathbb{W}xf5$   $\mathbb{E}f8$  4. $\mathbb{E}d1$   $\mathbb{W}c5$  5. $\mathbb{E}d5$   $\mathbb{W}c1\#$  6. $\mathbb{W}g2$   $h6$  7. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{W}b2\#$  8. $\mathbb{W}g3$   $\mathbb{W}c1$  9. $\mathbb{E}4$   $\mathbb{W}h7$

9... $\mathbb{E}c8$  10. $\mathbb{E}d8\#$   $\mathbb{E}xd8$  11. $\mathbb{W}xd8\#$   $\mathbb{W}h7$  12. $\mathbb{W}d3+–$

10. $\mathbb{E}5$   $\mathbb{W}g1\#$  11. $\mathbb{W}h3$   $h5$  12. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$   $\mathbb{W}h6$  13. $\mathbb{W}g3$   $\mathbb{W}f1\#$

13... $\mathbb{W}xg3\#$  14. $\mathbb{W}xf6$   $\mathbb{W}xf6$  15. $\mathbb{W}xf6$  (Polugaevsky)

14. $\mathbb{W}h4$   $\mathbb{W}xf6$  15. $\mathbb{W}xf6$

1–0

# Solutions

## Ex. 8-5

V.Hort – R.Tibensky

Czechoslovakian Ch, Sumperk 1984

1.  $\mathbb{W}h7!$

(1 point)

This strong move puts Black in difficulties.

1.  $\mathbb{W}c2$  is less dangerous: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}c6$   $\mathbb{W}g6=$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  would lose to 2.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{B}c8$ .

1...  $\mathbb{W}g7$  is more stubborn, although 2.  $\mathbb{W}xh4\#$  is clearly good for White.

2.  $\mathbb{W}c2!$

(another 1 point)

Now White is able to penetrate down the c-file.

2.  $\mathbb{W}xh4$  is not so clear: 2...  $\mathbb{W}xh4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh4$   $\mathbb{Q}d5\pm$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$

3...  $\mathbb{W}g6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}b8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xf4\#$  –

4.  $\mathbb{W}xa7$

Now 4...  $\mathbb{W}g7$  would simply be met by 5.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$  –.

1-0

## Ex. 8-6

Based on the game

I.Nei – M.Taimanov

Moscow (blitz) 1975

1...  $\mathbb{W}f5!$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xf5$   $\mathbb{B}xd1\#$  –

(1 point)

## Ex. 8-7

K.Androvitsky – Kosa

Hungary 1970

1.  $\mathbb{W}g5\#$ ! –

(1 point)

Mate is forced: 1...  $\mathbb{h}xg5$  2.  $\mathbb{B}h8\#$   $\mathbb{B}h6$

3.  $\mathbb{B}xh6\#$

## Ex. 8-8

W.Thormann – R.Tischbirek

East German Ch, Suhl 1979

1.  $\mathbb{B}xd7!$

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{W}xd7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{B}f3$

(another 1 point)

3...  $\mathbb{B}fd8$

If 3...  $\mathbb{W}d4\#$  then 4.  $\mathbb{B}f1$  –.

3...  $\mathbb{B}fc8?$  is followed by: 4.  $\mathbb{W}h6!$   $\mathbb{B}xc3$  5.  $\mathbb{B}xc3$   $\mathbb{W}d1\#$  6.  $\mathbb{B}f2$   $\mathbb{W}c2\#$  7.  $\mathbb{B}g3$   $\mathbb{W}xe4$  8.  $\mathbb{B}h3$  –

4.  $\mathbb{W}h6!$

(another 1 point)

4...  $\mathbb{W}d4\#$

4...  $f5$  5.  $\mathbb{B}g3\#$   $\mathbb{B}f7$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  7.  $\mathbb{B}g8\#$

5.  $\mathbb{B}f1$   $\mathbb{W}d3\#$  6.  $\mathbb{B}xd3$   $\mathbb{B}xd3$  7.  $\mathbb{W}g5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$

8.  $\mathbb{W}xe5$   $\mathbb{B}ad8$  9.  $\mathbb{W}c5\#$

1-0

## Ex. 8-9

K.Podzielny – J.Pospiech

Correspondence game

1.  $\mathbb{B}g4!$

(2 points)

White threatens  $\mathbb{B}h4$ .

1...  $\mathbb{B}xg5$

Black cannot take the rook: 1...  $\mathbb{f}xg4?$  2.  $\mathbb{h}xg4$   $\mathbb{W}xh2\#$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xh2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h6\#$

2.  $\mathbb{B}xg5\#$

After 2.  $\mathbb{B}h4?$  Black would get sufficient material for the queen.

2...  $\mathbb{W}h6$  3.  $\mathbb{B}hg2$

Either 3.  $\mathbb{W}g3$  or 3.  $h4$  would be more accurate.

3...  $\mathbb{B}h8?$

This allows an echo of the previous combination.

Instead 3...  $\mathbb{B}g8$  would have given Black some chances to defend.

4.  $\mathbb{B}2g4!+$  –  $f6$

4...  $\mathbb{f}xg4$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$  –

5.  $\mathbb{B}h4$   $\mathbb{f}xg5$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xg5$   $\mathbb{W}xh4$  7.  $\mathbb{W}xh4\#$

1-0

# Solutions



## Ex. 8-10

Gendel – Shushkevich

Moscow 1956

1... $\mathbb{B}g8!$

(1 point)

A criss-cross motif, as in Diagram 8-2.

2. $f6\#$

2. $\mathbb{B}xg8$   $\mathbb{W}xc3-$ +

2... $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Or 2... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3. $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  4. $\mathbb{B}xg8$   $\mathbb{W}xh4-$ +

3. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$   $fxe6$  4. $\mathbb{B}g7\#$   $\mathbb{B}xg7\#$  5. $fxg7$   $\mathbb{W}xc3$   
6. $g8\mathbb{Q}$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$

If White now tries 7. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  8. $\mathbb{B}b1$ , then Black has 8... $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$  9. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}b6-$ +

0–1

## Ex. 8-11

N.Smyslov – Sprostinsk

Correspondence game 1984

1... $\mathbb{B}h3\#$ !

(1 point)

Both ways of taking the rook lose: 2. $\mathbb{W}xh3$   
(2. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{W}g3\#$ ) 2... $\mathbb{W}xc2\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8-$ +

0–1

## Ex. 8-12

V.Simagin – A.Lilienthal

Parnu 1947

1... $\mathbb{B}e8!$

The positional 1... $g5$ ! (1 consolation point) is also worth considering.

2. $\mathbb{W}xe8$

2. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{B}e2$  3. $\mathbb{W}d1$   $\mathbb{B}e3-$ +

2... $\mathbb{W}xd4\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}xa1-$ +

(2 points)

4. $fxg6$   $\mathbb{W}xa2\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}d5\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $fxg6$   
7. $h4$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $b4$  9. $h5$   $gxh5$  10. $gxh5$   $f5$   
11. $\mathbb{W}c8$   $a5$  12. $\mathbb{W}a8$   $\mathbb{W}d3\#$  13. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}d4\#$   
14. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}f4\#$  15. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}g5\#$  16. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}h4\#$   
17. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}c4\#$  18. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}d4\#$  19. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}b6$   
20. $\mathbb{W}e8$   $b3$  21. $\mathbb{W}e5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$

0–1

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **21**

- 18 points and above → **Excellent**
- 15 points and above → **Good**
- 11 points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **11** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Active moves
- ✓ Forced play
- ✓ Introduction to the test

## Forced Variations

Whenever we are calculating variations, we should first consider those which force our opponent into a specific reaction. Forced variations lie at the heart of the calculation of variations. Moreover, they are easier to calculate and give us more security.

In every position we must first look for the **active moves**: checks, captures, mating threats or attacks on opposing pieces. It is these moves which have the highest level of priority. Checks are especially useful since the opponent has only a limited number of replies. It is often possible to totally determine the future course of the game if the opponent is given only a single possible reply.

The following sample games show the importance of forced variations in practical play.

## P.Tregubov – A.Yusupov

France 2005

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  e6 3.c4 d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  c5 5.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   
 6.e4  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  7.bxc3 cxd4 8.cxd4  $\mathbb{Q}b4\#$  9. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2\#$   
 10. $\mathbb{W}xd2$  0–0 11. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  12.0–0 b6 13. $\mathbb{R}ad1$   
 $\mathbb{Q}a5$  14. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  15. $\mathbb{Q}fe1$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  16.d5! exd5

## Diagram 9-1



## Diagram 9-1

17.exd5!

17.e5 is less accurate, on account of 17... $\mathbb{Q}c4$   
 18. $\mathbb{W}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}b2$ .

17... $\mathbb{W}d6$ 

17... $\mathbb{W}f6$ ? 18. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  is good for White, in view of  
 18...h6 19. $\mathbb{Q}h7\pm$ .

18. $\mathbb{R}e5\#?$ 

An interesting idea. The rook is transferred to the kingside to support the attack.

Here 18. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  is not so good, as Black can reply 18...h6.

18... $\mathbb{R}ae8$  19. $\mathbb{Q}h5$  h6 20.h3

A useful move, controlling the g4-square (which becomes important if Black brings his bishop to c8), and giving the king an escape square.

20... $\mathbb{Q}c8$  21. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$   $\mathbb{R}e7\#?$ 

A decisive mistake.



Diagram 9-5

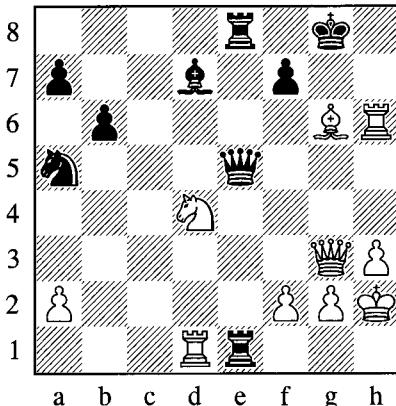


Diagram 9-6

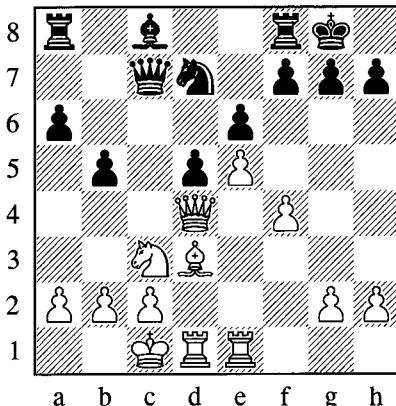


Diagram 9-7

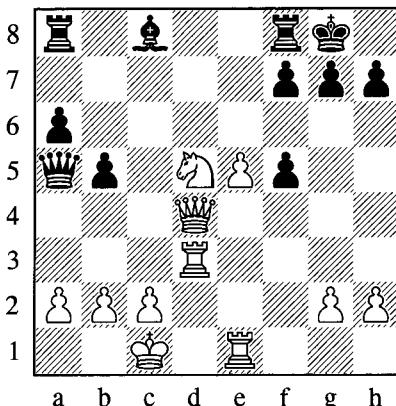


Diagram 9-5

28.♕xf7†!

This leads quickly to victory, although 28.f4 ♜g7 29.♕xe1 ♜xe1 30.♕g5 also wins for White.

28...♚xf7 29.♕h7† ♜f8 30.f4!

Unpinning the white queen. Now after 30...♛f6 31.♕xe1 ♜xe1 32.♕xf4 ♜f4† 33.♔h1 Black's position would be hopeless.

1-0

J.Aagaard – S.Brynell

Stockholm 2004

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♘c3 ♘f6 4.e5 ♘fd7 5.f4 c5 6.♘b3 ♘c6 7.♕e3 cxd4 8.♘xd4 ♕c5 9.♕d2 0-0 10.0-0-0 a6 11.♕f2 ♘xd4 12.♘xd4 ♘c7 13.♘d3 ♘xd4 14.♘xd4 b5 15.♕he1!

Diagram 9-6

White is playing very solidly in the centre and preparing the dangerous breakthrough f4-f5. For that reason, Black should swap queens here with 15...♛c5.

15...♛c5? 16.f5!

The threat is f5-f6 and the pawn wedge would be very dangerous.

16...exf5 17.♘xd5 ♘xd3†

After 17...♛a7 18.♕f4! (or 18.♘f6†!) White has a winning kingside attack.

18.♕xd3 ♛a5?!

Diagram 9-7

This is a key moment in the game. White correctly believes that he has a decisive advantage (all his forces are already in play and are well-coordinated in the attack), and so he looks for a forced win. Here Aagaard invested a great deal of time in calculating the variations accurately. (You can find extensive annotations regarding this in Aagaard's book, *Excelling at Chess Calculation*.)

19.b4!

Without wasting any time, White gets rid of the threat of ...♛xe1†. White can also win by first playing 19.♘f6†! gxf6 and then 20.b4.

19...♛xa2

Both 19...♛a4? 20.♘b6+– and 19...♛d8? 20.♘f6+– are clearly hopeless for Black

**20.♕f6†!**

Another logical continuation, opening up the opposing castled position.

**20...gx f6**

20...♔h8 is met by 21.♕h3 gx f6 (21...h6 22.♕f4+–) 22.♕h4. Black has no good way of parrying the threat of mate on h7. However, because the move mate threat is less forcing than a check, some care is still required here. The following checks by the opponent absolutely had to be seen and taken into account. 22...♕a1† 23.♔d2 ♕d8† 24.♔e2 ♕x e5† 25.♔f1 The checks run out and White wins.

**21.♕g3†**

21.♕h4! would be even simpler, since the d3-rook protects the white king from checks. 21...f4 22.exf6 ♔h8 23.♕h6 ♕g8

**Diagram 9-8**

The simplest way for White to continue is with checks: 24.♕g7!! (24.♕e8! also wins) 24...♕xg7 25.♕d8† ♕g8 26.♕xg8† ♕xg8 27.♕e8#

**21...♔h8 22.♕h4**

Threatening ♕xf6#.

22...♕a1† 23.♔d2 ♕d8† 24.♔e2 ♕x e5† 25.♔f1 ♕d1

Black has no good defence:

- a) 25...♕d4 26.♕xd4 ♕xd4 27.♕e8#
- b) 25...♕d6 loses immediately to 26.♕h3.

**26.♕xd1 ♕e6**

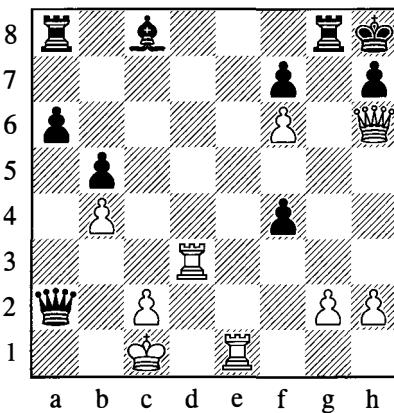
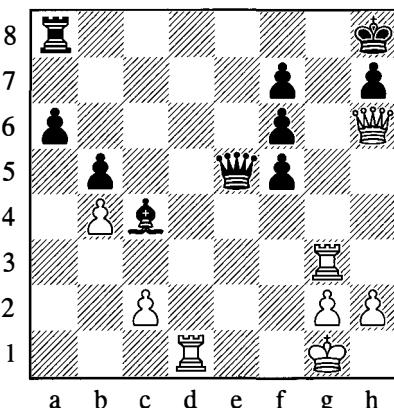
26...♗b7 27.♕h6!–

27.♕h6 ♕c4† 28.♔g1!

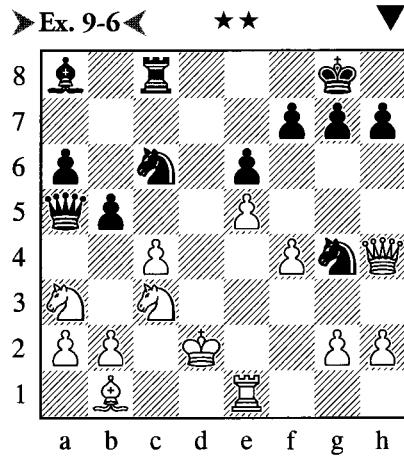
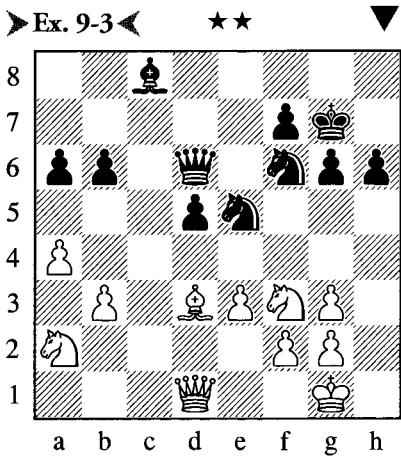
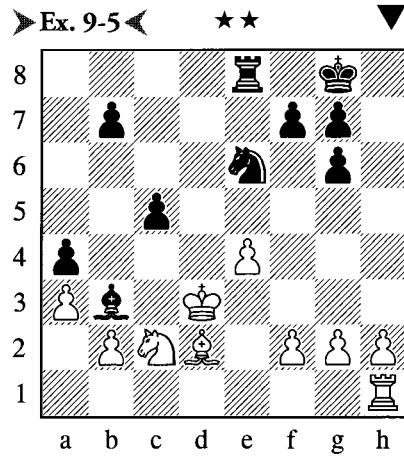
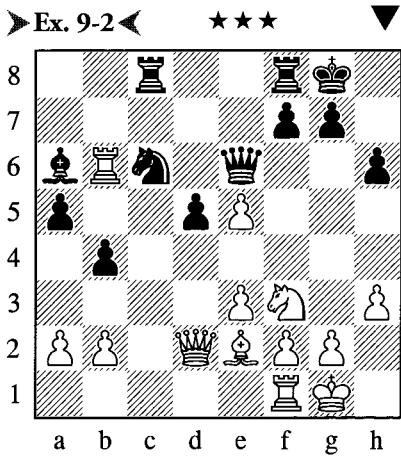
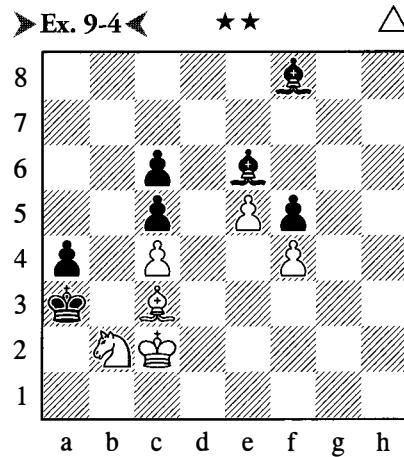
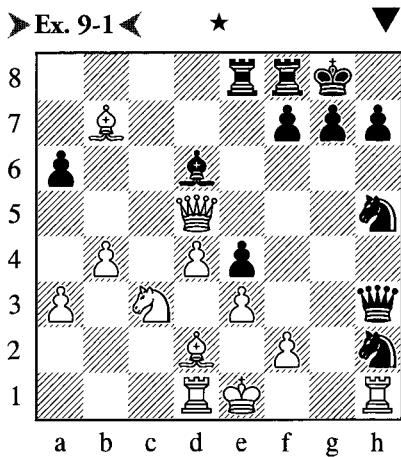
**Diagram 9-9**

**1–0**

In the test which follows, please look for active candidate moves: first checks, then threats of mate, captures of pieces, and attacks on pieces. In the subsequent moves too, you really must continue to be active and attack. The very first variations to examine are the forcing ones, which do not leave your opponent any choice. It can happen that you find yourself on the correct road and then do not have to look for an alternative. You only need to find one solution. But you should calculate out that solution very precisely.

**Diagram 9-8 (analysis)****Diagram 9-9**

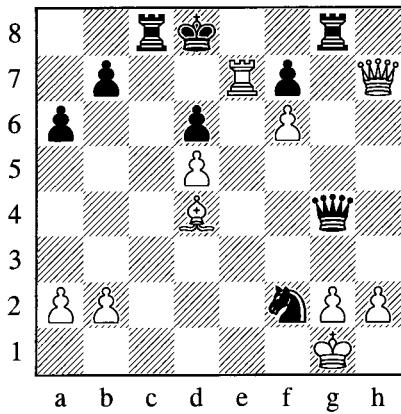
# Exercises



# Exercises

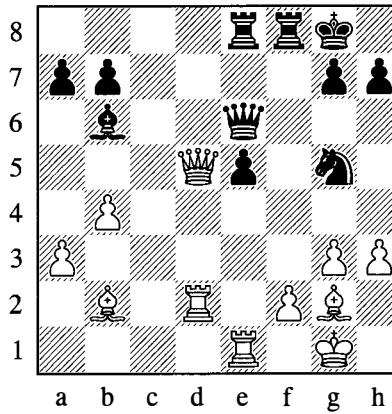
► Ex. 9-7 ◀

★★



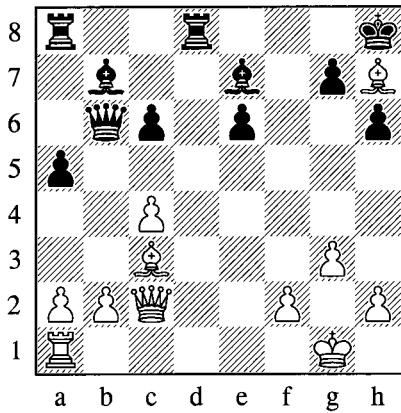
► Ex. 9-10 ◀

★★★



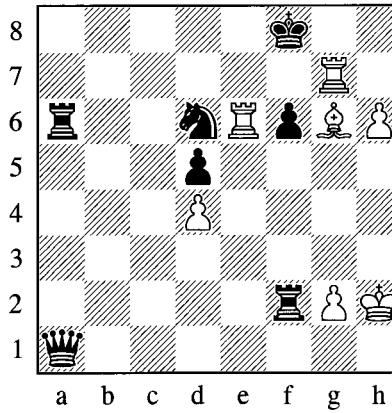
► Ex. 9-8 ◀

★★



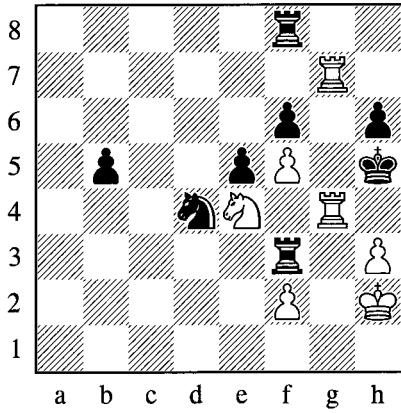
► Ex. 9-11 ◀

★★



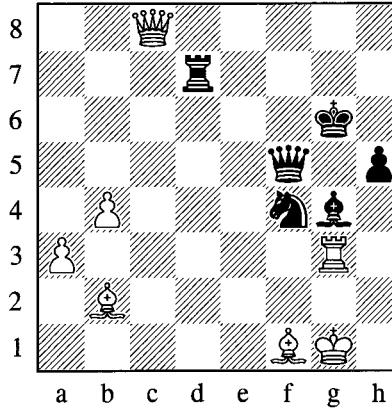
► Ex. 9-9 ◀

★



► Ex. 9-12 ◀

★★



# Solutions

## Ex. 9-1

**F.Vallejo Pons – I.Sokolov**

Bundesliga 2005

1... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$

The immediate 1... $\mathbb{Q}g3$  (also 1 point) wins easily too:

a) 2. $\mathbb{f}xg3$   $\mathbb{Q}xg3\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}g2\#$

b) 2. $\mathbb{E}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}xh1$  is hopeless for White.

2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ !

(1 point)

3. $\mathbb{f}xg3$  is met by 3... $\mathbb{W}g2\#$ .

**0–1**

## Ex. 9-2

**A.Graf – R.Dautov**

Bundesliga 2005

1... $\mathbb{Q}xe2$

(1 point)

This leads to a series of exchanges.

2. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$

2... $\mathbb{W}xe2$  is strongly met by 2... $\mathbb{Q}d4!$  3. $\mathbb{W}a6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$  4. $\mathbb{g}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}xh3\#$ .

(another 1 point for this variation)

2... $\mathbb{W}xe5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $\mathbb{W}c7\#$ !

(another 1 point)

Both 3... $\mathbb{W}f6$  and 3... $\mathbb{W}e6$  (also 1 point) lead to equality: 4. $\mathbb{W}xe2$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6=$

However, 3... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  lets White keep an edge:

4. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xf1\pm$

4. $\mathbb{W}xe2$

4. $\mathbb{Q}c1?$  is an interesting try. Then 4... $\mathbb{W}xb6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xc8$   $\mathbb{W}e6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}a7$  would be slightly better for White, so Black should prefer either 4... $\mathbb{Q}ce8!$  or 4... $\mathbb{Q}h7!$  with great complications,

4... $\mathbb{W}xb6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xc8$   $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  7. $\mathbb{W}d2$

$\mathbb{W}e6$

Now 8. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc1\#$  9. $\mathbb{W}xcl$   $\mathbb{W}e4$  is dead level.

**½–½**

## Ex. 9-3

**L.Van Wely – A.Shirov**

Bundesliga 2005

1... $\mathbb{Q}xd3!$  2. $\mathbb{W}xd3$   $\mathbb{W}a3$

(2 points)

Black wins a pawn.

3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$

3. $\mathbb{W}c2$  is met by 3... $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ .

If 3... $\mathbb{W}c3?$  then 3... $\mathbb{W}xa2$  4. $\mathbb{W}xc8$   $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$ .

3... $\mathbb{W}xb3\#$

## Ex. 9-4

**V.Anand – V.Topalov**

Monte Carlo (rapid) 2005

1. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$

(2 points)

There is no defence against 2. $\mathbb{Q}b2\#$  followed by 3... $\mathbb{Q}c1\#$ .

**1–0**

## Ex. 9-5

**L.Van Wely – P.Svidler**

Monte Carlo (rapid) 2005

1... $\mathbb{E}d8\#$

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7!$

(another 1 point)

Threatening 3... $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$ .

**0–1**

## Ex. 9-6

**D.Navara – P.Eljanov**

Deizisau 2005

1... $\mathbb{W}d8\#$

The first things to investigate are checks!

2. $\mathbb{W}xd8\#$   $\mathbb{E}xd8\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $b4\#$

(2 points)

Black wins a piece.

4. $\mathbb{Q}ab5$   $axb5$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}f2$

7. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$   $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$  8. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xb5$

**0–1**

# Solutions

## Ex. 9-7

**E.Khramov – A.Roshal**

USSR

1.  $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$ !

White has found the right idea, but he chooses the wrong move order. The precise route to victory is: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$ !!

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{W}xd7$  (1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}e7\#$ )

2.  $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$ !  $\mathbb{E}c7$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xg8\#$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{W}xg8\#$   $\mathbb{W}e8$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xe8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf2+-$

(another 1 point for the whole variation)

1...  $\mathbb{E}c7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$ !

You only get 1 consolation point if you opted for this move order; Black can put up a defence!

2...  $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xg8\#$ ?

The only way to play for a win is the brave:

4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#?$   $\mathbb{W}xg2\#$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}h1\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{E}g2\#$

7.  $\mathbb{Q}f2\#-$

4...  $\mathbb{W}xg8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$   $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$ ?

6...  $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$  is correct: 7.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$   $\mathbb{W}xd8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $b6=$  Black has constructed a fortress.

7.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$

1-0

## Ex. 9-8

**I.Zaitsev – Nadj**

USSR

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7\#$ !

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g8\#$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}g8\!$

(another 1 point)

Black is mated after 3...  $\mathbb{W}xg8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xh6\#$ .

1-0

## Ex. 9-9

Variation from the game

**V.Kramnik – I.Sokolov**

Wijk aan Zee 2005

1.  $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ !  $\mathbb{E}xg3$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xg3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  3.  $\mathbb{E}h4\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh4$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 9-10

**R.Mainka – E.Heyken**

Travemünde 2005

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$ !

(1 point)

But not 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh3\#?$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  3.  $\mathbb{E}xe5+-$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3\#!$

(another 1 point)

3.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{W}xd5+-$

3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe6\#$   $\mathbb{E}xe6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$

5.  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{E}h6\#-$

5...  $\mathbb{g}5\#-$

(another 1 point)

6.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}b2$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{E}h6\#$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{E}xg2$

9.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5$   $\mathbb{E}e6$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $e4$

0-1

## Ex. 9-11

Variation from the game

**A.Shirov – P.H.Nielsen**

Drammen 2004

1.  $\mathbb{E}e8\#$ !

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{h}7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$

$\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g8\#!$

(another 1 point)

5...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  6.  $\mathbb{h}8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$

7.  $\mathbb{W}h5\#$  also wins: 7...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  8.  $\mathbb{W}f5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$

9.  $\mathbb{W}d3\#$  (or 9.  $\mathbb{E}xe8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  10.  $\mathbb{W}xf2\#-$ )

9...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  10.  $\mathbb{W}g3\#$

7...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$

7...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  8.  $\mathbb{W}h6\#$

# Solutions

8.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$

Or 8.  $\mathbb{B}xg7\#$  9.  $\mathbb{W}h6\#$ .

8...  $\mathbb{B}h5$  9.  $\mathbb{B}h8\#$

## Ex. 9-12

**M.Zielinska – B.Burchardt**

Germany 2005

Black can win by force:

1...  $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$ !

(1 point)

Instead 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xe2$   $\mathbb{B}d1\#$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xd1$   $\mathbb{W}xc8$  (1 consolation point) is not so good:  
4.  $\mathbb{B}xg4$   $hxg4$  5.  $\mathbb{B}d4$   $\mathbb{W}c1\#$  6.  $\mathbb{B}g2=$

In the game, Black went seriously wrong with 1...  $\mathbb{W}e6??$  2.  $\mathbb{W}c2\#$   $\mathbb{W}f5\#$ .

2.  $\mathbb{B}xh3$

Black wins after both 2.  $\mathbb{B}h2$   $\mathbb{B}d2\#$  and 2.  $\mathbb{B}xh3$   $\mathbb{B}d1\#$ .

2...  $\mathbb{W}xf1\#$ !!

(another 1 point)

3.  $\mathbb{B}xf1$   $\mathbb{B}xh3\#$  4.  $\mathbb{B}g1$

4.  $\mathbb{B}f2$   $\mathbb{B}f7\#$  –

4...  $\mathbb{B}d1\#$  –

## Scoring

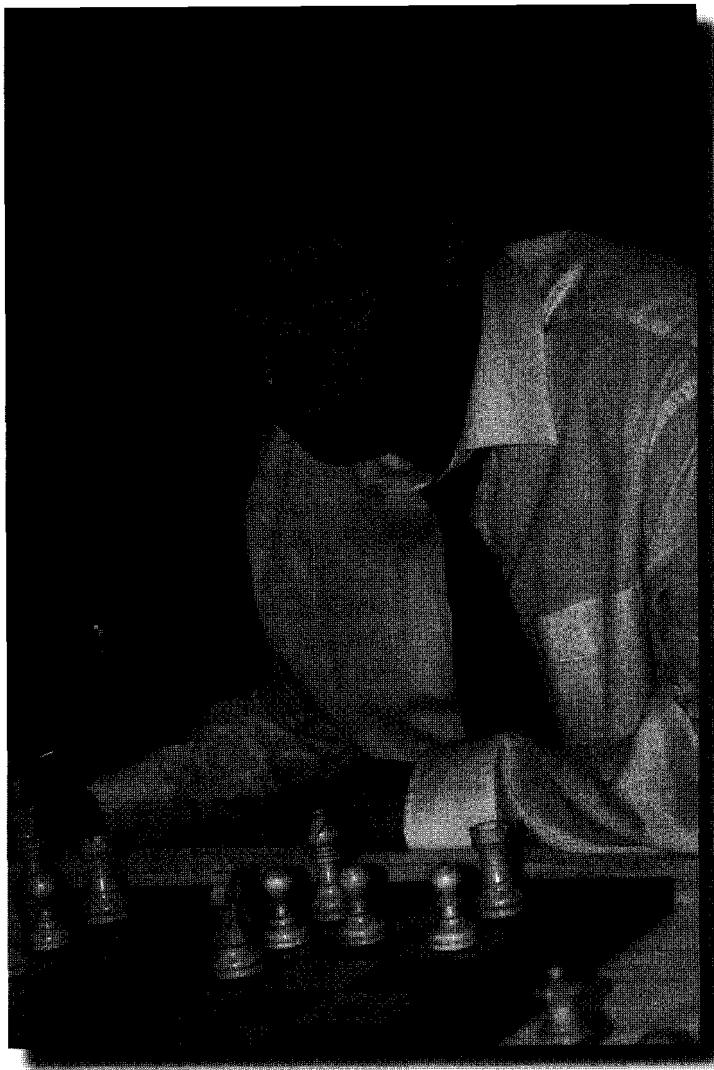
Maximum number of points is 24

21 points and above → Excellent

17 points and above → Good

12 points → Pass mark

*If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*



Alexei Shirov's attacking play  
combines wonderful imagination  
with accurate calculation

## Contents

- ✓ Coordination of the pieces on a diagonal
- ✓ Other forms of cooperation between queen and bishop

## 10

## Attacking with queen and bishop

A queen and bishop are quite easy to coordinate. We have already seen a lot of examples which underline the effectiveness of these pieces on diagonals. You can set up a queen and bishop battery in order to support the queen on a diagonal. But sometimes it makes sense to position the bishop in front of the queen, so as to create pawn weaknesses in the castled position, or to attack targets with a less valuable piece. We have frequently seen such batteries leading to sacrifices on h6 (or h3) – see, for example, Diagram 12-5 in *Build Up Your Chess 1*.

However, the flexibility of the queen means that it can also be positioned on an opposite-coloured square to the bishop, in which case the pieces will control a large number of squares between them. Against an insufficiently protected king, a bishop can often provide the queen with the support necessary to execute a mating attack.

Diagram 10-1

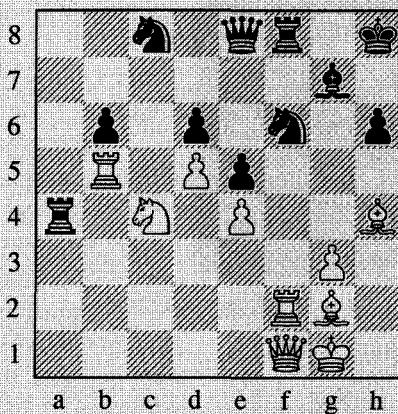


Diagram 10-1

G.Kasparov – I.Smirin

USSR Ch, Moscow 1988

Kasparov begins a complicated attack, which is based on the weakness of the light squares in the opposing camp.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{B}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xf6$   $\mathbb{W}xb5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6!!$

Kasparov is playing for a win.

3.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$  only leads to perpetual check after 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xf8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h7=$ . Here 5.  $\mathbb{Q}h3?$  would be too optimistic: 5...  $\mathbb{W}c5\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{B}a2\#$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{B}a1\#$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}c7\#$

However, 3.  $\mathbb{Q}h3!!$  leads to an advantage for White: 3...  $\mathbb{W}c5\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{B}a1$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xa1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  6.  $\mathbb{W}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8$   $b5$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{W}xd6$  9.  $\mathbb{W}xb5\pm$  But the opposite-coloured bishops mean that Black has chances of a draw here.

3...  $\mathbb{Q}g8!$

The alternative 3...  $\mathbb{B}a7$  could be considered, so as to protect the f7-square.

On the other hand, 3... $\mathbb{B}xc4?$  would be a mistake:  
 4. $\mathbb{W}f7$   $\mathbb{W}c5\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{B}c1$  6. $\mathbb{B}e8\#$  7. $\mathbb{W}f5\#$

4. $\mathbb{Q}h3!$

White brings his bishop into the game.

4... $\mathbb{B}xc4?$

### Diagram 10-2

In time trouble, Smirin underestimates the following combination, and loses the game.

Again Black could consider 4... $\mathbb{B}a7$ , although White retains some pressure.

The slightly odd 4... $h5!?$  may be the best defence.

5. $\mathbb{B}xh6!+/-$

The rook clears the square for the bishop.

5... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$

If 5... $\mathbb{W}c5\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{B}c1$  then 7. $\mathbb{B}e6\#$ .

6. $\mathbb{B}e6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  7. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$

Black has no defence against mate: 7... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  (7... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  8. $\mathbb{W}h4\#$ ) 8. $\mathbb{W}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  (8... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  9. $\mathbb{W}g8\#$ ) 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  (9... $\mathbb{Q}h6$  10. $\mathbb{W}g6\#$ ) 10. $\mathbb{W}h5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  (10... $\mathbb{Q}h6$  11. $\mathbb{W}xh6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  12. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ ) 11. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  12. $\mathbb{W}f7\#$

1-0

We shall now look at some more combinations which demonstrate the power of the coordination between queen and bishop.

### Diagram 10-3

K.Kopetzky – E.Canal

Vienna 1952

A typical combination lands the white king in a spot of bother.

1... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ ! 2. $\mathbb{g}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}xf3$

Threatening mate on both g2 and h1.

3. $\mathbb{Q}f1$

3. $\mathbb{W}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}xd5$  is also pretty hopeless, in view of the weakened white kingside.

3... $\mathbb{W}h3\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{W}b3\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$

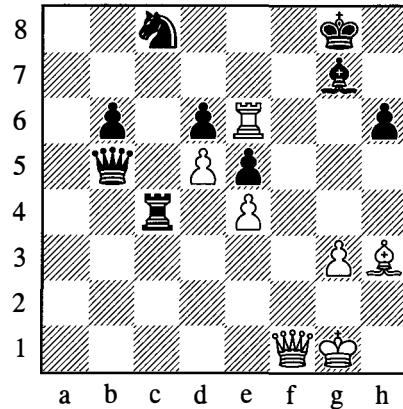
The queen and bishop pursue the white king on the light squares, once more threatening instant mate.

7. $\mathbb{W}c7$

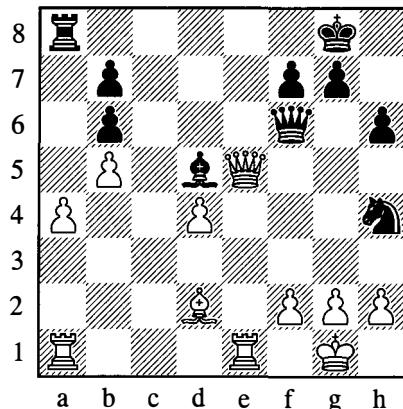
### Diagram 10-4

7... $\mathbb{B}xa4!$

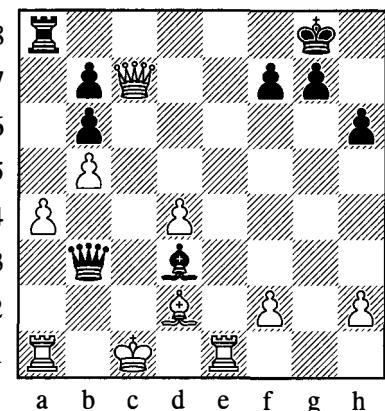
### Diagram 10-2



### Diagram 10-3



### Diagram 10-4



The key move; White's defences collapse.

**8.♕b4**

Other moves also lose quickly:

- a) 8.♕xa4 ♜b1#
- b) 8.♕c3 ♜xa1† 9.♕xa1 ♜c2#
- c) 8.♕e8† ♜h7 9.♕a8 ♜xa8! 10.♕xa8 ♜b1#

**8...♜xa1† 9.♔d2 ♜xb4†**

White's position is hopeless: 10.♔xd3 ♜xe1  
11.♕c8† ♜f8→

**0-1**

Diagram 10-5

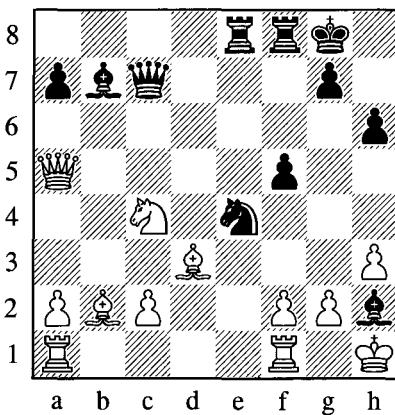


Diagram 10-6

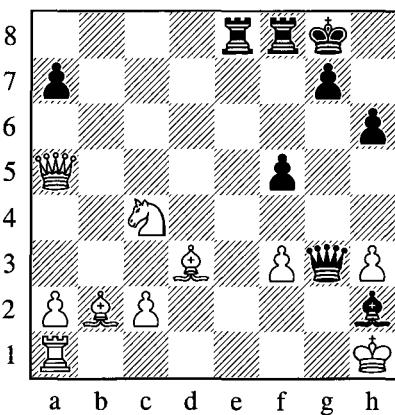


Diagram 10-5

J.Pedersen – V.Jansa

Correspondence game 1958

**1...♝g3†! 2.fxg3**

White cannot decline the sacrifice: 2.♔xh2 ♜xf1†  
3.♔g1 ♜h2† 4.♔xf1 ♜xg2#  
2...♜xg3 3.♝f3

If 3.♝d2 then 3...♜xh3 4.♝f3 ♜xf3 5.gxf3 ♜d6†  
6.♔g1 ♜c5†→.  
3.♝e3 is followed by: 3...♜xh3 4.♝xf5 (or 4.♝c4†  
♚h7 5.♔d5 ♜h4!→) 4...♜h4 5.♔e6† ♜h7 6.♝f5  
♜h5 7.♝xg7 ♜xa5 8.♝xe8 ♜f4→  
3...♜xf3 4.gxf3

Diagram 10-6

**4...♝g1?**

Black is playing beautiful chess, but giving his opponent unnecessary chances.

The simple 4...♜xh3 is better: 5.♝f1 ♜h4 6.♝d5†  
♚h7 White cannot survive the attack.

**5.♝d2?**

Of course not 5.♝xg1?? ♜xh3#.

But White gave up hope too soon! The correct defence is: 5.♝e5!! f4 6.♝d5† ♜f7 (the variation 6...♝h8? 7.♝xg7†! ♜xg7 8.♝xg1+→ demonstrates an important resource for White) 7.♝xf4! ♜xf4  
8.♝xg1±

**5...♝f2!**

Now 6.♝f1 allows 6...♝g1#, and the only other way for White to avoid being mated is to give up his queen.

**0-1**

**Diagram 10-7****I.Balanel – D.Bronstein**

Bucharest 1948

Black can carry out a typical mating attack.

**1...d5!**

Black opens the a3-f8 diagonal with tempo, so as to bring his bishop to c5.

**2.exd5 ♜c5† 3.♗h1 ♜h4! 4.h3 ♜g3!**

The threat is 5...♜h2#, and White can only stop it by giving up his queen.

5.hxg4 is of course met by 5...♜h4#.

**0-1****Diagram 10-8****J.Capablanca – C.Jaffe**

New York 1910

White is prepared to sacrifice in order to activate the queen and bishop battery.

**1.♗xe6! ♜f6**

1...fxe6 loses immediately to 2.♗xg6† ♜h8 3.♗h7#.

**2.♗e5! c5**

2...♝xe5 would be slightly more resilient.

**3.♗xh6†!**

White lays waste to his opponent's castled position.

**3...♝xh6 4.♗xf7†!**

Whatever Black does, it is mate next move.

**1-0****Diagram 10-9****Engels – Badenstein**

1937

Black has underestimated the danger and takes the poisoned pawn.

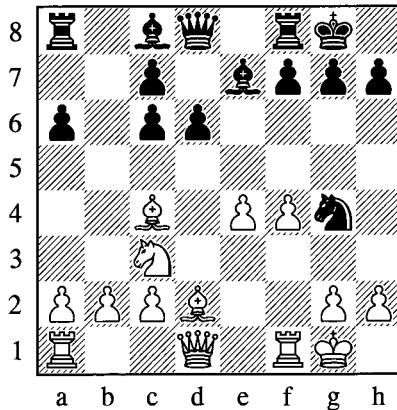
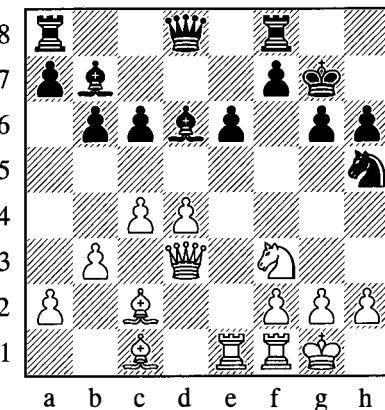
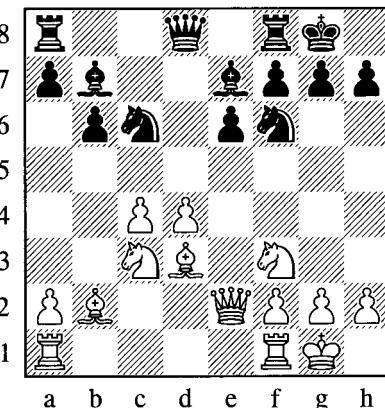
**1...♝xd4? 2.♝xd4 ♜xd4 3.♝d5! ♜c5**

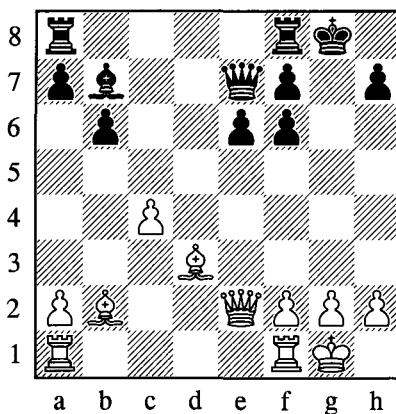
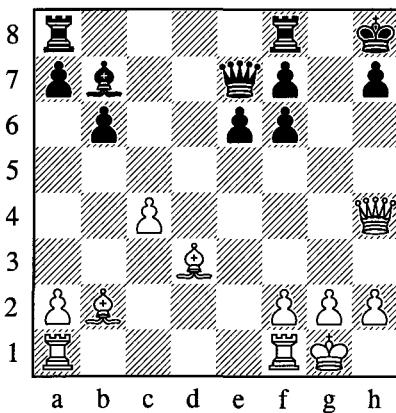
In order to protect the bishop on e7.

If 3...♜h4 then 4.♝xe7† ♜h8 5.g3 ♜h3 6.f3+–.

**4.♝xf6! gxh6**

4...♝xf6 is met by 5.♝e4+–, with the double threat of 6.♗h7# and 6.♝xf6†.

**5.♝xe7†****Diagram 10-7****Diagram 10-8****Diagram 10-9**

**Diagram 10-10****Diagram 10-11**

First 5.  $\mathbb{W}g4\#$  is also good.

5...  $\mathbb{W}xe7$

If 5...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  then 6.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  exd5 7.  $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ .

**Diagram 10-10**

6.  $\mathbb{W}g4\#!$

Leading to a typical finish.

6...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  7.  $\mathbb{W}h4\#$

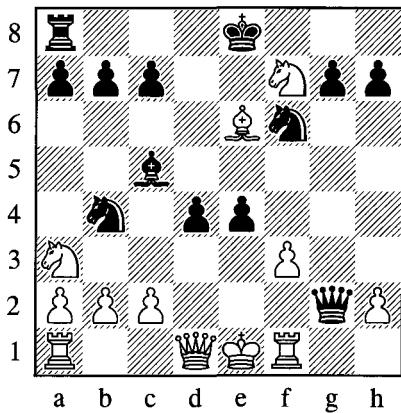
**Diagram 10-11**

Now the f6-pawn is pinned, and so Black cannot ward off the mate threat by playing ...f5.

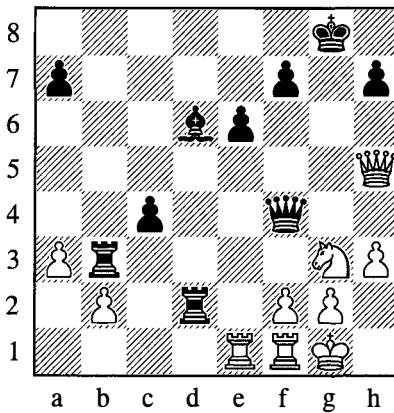
1-0

# Exercises

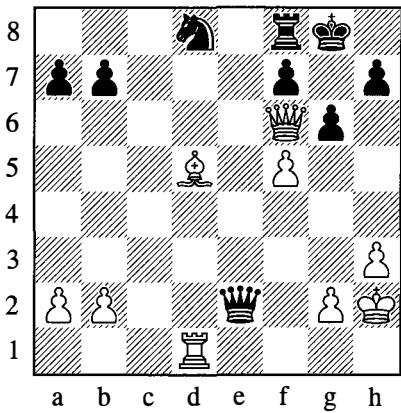
► Ex. 10-1 ◀ ★



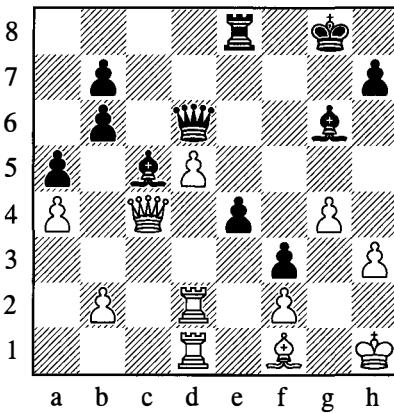
► Ex. 10-4 ◀ ★



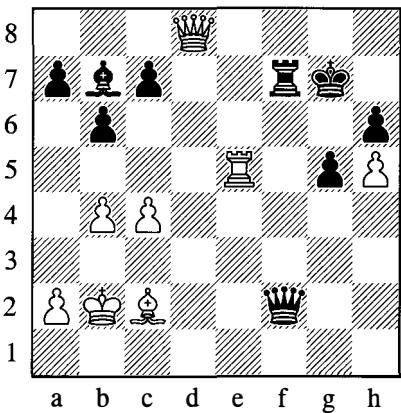
► Ex. 10-2 ◀ ★★



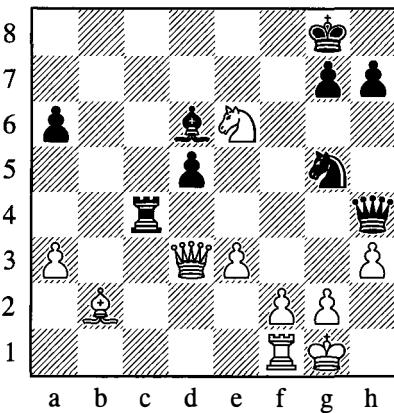
► Ex. 10-5 ◀ ★★★



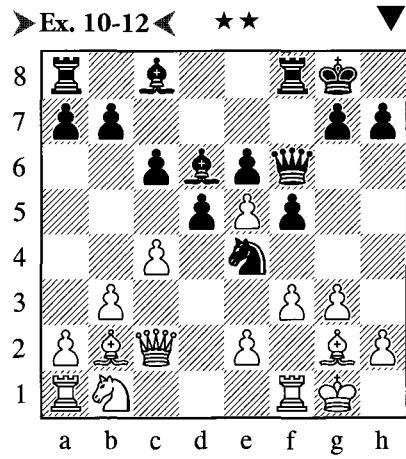
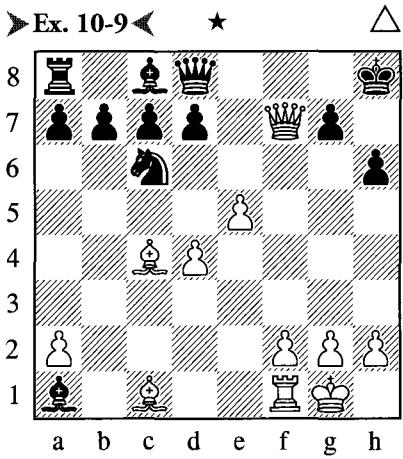
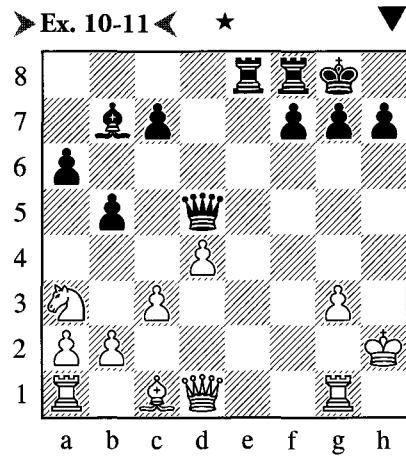
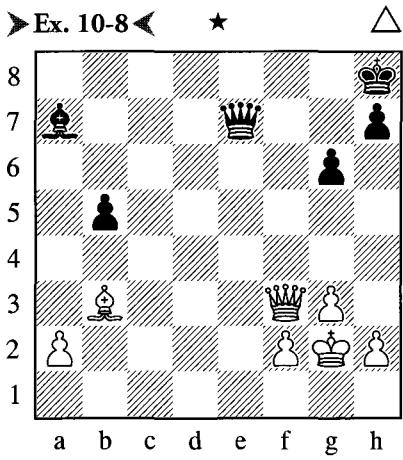
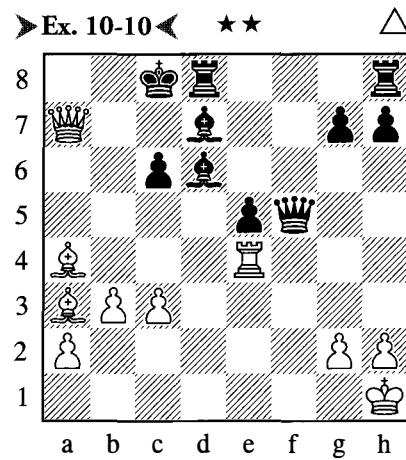
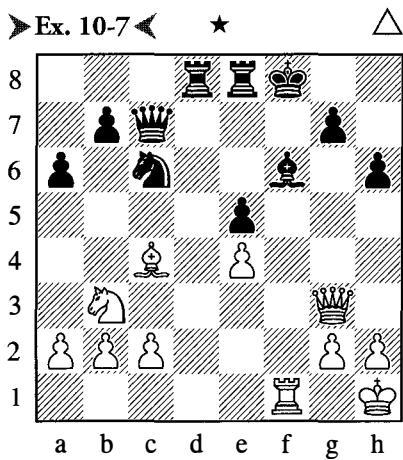
► Ex. 10-3 ◀ ★



► Ex. 10-6 ◀ ★



# Exercises



# Solutions

## Ex. 10-1

T.Barnes – P.Morphy

London 1858

1... $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{W}xd3$

Desperation, but otherwise he is mated:

2.cxd3  $\mathbb{Q}b4\#$  3. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{W}xd2\#$

2...exd3 3.0-0-0  $\mathbb{Q}xa3+$

## Ex. 10-2

L.Engels – V.Toth

Sao Paulo 1952

1.fxg6!!

(1 point)

White wins by force.

1... $\mathbb{W}xd1$

1...hxg6 2. $\mathbb{W}xg6+$ –

2. $\mathbb{Q}xh7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4. $\mathbb{W}g5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$

5. $\mathbb{W}h6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  6. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 10-3

G.Weissgerber – L.Rellstab

Bad Pyrmont 1933

1. $\mathbb{Q}xg5\#$ !!

1. $\mathbb{Q}e6$  also wins, but the move in the game is more forcing, and therefore preferable.

1...hxg5 2.h6!  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  3. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$

4. $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 10-4

Traeger – Weise

1964

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg3!$

Black has another way to win: 1... $\mathbb{Q}bx2$

2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2!$  3. $\mathbb{W}g4\#$  (3. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}bg2\#$ ) 3... $\mathbb{Q}f8!+$ – (also 1 point).

2.fxg3  $\mathbb{Q}xg2\#$ ! 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$

3. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$   $\mathbb{W}xg3\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}h2\#$ .

3... $\mathbb{W}xg3\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}h2\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 10-5

Heinicke – Pfeiffer

1957

1...b5!

(2 points)

Black wants to set up a queen and bishop battery on the b8-h2 diagonal, which would lead to a quick win.

Attempting to set up this battery by means of 1... $\mathbb{W}e5?$  is not so good, due to 2.d6!–.

However 1...e3? 2.fxe3  $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ – (2 points) is just as strong. Black's threats, such as ... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ , are too powerful for White to cope with.

2.axb5

Or 2. $\mathbb{W}xb5$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  3. $\mathbb{W}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$ –.

2... $\mathbb{Q}a$

(another 1 point)

White has no answer to the threat of ... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ .

0-1

## Ex. 10-6

Variation from the game

J.Cochrane – H.Staunton

London 1842

1... $\mathbb{Q}xh3\#$ !

But not 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe6?$  2. $\mathbb{W}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}e4$  3. $\mathbb{W}xd6$ –.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$  3.hxg4  $\mathbb{W}h2\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 10-7

W.Hartston – J.Penrose

London 1963

1. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$

1... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  2. $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$

2. $\mathbb{W}g8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3. $\mathbb{W}e6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$

(1 point)

It is mate next move.

1-0

# Solutions

## Ex. 10-8

Djakov – Ajansky

1962

1.  $\mathbb{W}c3\#$

1.  $\mathbb{W}d5\pm$  is less convincing.

1...  $\mathbb{W}g7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}c8\#$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf8\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 10-9

S.Fellner – H.Bancroft

Correspondence game 1960

1.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!$

(1 point)

The finish is either 1...hxg5 2.  $\mathbb{W}h5\#$  or 1...  $\mathbb{W}xg5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}g8\#$ .

1-0

## Ex. 10-10

L.Ljubojevic – J.Durao

Orense 1974

1.  $\mathbb{Q}b5!!$

(1 point)

Of course not 1.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6?$   $\mathbb{W}f1\#$ .

Black is now losing by force. He is threatened with instant mate, and 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  is met by 2.  $\mathbb{W}a6\#$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}df8$  is more complex, but White can continue with 2.  $\mathbb{W}a8\#$  and now:

- a) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}a5\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}a6\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}a8\#$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$
- b) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}a6\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$

(another 1 point for this variation)

- 5.  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}c5!$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}xb8\#$
- 9.  $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7\#$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$

1-0

## Ex. 10-11

Belenkij – Pirogov

1957

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e1!!$

(1 point)

This wins the game on the spot:

- a) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{W}g2\#$
- b) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{W}h5\#$
- c) 2.  $\mathbb{W}g4$   $\mathbb{W}h1\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh1$   $\mathbb{Q}xh1\#$
- d) 2.  $c4$   $bx4+-$

0-1

## Ex. 10-12

E.Grünfeld – C.Torre Repetto

Baden-Baden 1925

1...  $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$

But not 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xe5?$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  3.  $fxe4$   $\mathbb{W}xal$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c3\pm$ .

2.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$

Or 2.  $e3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}h6$  4.  $fxe4$   $fxe4+-$ .  
(1 point for this variation)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}xg3\#$

(another 1 point)

Mate is forced: 3.  $h x g 3$   $\mathbb{W}h6\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{W}xh3\#$

0-1

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is 17

- 15 points and above → **Excellent**
- 12 points and above → **Good**
- 9 points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Evaluating the position
- ✓ Positional elements
- ✓ Maintaining and exploiting a positional advantage

# Positional advantages

In chess books we often find evaluations along the lines of 'White is clearly better' or 'Black is somewhat better', although the position is materially level. There are positional advantages which cause us to give preference to one side or the other. However, we must admit that positional advantages are less clear and often less permanent than material advantages. It still requires good play to turn these advantages into either a mating attack or a win based on material. Despite that, in the hands of an experienced player these advantages are of serious importance.

We have already studied various positional elements. The control of the only open file can represent a great advantage. An inferior pawn structure or some weak squares can cause us a headache. The good or the bad bishop, the activity of the pieces, the mobility of the pawns, good or bad coordination of the pieces; these are all important factors in the position.

A positional advantage can be the result of the opponent's clumsy play, or it may be provoked by pressure being put on his position. Sometimes such an advantage is the result of one or more exchanges – if, for example, we exchange off our opponent's 'good' bishop, he might end up being left with a 'bad' bishop.

The following examples will show us how to obtain and how to exploit a positional advantage.

**A.Yusupov – C.Jones**

Minneapolis 2005

**1.d4 e6 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.e3**

I really like playing this quiet variation. White simply develops his pieces, not trying to attack straight away, but aiming to exert pressure on the opposing position at a slightly later stage. (You can learn more about this system in *Build Up Your Chess 3*, Chapter 5.)

**3...c5 4.♗d3**

Here the bishop is active and controls the e4-square.

**4...♝c6 5.0-0**

**Diagram 11-1****5...b6?!**

This move is not in harmony with 4... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ . The light-squared bishop may be well placed on the long diagonal, but the knight on c6 is depriving it of a view! Such details have their part to play, and result in some difficulties for Black.

5...d5 is more logical.

**6.c4  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  7. $\mathbb{Q}c3$** 

White is already threatening to advance in the centre with d4-d5. Black would rather avoid ...d5, since the a4-e8 diagonal has been weakened by ...b6.

**7...0-0 8.d5!±**

This gives White an advantage in space.

**8... $\mathbb{Q}b4$  9. $\mathbb{Q}e2$** 

White certainly doesn't want to exchange his light-squared bishop for the b4-knight, because he considers that knight to be an inferior piece. That will become even clearer after a few more moves.

The other way of avoiding the exchange, 9. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ , is also quite promising for White.

**9...d6 10.a3  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  11. $\mathbb{Q}d2$** **Diagram 11-2**

Why is White making another move with his knight, when he still has some undeveloped pieces?

Firstly, in closed positions time plays a lesser role.

Secondly, White is preparing for possible actions by his opponent. After 11...e5 he can play on the kingside with 12.f4. But if his opponent takes on d5, White will recapture with the pawn and obtain the fine c4-square for his knight.

**11... $\mathbb{Q}c7$  12.e4 e5 13.b4**

White aims to acquire some more small advantages. He strengthens his position on the queenside and gains the option of opening a file there.

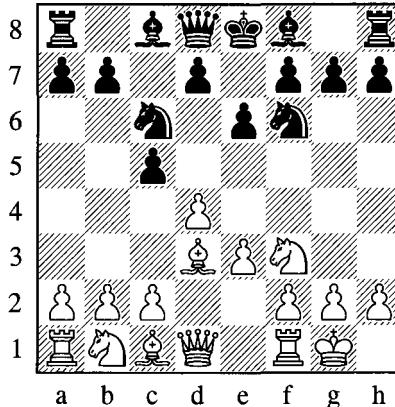
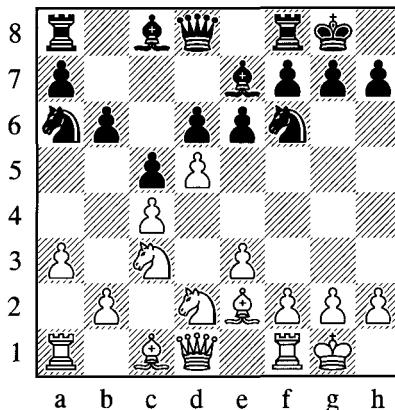
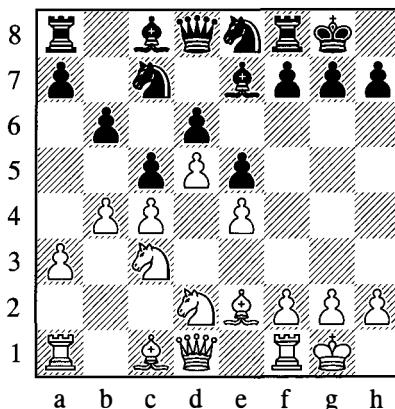
Instead 13.f4? would now concede the excellent e5-square to his opponent: 13...exf4 14. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$ ±

**13... $\mathbb{Q}fe8$** **Diagram 11-3**

The black pieces have less space, and so Black wants free his game, either with the pawn thrust ...f5, or by playing ... $\mathbb{Q}g5$  to exchange off his passive dark-squared bishop.

**14. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$** 

White prevents ...f5, and moreover exchanges his

**Diagram 11-1****Diagram 11-2****Diagram 11-3**

opponent's more active bishop! This is how to collect pluses in positional play.

Exchanging pawn with 14.bxc5 would be too soon, because Black can reply 14...dxc5 and then bring his passive knight to the good d6-square.

**14...♝g5 15.♝b1**

White quietly prepares to open the b-file. He slowly strengthens his position, since there is nothing active his opponent can do.

**15...g6**

Black is now ready to play ...f5, so White exchanges the bishops.

**16.♝xc8 ♛xc8 17.bxc5!**

The time has come for this exchange too.

**17...bxc5**

After 17...dxc5? 18.♝f3 ♛xc1 19.♝xc1 White wins the e5-pawn, since 19...f6? allows 20.d6! ♔e6 21.d7.

**18.♛a4†**

**Diagram 11-4**

The queen may go to c6 (the consequence of the exchange of bishops!), to prepare the penetration of the rook to b7.

**18...a6?!**

This unnecessarily weakens the b6-square; White will soon penetrate there with his rook.

**19.♝f3 ♛xc1 20.♝fxc1 f6?!**

Black is playing too passively. The only chance (because his opponent has already accumulated quite a few advantages) lay in active play on the kingside. Black should at least try to divert his opponent from his operations on the queenside by playing 20...f5.

**21.♝b6 ♜b8 22.♝cb1 ♜xb6 23.♝xb6**

White has control of the b-file.

**23...♝f7 24.h3**

Useful prophylaxis; White deprives the opposing queen of the g4-square and opens up an escape square for his king.

**24...♛d7**

**Diagram 11-5**

**25.♛xd7**

White goes into the endgame. This was not forced; White could also play 25.♛c6. However, the remaining black pieces are very passively placed, and furthermore an exchange of queens reduces the danger of being hit by a counter-attack on the kingside.

Diagram 11-4

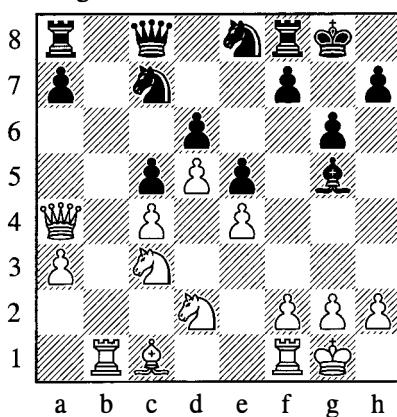
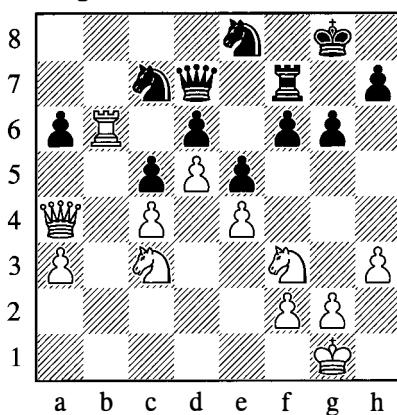


Diagram 11-5



**25...♝xd7 26.♞d2**

The knight has fulfilled its defensive duties on the kingside and now heads to the queenside, to attack the pawn weaknesses there.

**26...♛f8 27.♝b3 f5 28.f3 h5 29.♞a5 ♜d8!?**

Passive defence is totally hopeless; the queenside is too weak. I was more concerned by play on the kingside. After 29...f4 (intending ...g5-g4), White will still have to work hard to bring home the full point.

**30.♞c6 ♜a8 31.♝b7**

White prepares the decisive regrouping.

**31...a5****Diagram 11-6****32.♞a4!**

Threatening ♜b6.

**32...♜a6 33.♞b8**

The rook is trapped. 33...♜a8 is met by 34.♞b6+–. White just wanted to win a little pawn on the queenside, but caught a much bigger fish in his net.

1–0

**G.Michelakis – A.Yusupov**

Copenhagen 2003

**1.♞f3 d5 2.c4 e6 3.g3 ♜f6 4.♝g2 dxс4 5.♛a4† ♜bd7 6.♛xc4 c5 7.0–0**

A slight inaccuracy. Modern theory recommends 7.♛b3 here, with the point that 7...b6? can be strongly met by 8.♞e5!±.

**7...b6! 8.d4**

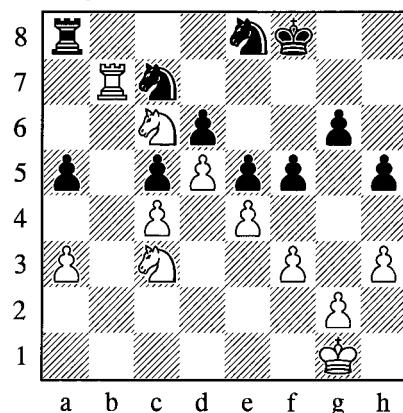
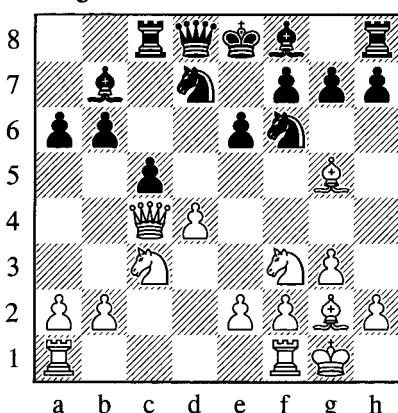
If 8.♞d4 then 8...♞e5 9.♞c6 ♜xc4 10.♞xd8 ♜d5 leads to equality.

**8...♝b7 9.♞c3 ♜c8 10.♝g5 a6****Diagram 11-7**

Black has developed his queenside harmoniously. This draws the teeth from any possible initiative by his opponent on the queenside. With his last move Black is preparing ...b5.

**11.a4?!**

After this move a weakness becomes apparent in the white camp – the b4-square. White should prefer 11.dxc5 ♜xc5 12.♛h4=.

**11...h6 12.♝xf6 ♜xf6 13.♝fd1 cxd4 14.♛xd4 ♜xd4****Diagram 11-6****Diagram 11-7**

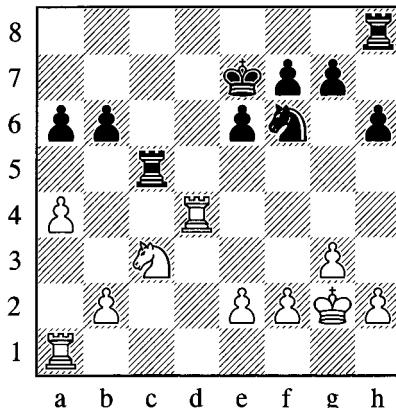
The transition to an endgame is okay for Black, since his pawns on the queenside are secure.

**15.♕xd4 ♕xg2 16.♕xg2 ♕c5**

The bishop does not have quite enough space on the diagonal, as Black wants to reserve the e7-square for his king. If 16...♕b4 then 17.♕a2 ♕c5 18.♕b3=.

**17.♕b3 ♕e7 18.♕xc5 ♕xc5 19.♕d4**

**Diagram 11-8**



The position is almost level. Black's only real advantage is the somewhat better position of his pawns on the queenside.

**19...♖hc8 20.♖ad1 ♕c4 21.h3 g5??**

Black makes an attempt to loosen up the opposing position on the kingside.

**22.f4 gxf4 23.gxf4 ♕xd4 24.♕xd4 ♕d7 25.♕f3 f5 26.e4**

White is playing solidly and is still standing up to Black.

**26...fxe4† 27.♕xe4 ♕c5**

A small plus – the black rook is slightly more active (the possibility of playing ...♖h5 and attacking the h-pawn ties the white king to f3).

**28.♕d4 a5**

Since 28...♕f6 can be met 29.♕b4=, the text is played to allow Black to activate his knight; in return for this, Black is willing to give up the b5-square.

**29.♕b5?**

Without any necessity, White allows the rook to penetrate to his second rank. In the endgame you should try to restrict the opposing pieces and not let them into the game.

Wait and see would be a better policy: 29.♕e4=

**29...♖c2 30.b4 axb4 31.♖xb4 ♕f6**

Black will try to attack the kingside pawns.

**32.♕d4 ♕c1 33.♕g3 ♕g1† 34.♕f2 ♕b1**

Bringing the rook to the most active position.

**35.♕g2 ♕b3 36.♕h2**

White does not know what to do.

36.♕d6?? loses to 36...♖xb5.

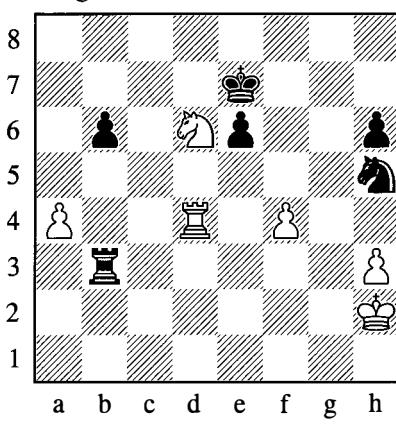
36.♕a7 ♕d5 is quite pleasant for Black.

**36...♕h5!**

Threatening ...♕f3.

**37.♕d6**

**Diagram 11-9**



**37...♖b2†!**

Forcing the white king to the edge of the board.

37... $\mathbb{E}f3$  38. $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$  (or 38. $\mathbb{Q}f5?$ ) 38... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  39. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   
 $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  would not be enough, as the passed a-pawn gives White counterplay: 40.a5  $\mathbb{E}xh3\#$  41. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$   
42. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  A draw seems likely.

**38. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}g3$**

The threat is ... $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$ , so White is forced into the following variation.

**39. $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  40. $\mathbb{E}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$  41. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf4\#$**

**Diagram 11-10**

Black now gets a small material advantage. But what is even more important is that his pieces are very active and well coordinated. The opposing pieces, on the other hand, are strewn around the board and not in real communication with each other.

**42. $\mathbb{E}xb6?$**

42. $\mathbb{Q}xb6?$  is a better defensive try.

**42... $\mathbb{E}a2$**

To prevent counterplay, Black wants to eliminate the a-pawn.

**43. $\mathbb{E}b3?$**

43. $\mathbb{E}a6?$  is more resilient.

On the other hand, 43. $\mathbb{E}b4?$  is very bad: 43... $\mathbb{E}a1\#$

44. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$ +

**43... $\mathbb{E}xa4$  44. $\mathbb{Q}f2$**

44. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{E}a1\#$  (or 44... $\mathbb{E}d4?$ ) 45. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{E}h1$  is also not encouraging for White.

**Diagram 11-11**

Black now finds a forced manoeuvre which punishes the bad coordination of the white pieces.

**44... $\mathbb{E}a2\#$ ! 45. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$  46. $\mathbb{Q}g4$**

46. $\mathbb{Q}f3?$   $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$ +

**46... $\mathbb{E}a4\#$ !**

Forcing the king to go even further forward. Such attacks on the king are not frequent in the endgame.

**47. $\mathbb{Q}h5$**

We have already seen this position as Ex. 22-6 in *Boost Your Chess 1*. Black combines his threats against rook and king and wins material.

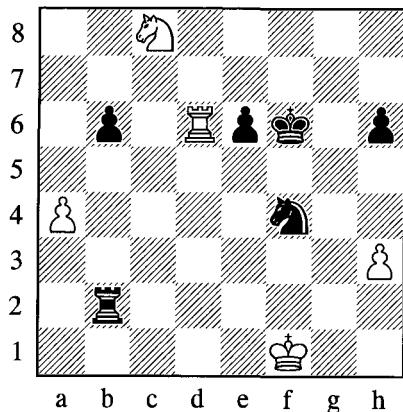
**47... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ !**

Threatening  $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ , and also  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  followed by  $\mathbb{E}h4\#$ .

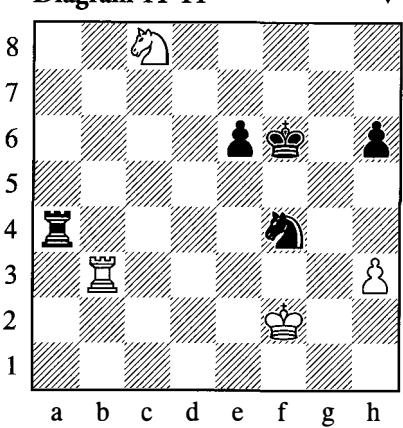
**48. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{E}a5\#$**

White is losing his rook by force.

**Diagram 11-10**

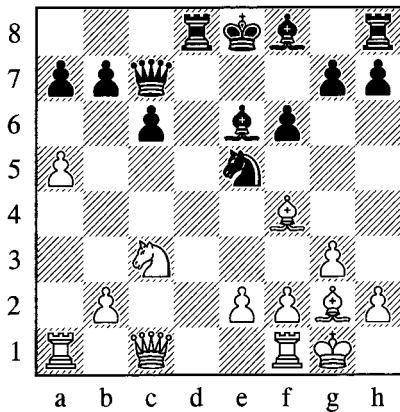


**Diagram 11-11**

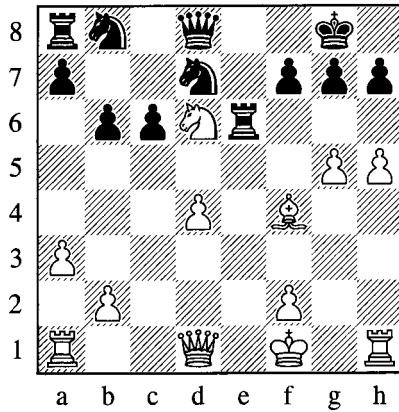


# Exercises

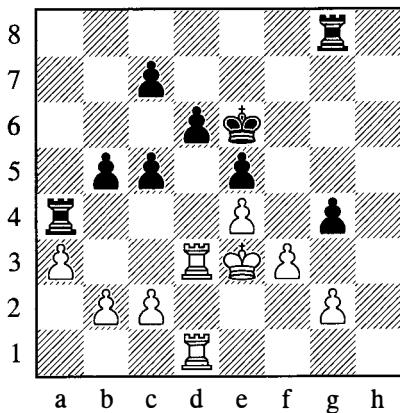
► Ex. 11-1 ◀ ★★★



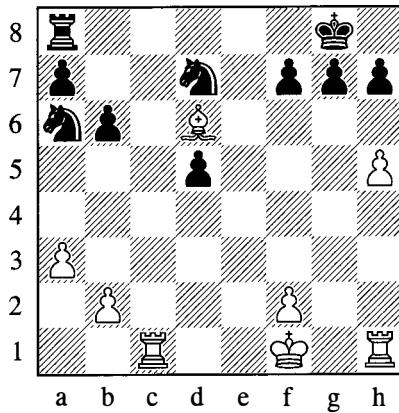
► Ex. 11-4 ◀ ★★



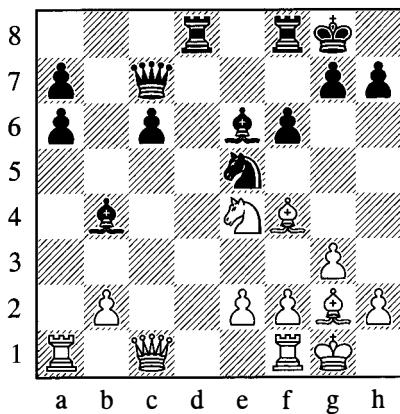
► Ex. 11-2 ◀ ★★



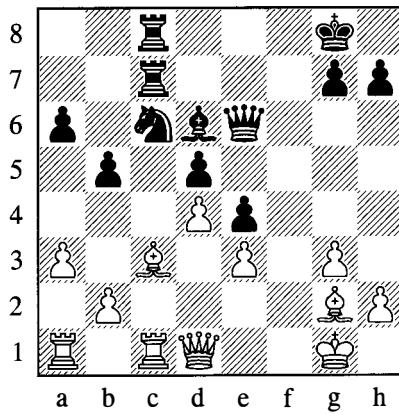
► Ex. 11-5 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 11-3 ◀ ★

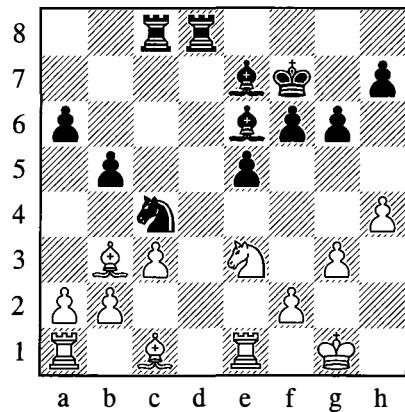


► Ex. 11-6 ◀ ★★

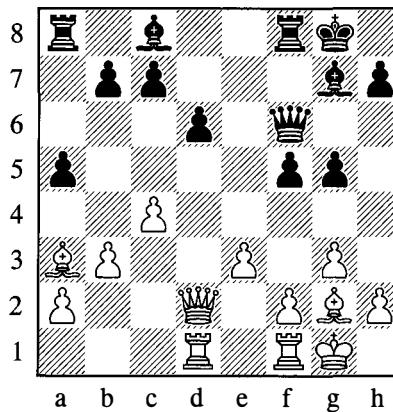


# Exercises

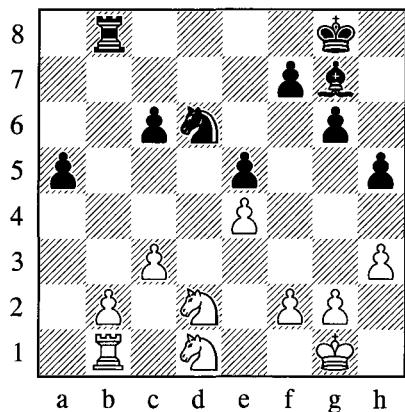
► Ex. 11-7 ◀ ★★



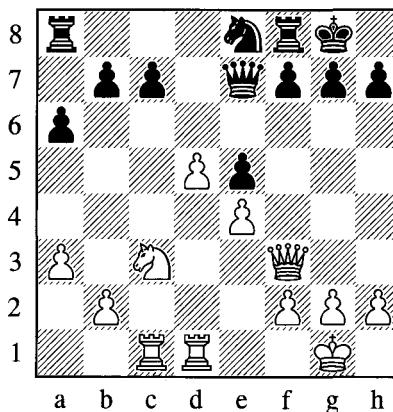
► Ex. 11-10 ◀ ★★



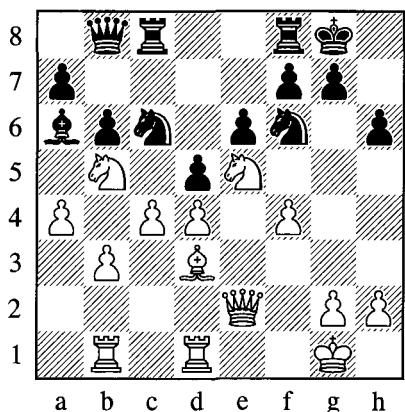
► Ex. 11-8 ◀ ★



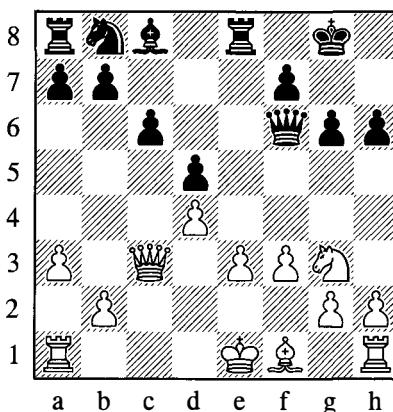
► Ex. 11-11 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 11-9 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 11-12 ◀ ★★★



# Solutions

## Ex. 11-1

A.Alekhine – M.Euwe

World Ch (21), Netherlands 1935

1...a6!

(3 points)

An important move. Otherwise White could break up the black pawn structure on the queenside (with a5-a6) and activate his light-squared bishop. Now the a5-pawn becomes weak. 1 consolation point for any of the developing moves 1... $\mathbb{Q}b4$ , 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$  or 1... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ .

2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $fxe5$  5.f4?

Also after 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xa5$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  9. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  (Kasparov) Black is better, thanks to his bishop pair.

White's best option is 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$ , when the position is roughly level. Taking the a-pawn then leads to perpetual check: 5... $\mathbb{Q}xa5$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{Q}xa5$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ !  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f4$ !  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  9. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ ! = 5... $\mathbb{Q}d2$ ! 6. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $exf4$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$ ! 9. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$ ! 11. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}xa3$  12. $\mathbb{Q}xa3$  0-0 13. $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{Q}fd8$ +

## Ex. 11-2

I.Kan – J.Capablanca

Moscow 1936

1... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ !

(2 points)

Black activates his rook via the h-file.

Another good choice is 1...c4! (also 2 points); Black may later play ...c3 or ...b4.

Less strong is 1...gxf3 (only 1 point), as the exchange of pawns does not improve Black's position.

2. $\mathbb{Q}b3$

After 2.fxg4 Black turns his attention to the e4-pawn: 2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$ ! 4. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$ +

2... $\mathbb{Q}h2$ ! 3. $\mathbb{Q}d2$

After 3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $gxf3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ , the weakness of the white kingside pawns gives Black a plus.

3... $\mathbb{Q}d4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  c6 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ ?

You should not play so passively in rook endings.

5.fxg4 is a better defence; after 5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  ( $\Delta...\mathbb{Q}g5$ ) 6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ ! White may switch the b3-rook to either f3 or h3, with drawing chances.

5... $\mathbb{Q}g3$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ ?

White should try: 6.f4  $\mathbb{Q}h4$  (6...c4 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  8. $fxe5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  9. $\mathbb{Q}ce3$ +) 7. $fxe5$ +

6... $\mathbb{Q}h1$ ! 7.f4  $\mathbb{Q}f1$ ! 8. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ !  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  9.c3  $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ ! 10. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  d5!+

## Ex. 11-3

M.Euwe – A.Alekhine

World Ch (1), Netherlands 1937

1. $\mathbb{Q}c5$

(1 point)

Forcing a favourable exchange.

1. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$  would not be so clear after either 1... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  or 1... $\mathbb{Q}b7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$ .

1... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ ± g5?

A better defence is: 2... $\mathbb{Q}b6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  (3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$ ?) 3... $axb6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  (4. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}c4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$ +) 4... $fxe5$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$   $\mathbb{Q}d2$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  (Kasparov)

3. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$   $\mathbb{Q}xa7$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xa7$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  10. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  11. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  12. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  g4

12... $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ ? 13. $\mathbb{Q}a2$

13. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  14. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ !  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  15. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  16. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ !+  $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  17. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  18. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  19. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  20. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}b3$  21. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  22. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  23. $g4$ !  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  24. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  25. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ !  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  26. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ !  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  27. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ !  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  28. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}b1$  29. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}c1$  30. $\mathbb{Q}a4$  h6 31. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ !  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  32. $g5$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$ ! 33. $\mathbb{Q}e5$

1-0

## Ex. 11-4

M.Botvinnik – V.Smyslov

World Ch (2), Moscow 1954

1.d5!

(2 points)

Just as strong is 1.g6! (also 2 points). After 1... $fxg6$  White can choose between 2.d5!+–

# Solutions

and 2.  $\mathbb{W}b3!+$ , while 1...  $h \times g6$  2.  $h \times g6$   $f \times g6$  runs into 3.  $\mathbb{E}h8\#$   $\mathbb{W}xh8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ .

1.  $\mathbb{W}f3$  (1 point) is not bad either, but the move in the game is more energetic.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$

1...  $cxd5$  is followed by: 2.  $\mathbb{W}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  3.  $g6$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  (3...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $gxf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $h6$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f5!+$ ) 4.  $gxh7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}f5\#$  (Kasparov)

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{W}xg5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f3!$

3.  $dxc6$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6\pm$  is less accurate.

3...  $\mathbb{W}xd5$

3...  $cxd5$  4.  $\mathbb{E}g1$   $\mathbb{W}d2$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}b4$   $\mathbb{W}xb2$  6.  $\mathbb{E}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  7.  $\mathbb{W}xd5\#$  (Kasparov)

4.  $\mathbb{W}xd5$   $cxd5$  5.  $\mathbb{E}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}a6\pm$

See Ex. 11-5.

## Ex. 11-5

**M.Botvinnik – V.Smyslov**

World Ch (2), Moscow 1954

1.  $b4!$

(2 points)

This cuts off the a6-knight from the play. This strategy is more effective than the materialistic 1.  $\mathbb{E}d1$  (only 1 point).

1...  $h6$  2.  $\mathbb{E}h3$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  3.  $\mathbb{E}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.  $b5$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $bx5$  6.  $\mathbb{E}xc5$   $\mathbb{E}b8$  7.  $a4$   $\mathbb{E}b7$  7.  $\mathbb{E}dc3$

This prepares an exchange of rooks; 7...  $\mathbb{E}e4$  is followed by 8.  $\mathbb{E}c7\#$ .

1-0

## Ex. 11-6

**B.Carlier – A.Yusupov**

Apeldoorn (rapid) 2005

1.  $\mathbb{W}h5!$

(2 points)

A strong regrouping. White prepares to activate his light-squared bishop with 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$ .

1...  $g6?$

1...  $\mathbb{E}e8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{W}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{E}xf7\pm$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}h3!$   $\mathbb{W}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f4$   $\mathbb{W}xf4$  5.  $gxf4$

5...  $\mathbb{E}d8$  is met by 6.  $\mathbb{Q}a5\#$ .

1-0

## Ex. 11-7

**I.Koenig – V.Smyslov**

Radio match 1946

1...  $\mathbb{Q}d2!$

(2 points)

The simplest plan.

After 1...  $\mathbb{Q}b6$  2.  $f4$  White obtains counterplay.

1...  $b4?$  (1 point) is also worth considering:

2.  $cx b4$   $\mathbb{Q}xb4$  3.  $\mathbb{E}e2\mp$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  3.  $\mathbb{E}d1?$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}c5\mp$

3...  $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $e4$

4...  $\mathbb{E}xd1\#?$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $a5\mp$

5.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $h5!$

Black is planning to continue with 6...  $g5$ ; if White then exchanges pawns, Black will be able to create a passed h-pawn.

6.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$

Slightly better is: 6.  $\mathbb{E}xd8$   $\mathbb{E}xd8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}c2\mp$

6...  $\mathbb{E}xd1$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $b4!$  8.  $cxb4$   $\mathbb{E}d8\#$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}xb4$

9...  $\mathbb{Q}d4\#?$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}xb4\#$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}xb4?$   $\mathbb{Q}c2\#$

10.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{E}xd4$  12.  $\mathbb{E}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$

13.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{E}xd1$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $g5\#$

## Ex. 11-8

**D.Yanofsky – V.Smyslov**

Groningen 1946

1...  $\mathbb{Q}h6!$

(1 point)

The need to defend the e4-pawn means that White must allow the weakening of his pawn structure.

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  3.  $fxe3$   $f6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$

Landa suggests that 5...  $a4?$  is a better try, making it more difficult for White to block the queenside as he managed in the game.

6.  $b3$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$  7.  $\mathbb{E}c1$   $c5$  8.  $c4$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  9.  $\mathbb{E}a1$   $\mathbb{Q}c6\mp$

Despite his weak pawns, White can still hold this ending.

# Solutions

## Ex. 11-9

I.Bondarevsky – V.Smyslov

USSR Ch, Moscow 1950

1... $\mathbb{Q}b4!$

(2 points)

It makes good sense to exchange off the opponent's strong bishop.

The situation after 1... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  is much sharper:  
2.axb5  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  (1 point) 3. $\mathbb{W}f2$  dxc4 (3... $\mathbb{Q}f5$   
4.cxd5±) 4.bxc4  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  5.g4  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  6.g5 hxg5  
7.fxg5∞

2.f5  $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  3. $\mathbb{W}xd3$  exf5 4. $\mathbb{W}xf5$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}bc1$   
a6 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  7.a5 dxc4

7...bxa5? 8.c5±

8.bxc4

8... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{W}c6$  9. $\mathbb{W}h3$  b5±

8...b5!

A typical way to attack the white pawn centre.

9.c5

Taking the pawn leads to trouble: 9.cxb5 axb5 10. $\mathbb{Q}xb5?$   $\mathbb{W}d5$  11. $\mathbb{W}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc1$  12. $\mathbb{Q}xc1$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  and White cannot escape the pin. For example, 13. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{W}b3$  11. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{W}xd3$  12. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  and Black wins a piece.

9... $\mathbb{W}d8$  10. $\mathbb{Q}a1$  b4 11. $\mathbb{Q}e2?$

White must play more actively to maintain the balance: 11. $\mathbb{Q}a4!$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  12. $\mathbb{W}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$

13. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}d2=$

11... $\mathbb{Q}e4$  12. $\mathbb{W}h3$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  13. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  b3±

## Ex. 11-10

V.Smyslov – A.Kotov

Garga 1953

1.c5!±

(2 points)

A lot of the white pieces (queen, rook and dark-squared bishop) will benefit from the exchange of pawns.

1...a4?

A better defence is: 1...dxc5 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$  (3. $\mathbb{Q}f3!?$ )  $\mathbb{W}f7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{W}xg7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c1$  c6 6. $\mathbb{Q}c5!?$  (Smyslov)

2.cxd6  $\mathbb{Q}d8$

2...axb3 3.d7  $\mathbb{Q}xa3$  4.d8!+–

3. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b2!+–$   $\mathbb{W}f7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$

6. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  7. $\mathbb{W}c3!$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  8.dxc7  $\mathbb{Q}dc8$

9.b4

1–0

## Ex. 11-11

I.Ivanisevic – I.Miladinovic

Mataruska Banja 2007

White has some lead in development. All of his pieces are active and could not be placed much better, with the possible exception of the knight. But if Black could finish his regrouping and put his knight on d6, then it would be very difficult for White to break through on the queenside. Furthermore Black would be ready to counterattack with ...f5.

19.d6!

(2 points)

This prevents Black's idea, at the same time obtaining a dream position on d5 for the knight. The pawn is a small price to pay for these positional achievements. I don't think that white has any real advantage after: 19. $\mathbb{Q}a4$  (1 consolation point) 19... $\mathbb{Q}d6$  20. $\mathbb{Q}c5$  b6 21. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  f5?

19...cxd6

Or 19... $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  20. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{W}h4$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$   $\mathbb{W}xe4$  22. $\mathbb{W}g3!?$  with a very strong initiative.

20. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{W}d8$

White has obvious positional compensation. The knight on d5 is beautiful and it will take some time and effort to remove it. Until this happens it is not easy for Black to get his pieces into play. For this reason White has time to strengthen his position gradually.

21.g3!?

21. $\mathbb{Q}c3!?$  was a bit more direct, and also promising for White.

21... $\mathbb{g}6$  22.h4±

With the idea of h4-h5 with good play on the kingside. White went on to win after further inaccuracies by both players.

# Solutions

## Ex. 11-12

T.Petrosian – M.Botvinnik

World Ch (1), Moscow 1963

1...h5!

(3 points)

A standard idea; the pawn advance disrupts the opponent's normal development.

It is just as good a move later: 1...Qd7 2.Qe2 h5! (also 3 points)

If you chose 1...Qd7, but did not plan to follow up with ...h5, you get only 2 points.

For either 1...b6 or 1...a5 you earn 1 point.

2.Qe2 Qd7 3.Qf2

After 3.0-0 a possible continuation is:

3...h4 4.Qh1Bg5 5.e4 dxe4 6.fxe4 Exe4 7.Qc4 Qf6†

3...h4 4.Qf1 Qf8 5.Qd2 Ee7 6.Qh1 Qf5†  
7.h3?!

Either 7.Qf1!? or 7.b4!? would be less weakening.

7...Eae8 8.Qf1 Qe6†

Black will continue with ...Qg5, after which a piece sacrifice on h3 becomes a serious possibility.

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is 24

20 points and above	→ Excellent
16 points and above	→ Good
12 points	→ Pass mark

*If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ The most important fortresses
- ✓ The 'scissors'
- ✓ The principle of the single diagonal
- ✓ 'Pawns in the sights'
- ✓ Attacking from the rear
- ✓ Exchanging all the pawns

Diagram 12-1

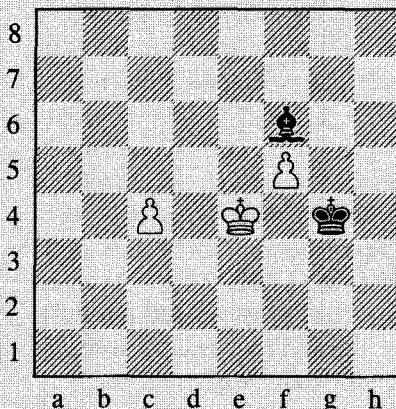
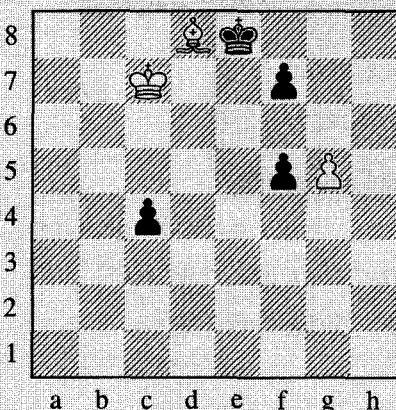


Diagram 12-2



## Bishop against pawns

In the endgame of bishop against pawns, there is not a lot of theory to be studied. We dealt with the most important fortresses in the lessons on 'The wrong bishop' (*Build Up Your Chess 1*, Chapter 22) and 'Fortresses' (*Boost Your Chess 1*, Chapter 6). These elementary fortresses should be learned by heart. In this chapter we introduce a few more ideas.

## The 'scissors'

The 'scissors' is a chess term for the situation where a bishop is matched against two passed pawns which it can only stop by covering different diagonals.

Diagram 12-1

J.Kling &amp; B.Horwitz

1851

1.c5 ♕g5 2.c6 ♕d8

The bishop is stopping the two white pawns, but it has to operate on two diagonals, and White can demonstrate that it is overloaded.

3.♕e5 ♕h6

Black tries to bring his king back. No better is: 3...♕c7† 4.♕e6 ♕d8 5.f6! ♕g6 6.f7 ♕g7 7.♕d7+–

4.f6!

But not 4.♕e6? ♕g7 5.f6† ♕f8=.

4...♕h7 5.♕e6 ♕g8 6.♕d7! ♕a5

6...♕xf6 7.c7+–

7.♕e8+–

One of the pawns will be promoted.

## The principle of the single diagonal

In the struggle against passed pawns, the bishop is very effective when it can stop these pawns on a **single diagonal**. Sometimes, as well as stopping the opposing passed pawns, the bishop can protect its own pawns if they are on the same diagonal.

Diagram 12-2

M.Dvoretsky

2000

To draw the teeth from the dangerous passed pawns,

## Bishop against pawns

White has to sacrifice his last pawn.

**1.g6!**

1... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$  loses in view of: 1...f4 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  f3 3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$  c3!  
(scissors) 4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$  c2 5. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  f2+

**1...fxg6**

1...f6! is followed by: 2. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$  (but not 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6?$   
f4+) 2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  (2...f4? loses to 3. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$  f3 4. $\mathbb{Q}e6$  f2  
5. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ ) 3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$  c3 (or 3... $\mathbb{Q}g7=$ ) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  c2 5. $\mathbb{Q}b2$   
c1 $\mathbb{Q}$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xc1$   $\mathbb{Q}g7=$

**2. $\mathbb{Q}g5=$**

### Diagram 12-3

The bishop holds up all the pawns on one diagonal, and White achieves the draw without any problems.

**2... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  f4 4. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   
c3 7. $\mathbb{Q}d4$  c2 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3=$**

### 'Pawns in the sights'

This defines a very useful method of fighting against passed pawns. Our bishop attacks the opposing pawns with the goal of forcing them to move so that they can then be stopped on a diagonal. Alternatively, this technique can be used to force the opposing king to defend its pawns.

### Diagram 12-4

Variation from the game

**V.Gavrikov – I.Chikovani**

USSR 1979

White is threatening 2. $\mathbb{Q}a7$  followed by b6, a5-a6 and b7. Black has only one way to thwart this plan: by attacking the white pawns!

**1... $\mathbb{Q}d1!$  2.a5**

2. $\mathbb{Q}a7$   $\mathbb{Q}xa4$  3.b6  $\mathbb{Q}c6=$

**2... $\mathbb{Q}e2$**

Once more stopping the white king from advancing.

**3.a6  $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$**

4.a7  $\mathbb{Q}c6=$

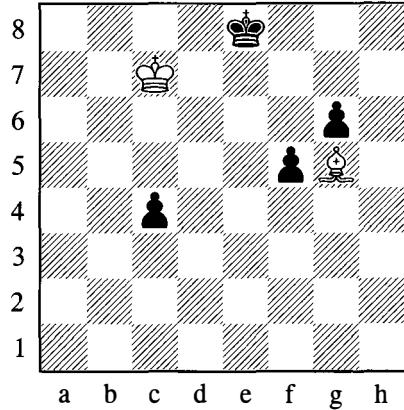
**4... $\mathbb{Q}c7=$**

Analysis by Dvoretsky.

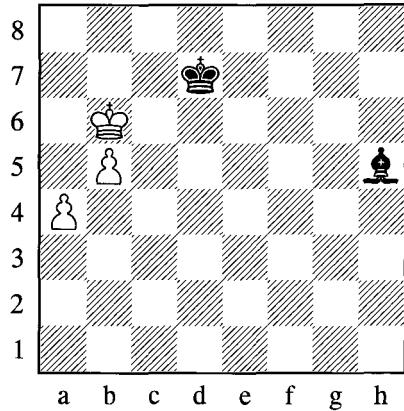
### Attacking from the rear

The king attacks the pawns from the rear, whilst the bishop takes care of the front pawns.

### Diagram 12-3



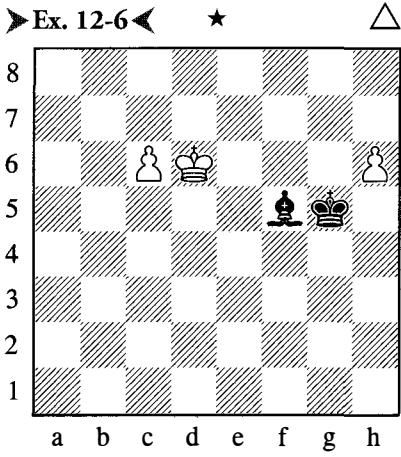
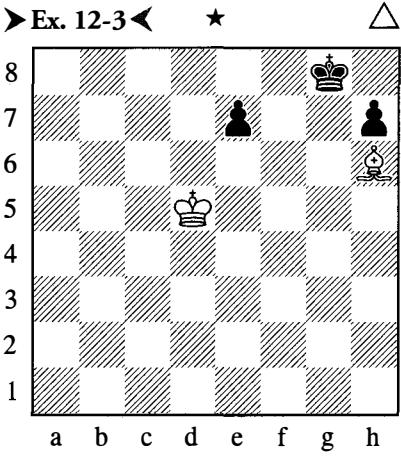
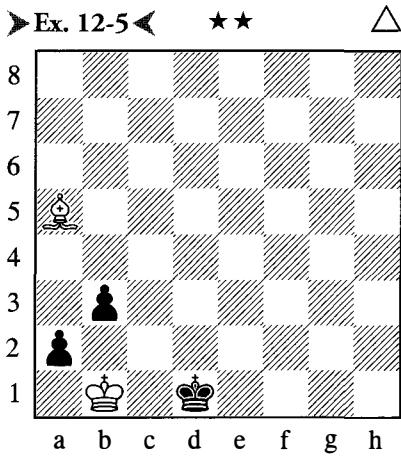
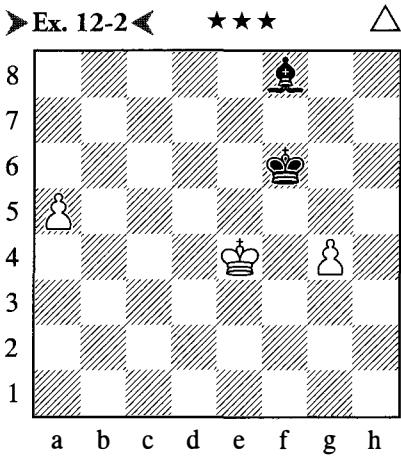
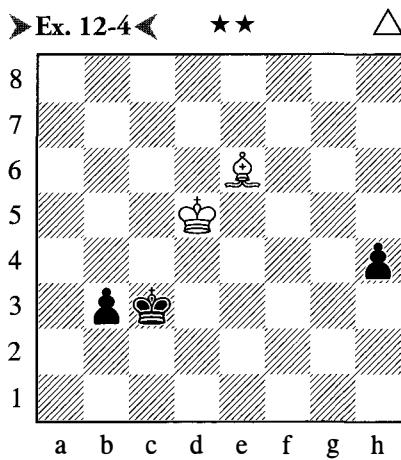
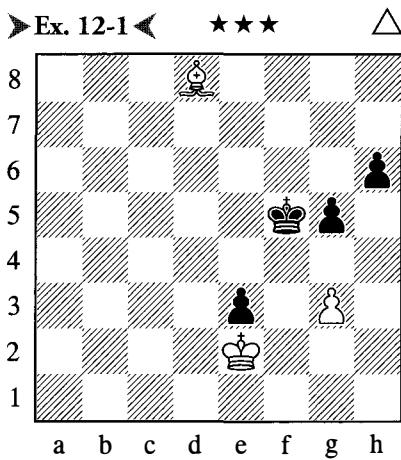
### Diagram 12-4



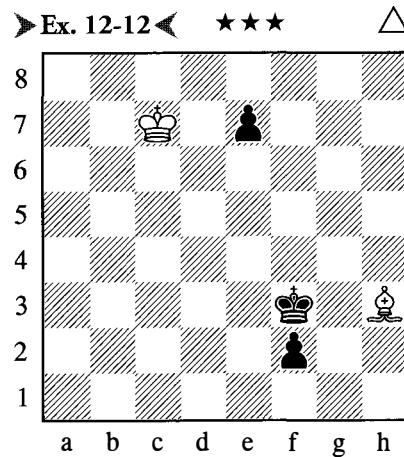
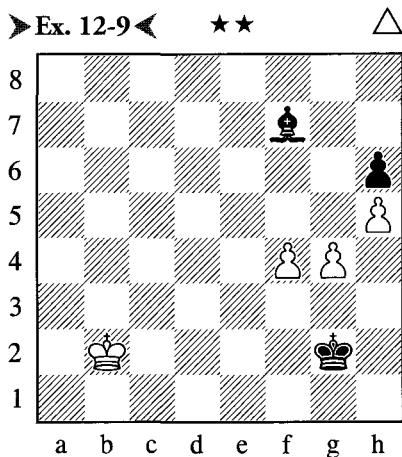
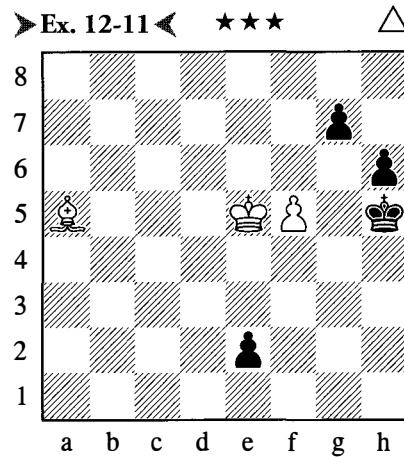
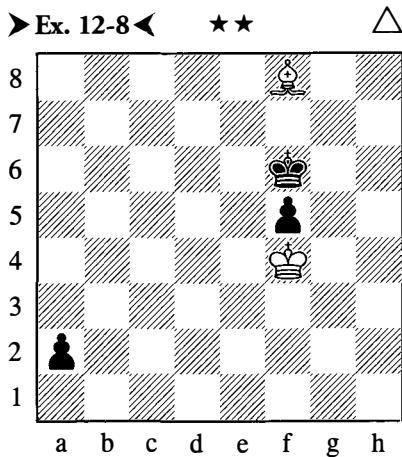
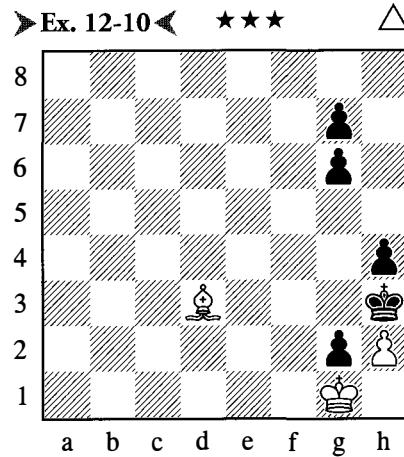
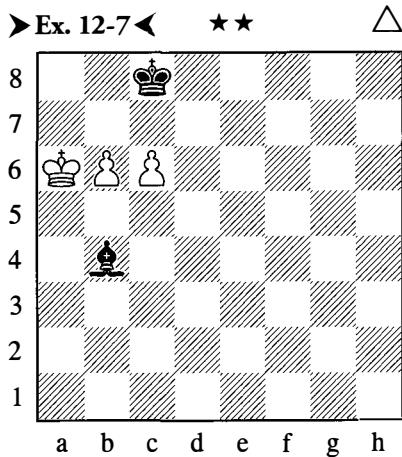


# Exercises

Exercises 12



# Exercises



# Solutions

## Ex. 12-1

Variation from the game

**A.Yusupov – J.Polgar**

Moscow Olympiad 1994

**1. ♕f3!**

(2 points)

1. ♕xe3? only leads to a draw after 1... ♗g4  
2. ♕f2 h5; Black will exchange the last white pawn.

**1...h5**

After 1...e2 2. ♗a5! h5 3. ♗c3+– Black is in zugzwang.

(another 1 point for this variation)

**2. ♗a5 ♕e5 3. ♕xe3 h4 4. g4 h3 5. ♗c7†+–**

## Ex. 12-2

The end of a study by

**H.Otten**

1892

White does not let the bishop occupy the a7-g1 diagonal.

**1. ♕d5!**

(1 point)

**1... ♗h6 2. g5†!**

(another 1 point)

**2... ♗xg5**

2... ♗xg5 3. a6+–

**3. ♕e4! ♗h4 4. ♕f3!+–**

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 12-3

The end of a study by

**A.Troitzky**

1895

White mates in three moves.

**1. ♕e6! ♗h8 2. ♕f7! e5 3. ♗g7#**

(1 point)

## Ex. 12-4

The end of a study by

**A.Selesniev**

1917

**1. ♗e4!**

(1 point)

But not 1. ♗f5? b2+– and it is ‘scissors’.

**1...b2 2. ♗a2!=**

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 12-5

The end of a study by

**H.Weenink**

1918

White has a stalemate defence.

**1. ♗a1!!**

(1 point)

But not 1. ♗b2? a1† 2. ♗xa1 ♗c2 3. ♗c3 ♗xc3 4. ♗b1 b2+–.

(another 1 point for this variation)

**1... ♗c2 2. ♗c3! ♗xc3** stalemate

## Ex. 12-6

The end of a study by

**A.Haga**

1920

**1. ♗e5!**

(1 point)

**1... ♗d3**

Or 1... ♗g6 2. h7!+–.

**2. c7+–**

‘Scissors’.

## Ex. 12-7

**Collijn**

1921

**1. b7†**

(1 point)

Nothing is achieved by 1. ♗a7? ♗c5= or 1. c7 ♗d6=; ‘pawns in the sights’.

**1... ♗b8**

# Solutions

Or 1... $\mathbb{Q}c7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}a7+-$ .  
**2.c7†!** (another 1 point)  
2... $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}a7$   $\mathbb{Q}c5†$  4. $\mathbb{Q}a8+-$

**Ex. 12-8**  
The end of a study by

**W.Schroder**  
1931

**1.Qb4!** (1 point)  
1...a1 $\mathbb{Q}$  2.Qc3† (another 1 point)  
2... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  stalemate

**Ex. 12-9**

**B.Horwitz**  
1880

**1.f5!** (1 point)  
1.g5? hxg5 2.h6  $\mathbb{Q}g6=$   
**1...Qg3 2.g5!** (another 1 point)  
'Scissors'.

**2...hxg5**  
Other moves also lose:  
a) 2... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  3.gxh6+-  
b) 2... $\mathbb{Q}g4$  3.g6 (or 3.gxh6+-) 3... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  4.f6  
 $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  5.f7+-  
**3.h6 Qg8 4.f6 Qf4 5.h7 Qxh7 6.f7+-**

**Ex. 12-10**

**W.Von Holzhausen**  
1899

White mates in four moves.  
**1.Qe2!** (1 point)  
**1...g5 2.Qh5! g4**  
2...g6 3.Qf3 g4 4.Qxg2#  
(another 1 point for this variation)  
**3.Qg6 g3 4.Qf5#**  
(another 1 point)

**Ex. 12-11**  
The end of a study by

**A.Geoffroy-Dausay**  
1916

**1.Qf4!** (1 point)  
Otherwise the black king gets to g4, with a simple draw.  
**1...Qh4**  
1... $\mathbb{Q}g5†$  loses to 2.Qe5 g4 3.Qe1+-; the principle of the single diagonal.  
(another 1 point for this variation)  
**2.Qe1† Qh3**  
Black finds himself in zugzwang after 2... $\mathbb{Q}h5$  3.Qf2+-.  
**3.Qf3 h5**  
3... $\mathbb{Q}h2$  4.Qxe2+-  
**4.Qg3** (another 1 point)  
**4...h4 5.Qe1+-**

**Ex. 12-12**  
The end of a study by

**N.Grigoriev**  
1927

**1.Qc6!** (1 point)  
1.Qb6! (also 1 point) is just as good, and transposes into the main line after 1...e5 2.Qc5 e4 3.Qd4.  
But not 1.Qd7? e5 2.Qe6 e4+-.  
**1...e5 2.Qd5**  
Attacking from the rear.  
**2...e4 3.Qd4 e3 4.Qd3 e2 5.Qg4†!**  
(another 1 point)  
**5...Qxg4 6.Qxe2 Qg3 7.Qf1 Qf3** stalemate  
(another 1 point for the whole variation)

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is 27

- 23 points and above → Excellent
- 18 points and above → Good
- 13 points → Pass mark

*If you scored less than 13 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Coordination between queen and pawn
- ✓ Exercises

## 13

## Attacking with queen and pawn

We have already encountered various forms of coordination between queen and pawn in the chapters 'Mating motifs 2' and 'Combinations involving promotion' (both from *Build Up Your Chess 1*), and in the chapter on 'The pawn wedge' (*Boost Your Chess 1*). A far-advanced pawn can strongly support the queen in the attack. The pawn can protect the queen, deprive the opposing king of escape squares, or itself enjoy the protection of the strongest piece. In this chapter we shall deal with various combinations in which a queen and a pawn work together in a successful attack on the opposing king.

Try to solve the following positions. Think about each for a maximum of ten minutes. If you find the solution, then look through the variations on the board. If you have not yet found the solution, then spend another five minutes looking for new ideas in the position. Then you may look at the solutions.

Diagram 13-1

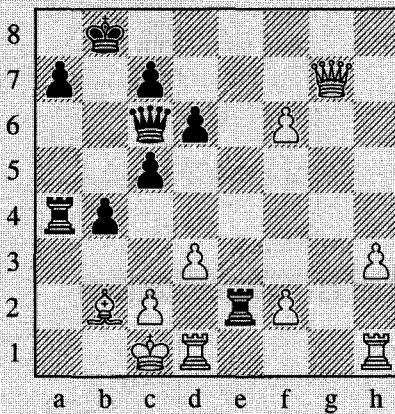


Diagram 13-1

Redeli – Barati

Budapest 1961

Black exploits the activity of his rook on e2 for a quick attack.

1... $\mathbb{Q}a1\ddagger!!$

This sacrifice decoys the bishop to a1, as well as vacating the a4-square for the queen.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xa1$   $\mathbb{Q}a4$

With a double attack on a1 and c2. White has only one defence.

3. $\mathbb{Q}g8\ddagger$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b3$

4. $\mathbb{Q}d5\ddagger$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  changes nothing.

4... $\mathbb{Q}xa1\ddagger$  5. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2\ddagger!$

The key move in the combination.

6. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$   $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$

The b-pawn protects the queen, and thus plays a decisive role.

## Attacking with queen and pawn

Diagram 13-2

M.Botvinnik & S.Kaminer

1925

In this study, White has a forced win.

**1.g4†! ♖h4 2.♕h6!!**

Threatening 3.♖h2# as well as the queen.

**2...♗xh6 3.♗h2† ♖g5 4.♗d2† ♖f4 5.♗d8#**

A wonderful finish, based on the game Liutov – Botvinnik.

Diagram 13-3

Shobura – Shurada

1977

Black has mating threats, so White must look for a forced sequence.

**1.♗f8† ♖g5**

1...♔h7 loses to 2.♕g8† ♔h8 3.♗f7† ♔h7 4.♕g8† ♔h6 5.♕xg6#.

**2.♗xf5†!+–**

This leads to a forced mate.

**2...♗g4**

Or 2...gx f5 3.♕g7#; this mate uses the g-pawn's control of the f4- and h4-squares.

**3.♗g5†! ♖h3**

If 3...♔xg5 4.♕f4#, then the g-pawn plays its part by protecting the queen.

**4.♕c8†**

**1–0**

Diagram 13-2

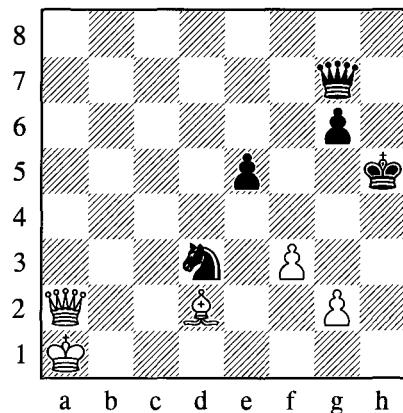


Diagram 13-3

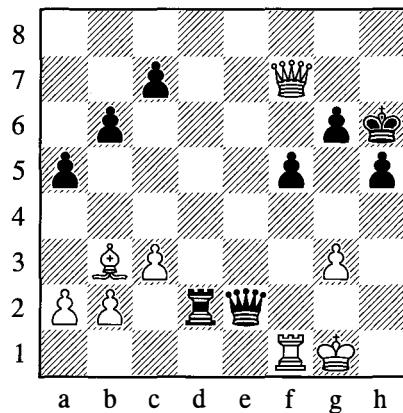


Diagram 13-4

N.Rutschjova – R.Eidelson

Tbilisi 1976

Black makes use of the far-advanced pawn on e2. Note that White is threatening mate in one!

**1...♗f1†!**

This elegant combination secures a quick win.

1...♗f7 would also be enough for victory: 2.♗xf7 (2.♗a1 ♗a7!!+–) 2...e1♗† 3.♗xe1 ♗xe1†+–

**2.♗xf1 ♗e4†!! 3.♗xe4**

Or 3.♗g1 ♗xb1+–.

**3...exf1♗#**

Diagram 13-4

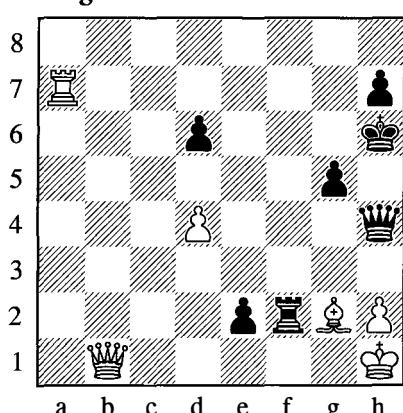


Diagram 13-5

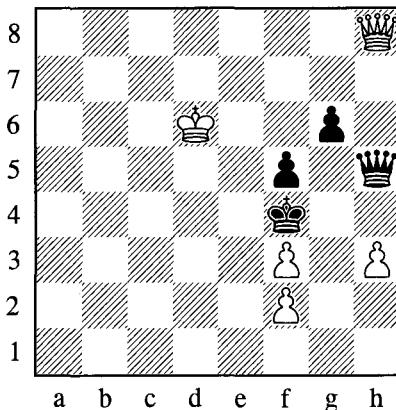


Diagram 13-6

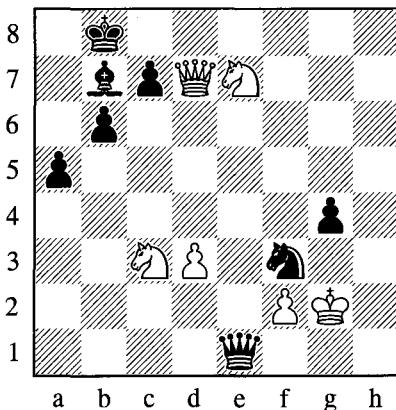


Diagram 13-7

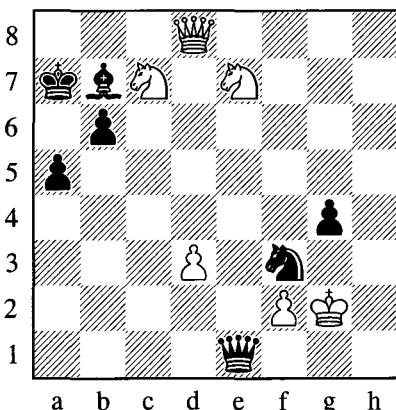


Diagram 13-5

L.Borgstrom

1956

Somewhat surprisingly, White can mate in three moves here!

1.  $\mathbb{W}c3!$ Threatening 2.  $\mathbb{W}e3\#$ .1...  $\mathbb{Q}g5$ If 1...  $\mathbb{W}xf3$  then 2.  $\mathbb{W}c1\#$ ; 2...  $\mathbb{W}e3$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xe3\#$ 3.  $\mathbb{W}c4\#$ .2.  $\mathbb{f}4\#$ ; 2...  $\mathbb{Q}h4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g3\#$ .3.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ 

A triumphant return by the queen.

Diagram 13-6

P.Stamma

1737

Black is attacking and threatening mate, so White must find a forced solution (with checks!).

1.  $\mathbb{W}d8\#$ ; 2.  $\mathbb{Q}a7$ ; 3.  $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$ ; 4.  $\mathbb{Q}a6$ ; 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xc7\#$ 

It is reassuring to know that we have at least a perpetual check. In a practical game, we could have calculated the variation this far, and then played the above moves, hoping to find a solution once we reached this position.

Diagram 13-7

4.  $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$ ; 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ 

Black is also mated after: 4...  $\mathbb{Q}b8$ ; 5.  $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$ ; 6.  $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$ ; 7.  $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$

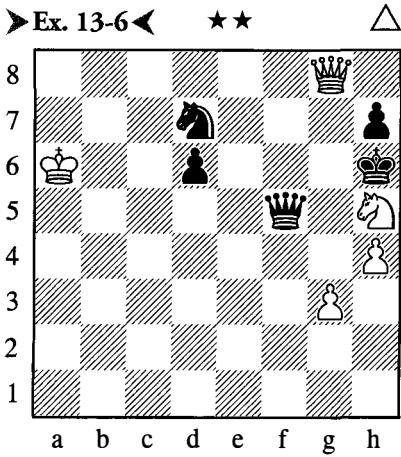
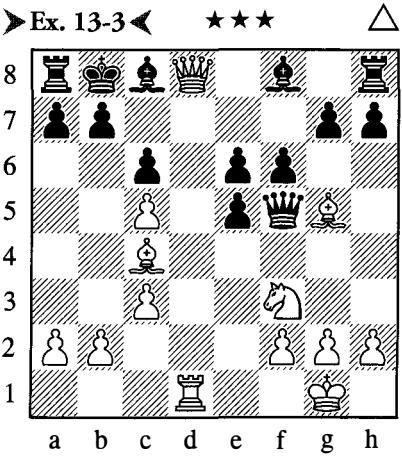
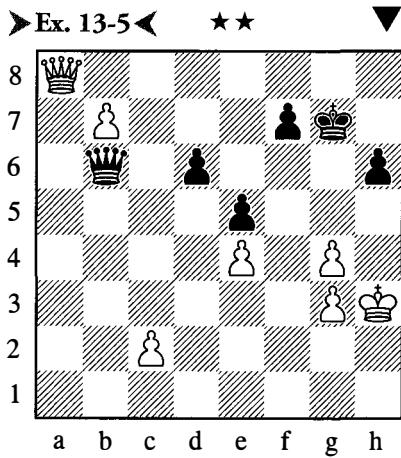
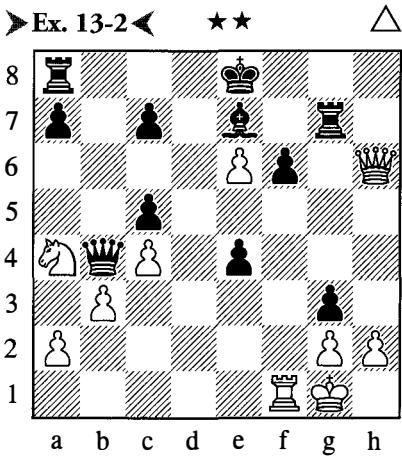
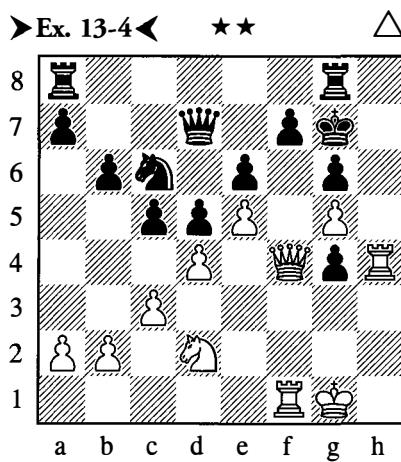
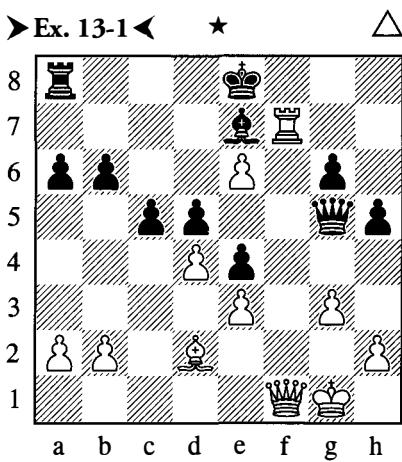
5.  $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$ ; 6.  $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 

Other king moves also lose:

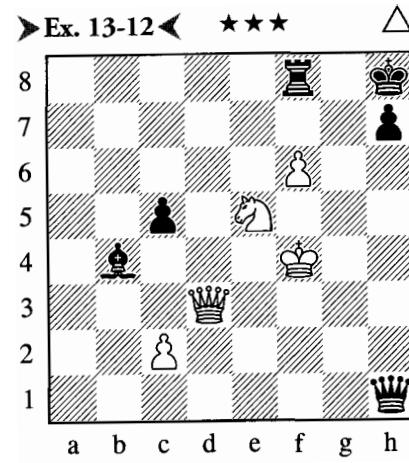
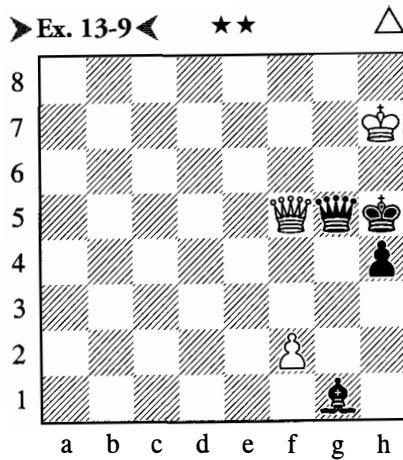
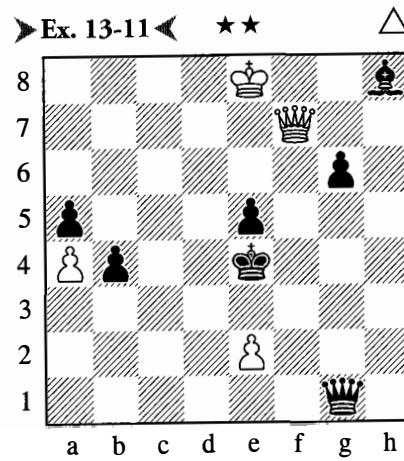
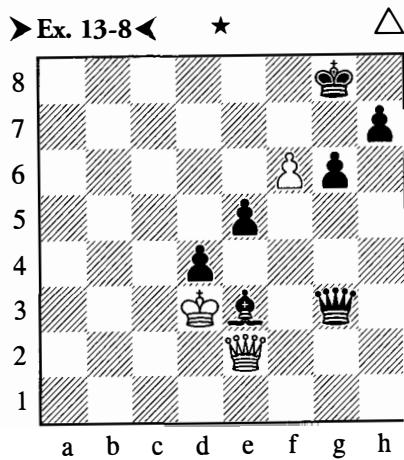
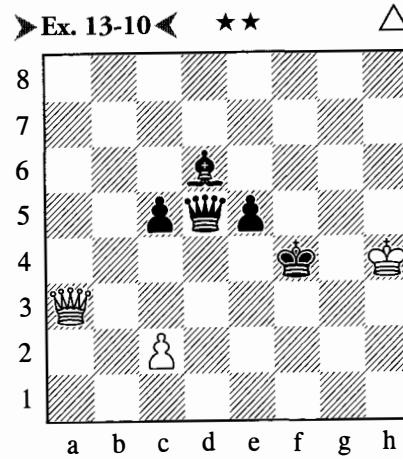
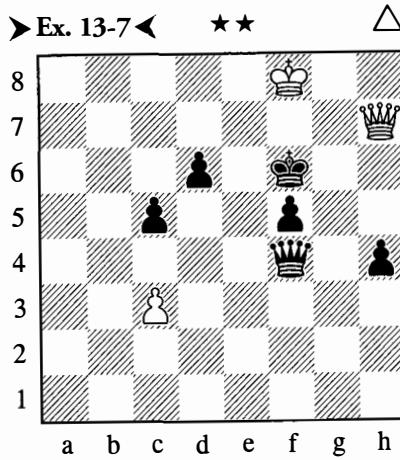
a) 5...  $\mathbb{Q}a6$ ; 6.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8\#$  transpose to the main line.b) 5...  $\mathbb{Q}b8$ ; 6.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$ ; 7.  $\mathbb{Q}a8$ ; 8.  $\mathbb{Q}a7\#$ c) 5...  $\mathbb{Q}a8$ ; 6.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8\#$ 6.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$ ; 7.  $\mathbb{Q}a6$ ; 8.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8\#$ ; 9.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ ; 10.  $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$ 

The d3-pawn suddenly plays a decisive role!

# Exercises



# Exercises



# Solutions

## Ex. 13-1

**L.Betbeder Matibet – A.Tyroler**

Hamburg Olympiad 1930

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$ !

1.  $\mathbb{Q}g7?$   $\mathbb{W}f5$  lets Black fight on.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}d7\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 13-2

**A.Beliavsky – A.Mikhailchishin**

USSR 1977

1.  $\mathbb{W}h5\#$ !

(1 point)

1.  $\mathbb{W}xg7$  is not so good: 1...0–0–0 2.  $\mathbb{W}xe7$   $e3\rightarrow$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$ !

1–0

Mate is forced: 3...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  5.  $\mathbb{W}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  6.  $\mathbb{W}d7\#$

(another 1 point for the whole variation)

## Ex. 13-3

**Khramtsov – Vaksberg**

Saratov 1938

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d7!$   $\mathbb{W}b1\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$

(1 point)

2...  $a6$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  is no better: 3.  $\mathbb{W}xh8$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  (another 1 point for this variation)

4...  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  (5...  $\mathbb{Q}b6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{W}xb2$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  7.  $\mathbb{W}g8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5\#$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xb7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}b6\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 13-4

**Strelakovsky – Golak**

USSR 1974

1.  $\mathbb{Q}h7\#!!$

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$

Or 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$

4.  $\mathbb{W}f6\#$ .

2.  $\mathbb{W}h2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h6\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 13-5

**Fedorov – Vasiliev**

USSR 1974

1...  $\mathbb{W}g1\!-+$

(1 point)

2.  $g5$   $h5$

Supporting the queen.

You also earn a second point if you chose the even more forcing: 2...  $\mathbb{W}h1\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $h5\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{W}f3\#$

3.  $g4$   $h4$

(another 1 point)

Black threatens mate on  $g3$  and  $h1$ , and 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh4$  is met by 4...  $\mathbb{W}h2\#$ .

0–1

## Ex. 13-6

The end of a study by

**J.Merkin**

1.  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ !

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  2.  $g4\#$   $\mathbb{W}xg4$

Or 2...  $\mathbb{Q}xh4$  3.  $gxh5\!-+$ .

3.  $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 13-7

Based on a study by

**N.Grigoriev**

1.  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  2.  $c4!!$

(another 1 point)

Threatening 3.  $\mathbb{W}e7\#$  and 3.  $\mathbb{W}f7\#$ .

2.  $\mathbb{W}xc4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f7\#$   $\mathbb{W}+$

A typical way to win the queen.

# Solutions

## Ex. 13-8

W.Bone

1837

1.  $\mathbb{W}a2\uparrow \mathbb{Q}f8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}a3\uparrow$

(1 point)

A typical staircase manoeuvre begins!

2...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$

If 2...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  then 3.  $\mathbb{W}e7\uparrow \mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ .

3.  $\mathbb{W}b3\uparrow \mathbb{Q}f8$

3...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}b8\#$

4.  $\mathbb{W}b4\uparrow \mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $\mathbb{W}c4\uparrow \mathbb{Q}f8$  6.  $\mathbb{W}c5\uparrow \mathbb{Q}g8$

7.  $\mathbb{W}d5\uparrow \mathbb{Q}f8$  8.  $\mathbb{W}d6\uparrow$

Or 8.  $\mathbb{W}d8\uparrow+-$ .

8...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  9.  $\mathbb{W}e6\uparrow \mathbb{Q}f8$  10.  $\mathbb{W}e7\uparrow \mathbb{Q}g8$

11.  $\mathbb{W}e8\#$

Or 11.  $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ .

## Ex. 13-9

The end of a study by

B.Horwitz

1883

1.  $\mathbb{W}f3\uparrow!$

(1 point)

1.  $\mathbb{W}e6$  only leads to a draw: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  2.  $\mathbb{W}e2\uparrow \mathbb{W}g4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}e5\uparrow=$

1...  $\mathbb{W}g4$  2.  $\mathbb{W}f7\uparrow$

White can do better than repeat the position by 2.  $\mathbb{W}d5\uparrow \mathbb{W}g5$ .

2...  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  3.  $f4\uparrow!$   $\mathbb{W}xf4$  4.  $\mathbb{W}g6\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 13-10

The end of a study by

H.Rinck

1903

1.  $\mathbb{W}g3\uparrow!$

(1 point)

2.  $\mathbb{W}c1\uparrow$  leads only to a repetition of the position: 2...  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}h1\uparrow \mathbb{Q}d4$  4.  $\mathbb{W}a1\uparrow \mathbb{Q}e4$  5.  $\mathbb{W}h1\uparrow=$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}f5$

Or 2...  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g2\uparrow \mathbb{Q}d4$  4.  $c3\uparrow \mathbb{Q}c4$  5.  $\mathbb{W}a2\uparrow+-$

3.  $\mathbb{W}g5\uparrow!$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$

3...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}g8\uparrow+-$

4.  $\mathbb{W}g2\uparrow \mathbb{Q}d4$  5.  $c3\uparrow \mathbb{Q}c4$  6.  $\mathbb{W}a2\uparrow+-$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 13-11

The end of a study by

A.Troitzky

1908

White must look for a forced solution.

1.  $\mathbb{W}f3\uparrow!$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  2.  $\mathbb{W}d3\uparrow!$

(1 point)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}b5\uparrow!$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$

3...  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  4.  $\mathbb{W}b6\uparrow+-$

4.  $\mathbb{W}d7\uparrow!$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  5.  $\mathbb{W}a7\uparrow+-$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 13-12

The end of a study by

E.Del Rio

1750

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\uparrow!$

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}d8\uparrow+-$

2.  $\mathbb{W}g3\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g7\uparrow \mathbb{Q}e6$

3...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}e7\#$

4.  $\mathbb{W}e7\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  5.  $\mathbb{W}d7\uparrow!$

It is weaker to win the queen: 5.  $\mathbb{W}b7\uparrow$  (1 consolation point) 5...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xh1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6\uparrow\pm$

5...  $\mathbb{Q}c4$  6.  $\mathbb{W}d3\#$

(another 2 points for the whole variation)

## Scoring

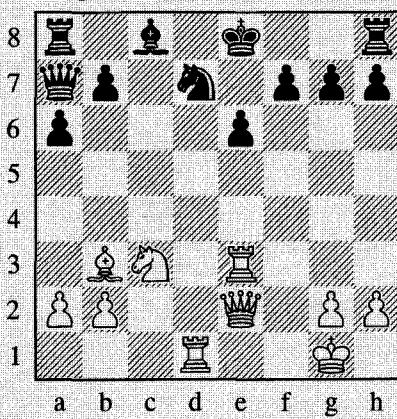
- Maximum number of points is **24**
- **20** points and above → **Excellent**
- **16** points and above → **Good**
- **12** points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **12** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Bring up the reserves!
- ✓ Coordination of the attacking pieces
- ✓ Weaknesses in the opponent's castled position
- ✓ Exchanging a good defensive piece
- ✓ The pawn storm

Diagram 14-1



## Attacking

An attack on the opposing king is the most natural of strategic plans. It is important to properly prepare an attack on the king, and then to conduct it energetically. In doing so, you should not forget the following important points.

## Bring your reserves into the attack in good time

Less experienced players sometimes try to attack too soon, without having sufficient forces or a good attacking position. Such a premature attack has no chance of success against more experienced opponents. You must try to support your attacking efforts with all your forces. When attacking you should neither hesitate nor wait too long, but often the most important factor is that you bring your reserves into play in good time.

Diagram 14-1

A.Yusupov – V.Ivanchuk

Riga 1995

White has sacrificed two pawns, but has a lead in development. He brings his forces into the attack.

1.♘e4

The knight closes in on the opponent. If 1.♘d5 then 1...b5∞.

1...0–0 2.♗h1

White unpins his rook, which can now easily transfer to the kingside via the third rank.

2...♘e5?

Black prepares his defence and brings the knight over to the kingside. However, the knight was not badly placed on d7, and was ready to head for f6 or f8.

As Aagaard pointed out in his excellent book *Attacking Manual 1*, Black would be better immediately activating his strongest piece. This can be done either by 2...b6!? followed by ...♗c7-e5, or by 2...♗b6 intending ...♗b5.

3.♗h3

This prepares an attack on h7.

3...♘g6

3...h6 would only weaken the castled position. White would have at his disposal the combination 4.♕xh6! gxh6 5.♗f6†. The following variation shows how White could pursue the attack: 5...♗h8 6.♗xe5 ♘b8 7.♗e4 ♖g7 8.♗f1 ♖h8 9.♗h5† ♖f8 10.♗b4† ♖e8 11.♗f6† ♖d8 12.♗d1† ♖c7 13.♗d6#

Diagram 14-2

## 4.♗h5?

A good move, which includes the queen in the attack with tempo.

However, White could already destroy the castled position with a combination. As some quite complicated analysis by Dolmatov shows, White can also achieve a decisive advantage by 4.♗xh7? and:

a) 4...♗f4 5.♗g4 ♖xh7 6.♗g5† ♖g8 7.♗h4! ♘e8 8.♗h7† (8.♗xf4 b5 is less convincing) 8...♗f8 9.♗h8† ♖e7 10.♗xg7 ♘f8 11.♗h7 ♘d7 12.♗f6† ♖e8 13.♗xf4 ♘d8 14.♗b4+–

b) 4...♗xh7 5.♗h5† ♖g8 6.♗g5 ♘e8 7.♗f1 ♘e7 (7...b5 8.♗h7† ♖f8 9.♗xg6 ♘e7 10.♗h7+–; 7...♗e5 8.♗xf7 ♘xf7 9.♗xf7† ♖h8 10.♗xe8#) 8.♗h7† (or 8.♗c2!+–) 8...♗f8 9.♗xg6 b5 10.♗h7 ♖e8 11.♗d1!+–

## 4...h6

Diagram 14-3

## 5.♗f6†?!

A tempting sacrifice, though in the game White was unable to find the correct follow-up.

From a practical point of view, the better solution was first to activate one of the reserves – the b3-bishop – with 5.♗c2! and now:

a) 5...e5 6.♗f6† ♖h8 (or 7...gxh6 8.♗g3 followed by ♘xg6† with a mating attack) 7.♗g3 ♘f4 (7...♗e6 8.♗xg6 fxg6 9.♗xg6 ♖g8 10.♗xg8 ♖xg8 11.♗h7† ♖f7 12.♗b3† ♖f6 13.♗f1!+–) 8.♗xe5 ♘g6 9.♗xg6 fxg6 10.♗xg6 b5 11.♗xh6† gxh6 12.♗d7!+–

b) 5...♗f4 6.♗f6† ♖h8 7.♗xf7! ♘d7 8.♗xh6†!+–

## 5...gxh6

Black cannot decline the sacrifice: 5...♗h8? 6.♗g5! e5 7.♗xh6† gxh6 8.♗xh6#

## 6.♗xh6 ♘e8

Diagram 14-4

## 7.♗g3?

The victory was still there until this obvious move threw it away.

Diagram 14-2

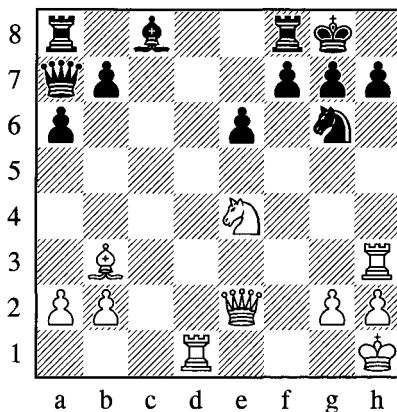


Diagram 14-3

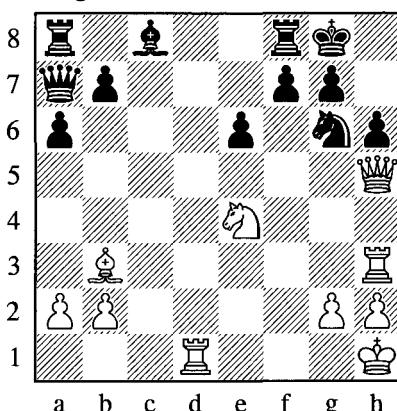
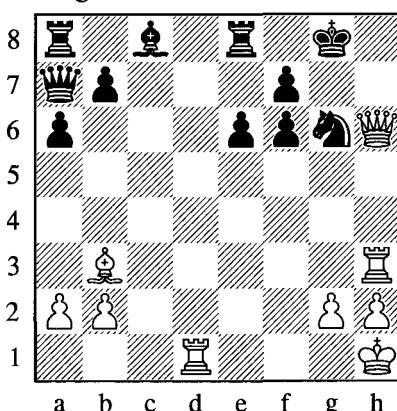
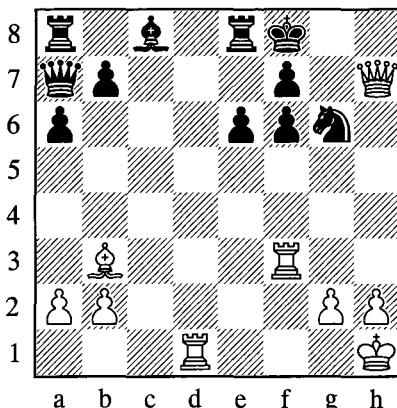


Diagram 14-4



## Strategy 2

Diagram 14-5 (analysis)



Nor does 7.♗c2? achieve anything, on account of 7...f5.

Instead, White could still win with 7.♕h7† ♖f8 8.♗f3! (Aagaard).

Diagram 14-5

A paradoxical idea. Instead of bringing the bishop directly into play, White in many variations opens the important a2-g8 diagonal, and thus brings the play to the bishop! White wins quickly in all lines:

- a) 8...♗e7 9.♕g7 f5 10.♗xf5+-
- b) 8...♗c5 9.♗xf6 ♖e5 10.♕h6† ♖e7 11.♕g5+-
- c) 8...b5 9.♗xf6 (Δ♗xg6) 9...♖e5 (9...♗e7 10.♗xg6+-) 10.♕h6† ♖e7 11.♕g5 ♖f8 12.♕xe5+- 7...♗f2!

This timely activation of the queen also draws the teeth from the idea of h2-h4-h5, and forces White to give perpetual check.

**8.♗xg6† ♖xg6 9.♗xg6† ♖f8 10.♕h6† ♖f7**

Of course not 10...♗e7?? 11.♕g7#.

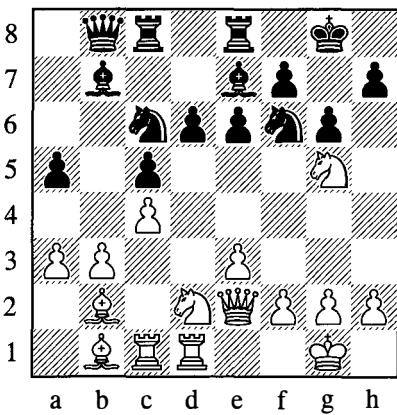
**11.♕h7† ♖f8 12.♕h8†**

½-½

### Coordination of the attacking pieces

You should try to open files for your major pieces and diagonals for your bishops and queen, aiming towards the opposing king. Your knights should be brought closer to the opposing position, ideally on supported squares. It is very important to bring the queen near to the opposing king. Far-advanced pawns can also offer good support to an attack. Your pieces will be well coordinated if they are aiming at a weak point.

Diagram 14-6



### Weaken the opponent's castled position

In order to weaken the opposing position, provoke pawn moves in the castled position. The weakened position is easier to attack. The castled position can often be destroyed with a sacrifice.

Diagram 14-6

**A.Yusupov – K.Hulak**

Indonesia 1983

**1.f4!**

An important attacking move that supports the

g5-knight. Black has to look for counterplay, and reacts in the centre.

**1...d5 2.♕f3**

White brings his queen nearer to the black king.

**2...d4 3.♕h3**

Provoking a fresh weakness in Black's castled position.

**3...h5**

Perhaps Black should try 3...♕h5! instead.

**4.♕g3**

This prepares both ♕xe6 and ♕xf7.

Sacrificing immediately is not so strong: 4.♕xe6 fxe6 (or 4...dxe3!) 5.♕xe6† ♕h8∞

**4...♕g4**

**Diagram 14-7**

**5.♕xf7!**

A typical sacrifice, destroying the black pawn shield.

**5...♔xf7 6.h3 ♕f6**

6...dxe3 is answered by: 7.hxg4 exd2 8.♕xg6†! (8.gxh5! is good too) 8...♕f8 9.♕xd2 White has a powerful attack, in return for a minimal investment of material.

**Diagram 14-8**

**7.♕e4?**

A natural move, but it gives the opponent time to strengthen his position.

The correct way to continue is the straightforward: 7.hxg4 h4 8.♕h2! dxe3 9.♕xf6 exd2 10.♕xh4 (or 10.♕xd2 ♕xf6 11.♕xh4† ♕g7 12.♕d7†+) 10...♕xf4 (10...dxc1 11.♕h7† ♕xf6 11.g5#) 11.♕xd2 ♕xd2 12.♕h7† ♕xf6 13.♕f1† ♕e5 14.♕h2† ♕d4 15.♕d6† ♕c3 16.♕f3†+

**7...♕xe3?**

7...♕e7! is necessary: 8.hxg4 ♕xe4∞

**8.♕xf6**

Threatening ♕xg6†.

**8...♕e7 9.♕d7!**

The nimble knight heads to e5, and the g6-square will be attacked three times.

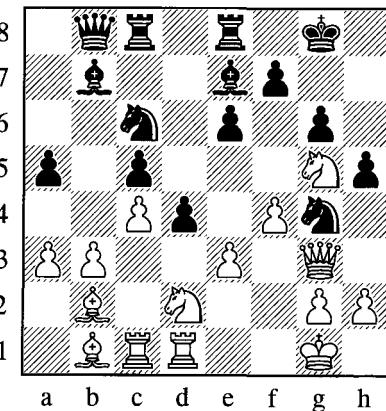
**9...♕c7 10.♕e5† ♕g8**

**Diagram 14-9**

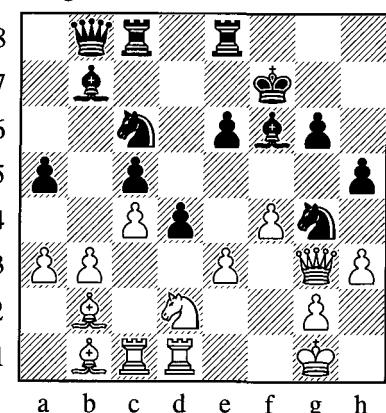
**11.♕e1!**

White prepares an exchange sacrifice on e3, in order to open the long diagonal.

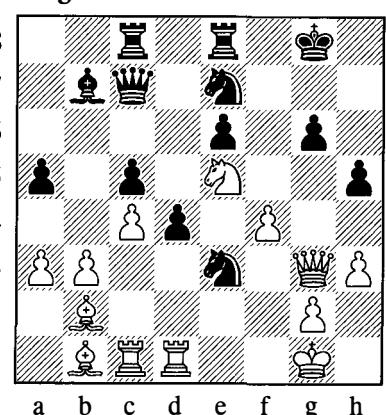
**Diagram 14-7**



**Diagram 14-8**



**Diagram 14-9**



## Strategy 2

Simply defending the g2-pawn with 11.  $\mathbb{E}d2!$  is also very strong.

However, 11.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  is not so clear: 11...  $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  12.  $\mathbb{W}xg6\uparrow$   $\mathbb{W}g7$  13.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  14.  $\mathbb{E}xd4$   $cx d4$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4\uparrow$   $e5\infty$

11...  $h4$  12.  $\mathbb{W}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}7f5$

## Diagram 14-10

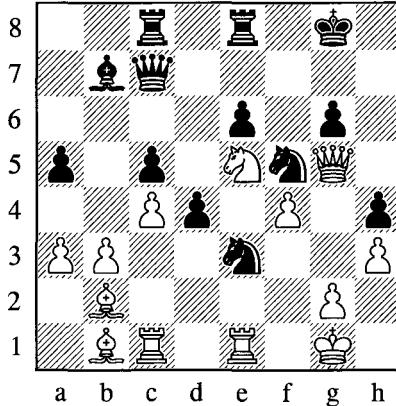


Diagram 14-10

Black tries to build his position around the e3-knight, but White can attack this piece and open up the position.

13.  $\mathbb{Q}g4!$

The threat is 13.  $\mathbb{Q}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  14.  $\mathbb{E}xe3$  followed by  $\mathbb{W}xg6\uparrow$ .

13...  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$

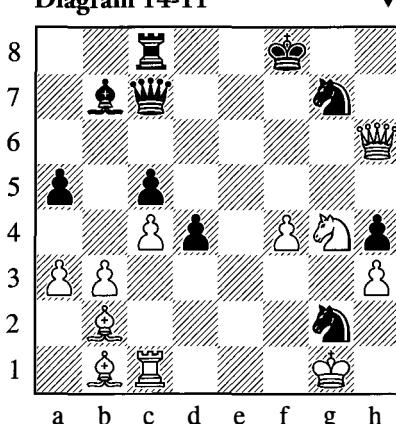
Now the e-file is opened for the white rook.

14.  $\mathbb{W}xg6\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$

White also prevails after: 14...  $\mathbb{W}g7$  15.  $\mathbb{E}xe6$   $\mathbb{W}xg6$  16.  $\mathbb{E}xg6\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8$   $\mathbb{E}xe8$  18.  $\mathbb{E}b6$  (threatening not only  $\mathbb{E}xb7\uparrow$ , but also  $\mathbb{Q}g6\uparrow$ ) 18...  $\mathbb{E}e7$  19.  $b4+$

15.  $\mathbb{E}xe6$   $\mathbb{E}xe6$  16.  $\mathbb{W}xe6$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  17.  $\mathbb{W}h6$

## Diagram 14-11



The black king is left without sufficient protection. Meanwhile White is attacking with queen, knight and bishop.

17...  $\mathbb{W}e7$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}g6\uparrow$

There is no good defence against  $\mathbb{W}h8\uparrow$ . If 18...  $\mathbb{W}e6$  then simply 19.  $f5$ .

1-0

**Exchanging a good defensive piece** can also lead to the weakening of the castled position. In addition, it is often easier to fight against fewer defensive pieces. For example, we saw in Diagram 14-9 above that the threat to exchange the e3-knight led to the collapse of the black defences.

## The pawn storm

Advancing pawns can play an important role in an attack. They can drive the opposing pieces away from good positions, and the exchange of pawns results in the opening of lines for the attack. To conduct a pawn storm, you must first have a **secure position in the centre**; otherwise there is a great danger of being counter-attacked.

Diagram 14-12

A.Yusupov – L.Sobolevsky

Mainz (rapid) 2001

1.f4!

This forces the opening of the e-file.

Another strong plan is first 1.dxe5 and then 2.f4!.

1...exd4 2.exd4  $\mathbb{W}d8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}ce4$ 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  first is possible too.3...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4...  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  is met by 5.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ .

5.d5!

The threat is now  $\mathbb{W}c3$ . Black tries to prevent that, but overlooks a typical combination which exploits the weakness on the long diagonal.5...  $\mathbb{Q}a5$ ?Black should have played 5...  $\mathbb{Q}xe4\pm$  or 5...  $\mathbb{Q}d7\pm$ .

Diagram 14-13

6.  $\mathbb{W}xa5!!+-$   $\mathbb{W}xa5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 8...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$  f6 11.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 12.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ 9.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$ Mate is forced: 10...  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  (10...  $\mathbb{Q}h4$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ )11.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  12. g3#  $\mathbb{Q}h3$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}xg4\#$ 

1-0

Diagram 14-14

D.Karrer – A.Yusupov

Germany simultaneous 2004

Black has sacrificed a pawn but has the better development. He wants to open up the play.

1...e5!?

First 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$ ? would be even better: 2.  $\mathbb{W}f2$  (2.  $\mathbb{W}xh6$ ?  $\mathbb{W}e1\#$ ) 2...e5 Black has good compensation for the pawn.2.c3  $\mathbb{W}a4$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xh7$  0-0-0

Black is ready to sacrifice several more pawns in order to bring all his pieces into play. White has not yet developed his forces, and therefore runs into major problems.

4.  $\mathbb{W}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}gd6$  5.  $\mathbb{W}b3$   $\mathbb{W}a5$ 

Of course Black avoids the exchange of queens.

6.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$ ?

Diagram 14-12

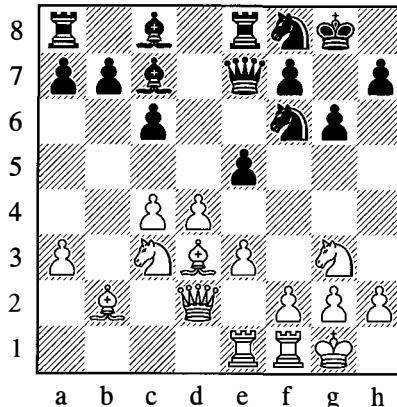


Diagram 14-13

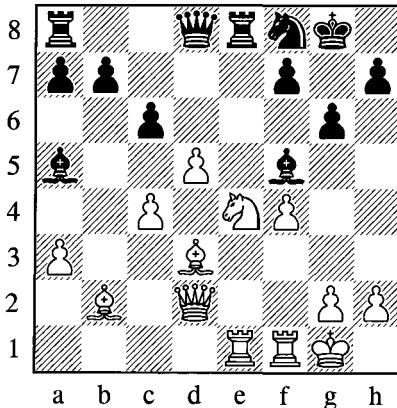
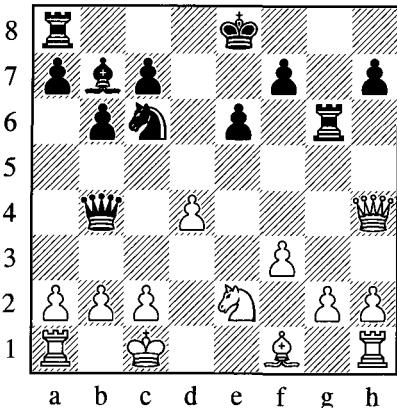


Diagram 14-14



## Strategy 2

Diagram 14-15

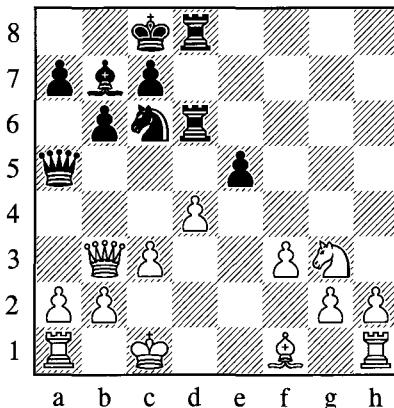
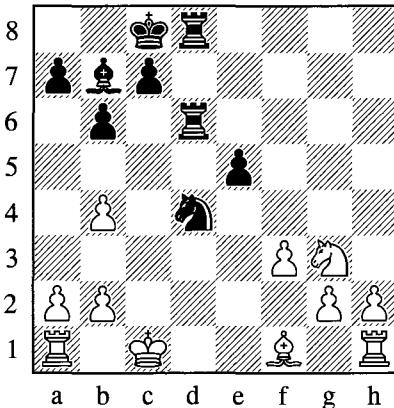


Diagram 14-16



White should continue to offer the queen exchange:

6.  $\mathbb{W}a3!!$   $\mathbb{W}d5$  7.  $\mathbb{W}b3$

Diagram 14-15

6...  $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$  7.  $\mathbb{W}b4!$

Now White forces the exchange of queens, but at a cost.

7.  $cx d4$  is followed by 7...  $\mathbb{E}c6\uparrow$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}a6-$ .

7...  $\mathbb{W}xb4$  8.  $cx b4$

Diagram 14-16

8...  $\mathbb{Q}b3\uparrow!$

This wins Black the exchange, and gives him a positional advantage. An attack does not always have to lead to mate!

9.  $axb3$   $\mathbb{E}d1\uparrow$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{E}xa1$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}e2?$

11.  $\mathbb{Q}d3!$  is necessary, with some hopes of a draw.

11...  $\mathbb{E}xh1$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}xh1$   $e4!$

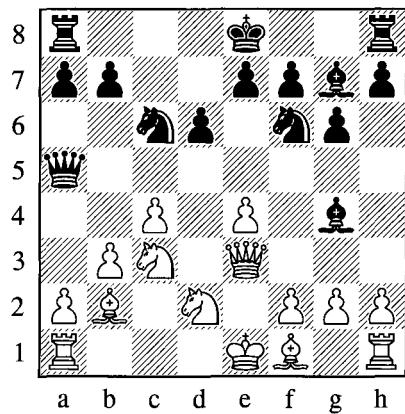
The white pawn structure is split, and the black rook can easily attack the pawns.

13.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $exf3$  14.  $gxf3$   $\mathbb{E}f8$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3$

The ending is lost for White.

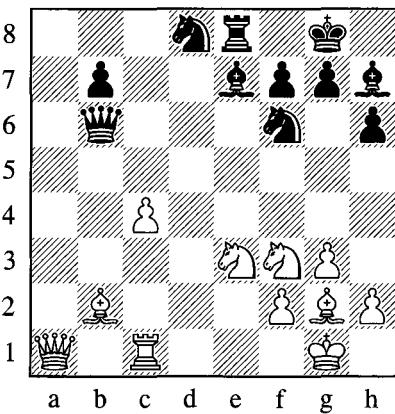
# Exercises

► Ex. 14-1 ◀ ★★



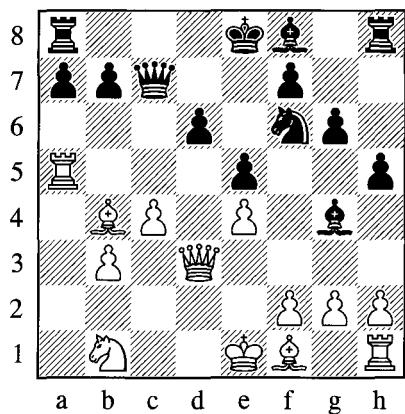
▼

► Ex. 14-4 ◀ ★★



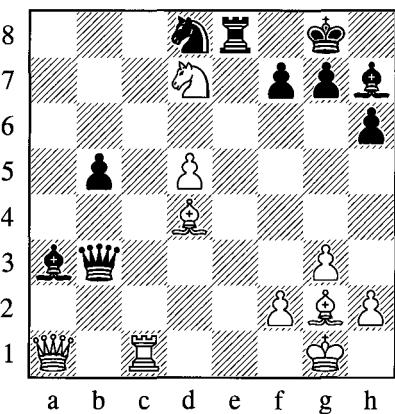
△

► Ex. 14-2 ◀ ★★



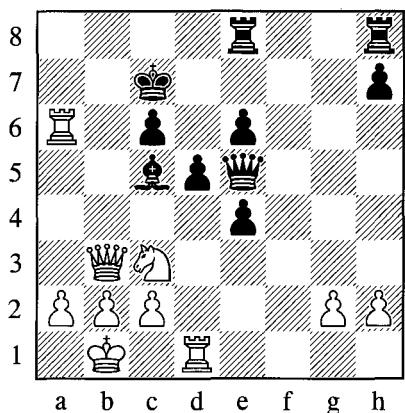
▼

► Ex. 14-5 ◀ ★★★



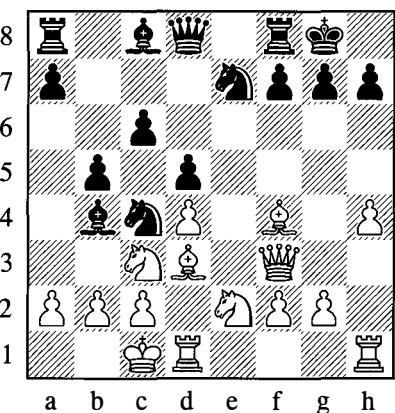
△

► Ex. 14-3 ◀ ★★



▼

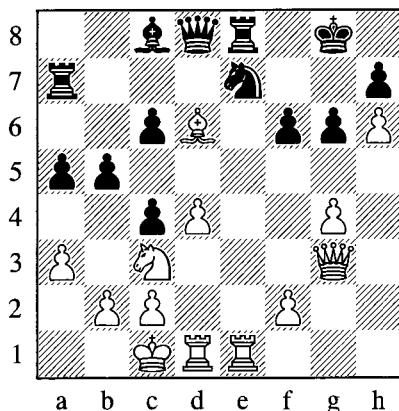
► Ex. 14-6 ◀ ★★



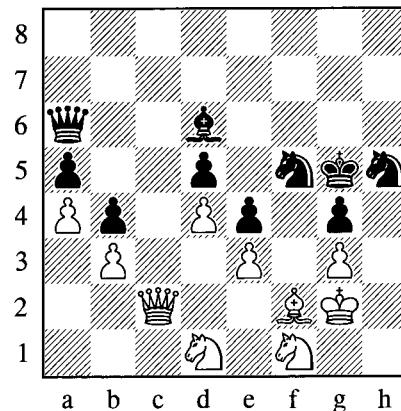
△

# Exercises

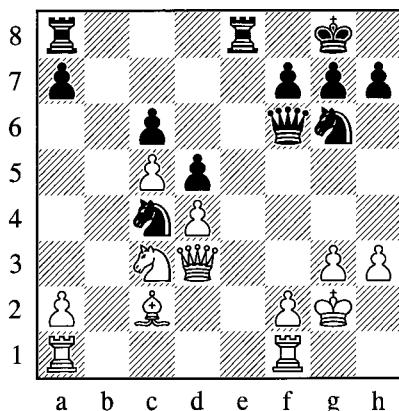
► Ex. 14-7 ◀ ★★



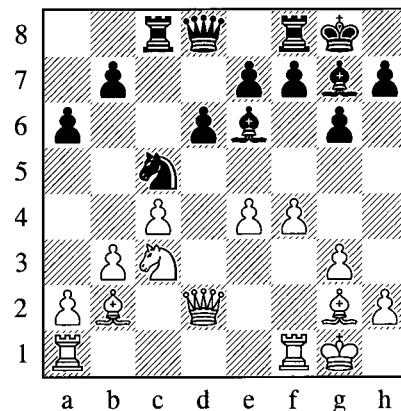
► Ex. 14-10 ◀ ★★★



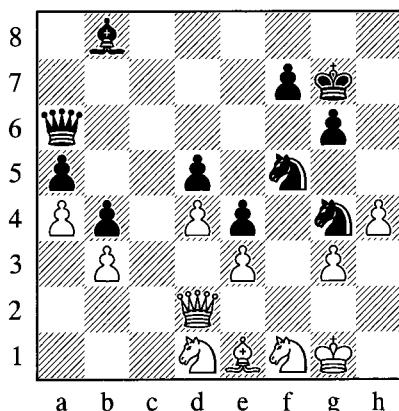
► Ex. 14-8 ◀ ★★



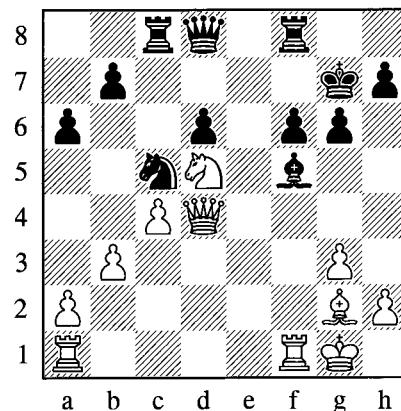
► Ex. 14-11 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 14-9 ◀ ★★★



► Ex. 14-12 ◀ ★★



# Solutions

## Ex. 14-1

O.Bernstein – B.Larsen

Amsterdam Olympiad 1954

1... $\mathbb{Q}b4!$

(1 point)

Black makes use of his lead in development to begin active operations.

1...h5 ( $\Delta \dots \mathbb{Q}h6$ ) is not so clear after 2.h3.

2. $\mathbb{E}c1$

2. $\mathbb{Q}d3?$   $\mathbb{Q}h6!+$

2... $\mathbb{Q}xa2$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xa2$

3. $\mathbb{E}a1$   $\mathbb{Q}b4!+$  ( $\Delta \dots \mathbb{Q}c2\#$ )

(another 1 point for this variation)

2... $\mathbb{W}xa2\mp$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$

3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{W}a3$  4. $\mathbb{E}a1$   $\mathbb{W}c5\mp$

3...e5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  h5 5. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{W}a3$  6. $\mathbb{E}a1$   $\mathbb{W}c5$

7. $\mathbb{E}a5$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}b4$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  9. $\mathbb{Q}b1?$

See Ex.14-2.

## Ex. 14-2

O.Bernstein – B.Larsen

Amsterdam Olympiad 1954

1... $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$

(1 point)

Black has another good move available: 1...d5! (also 1 point) 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  dxe4 3. $\mathbb{E}xe5\mp$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  (another 1 point) 4. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  exd3 5. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}b4\mp$

2. $\mathbb{W}xe4$  d5!

(another 1 point)

But not 2... $\mathbb{Q}f5$  3. $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}xb1$  4.c5!  $\mathbb{Q}e5$ .

3. $\mathbb{E}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xb4\mp$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  0-0 5. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{E}ad8$

6. $\mathbb{E}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2\mp$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$   $\mathbb{Q}f5\mp$

## Ex. 14-3

C.Alexander – B.Larsen

Hastings 1956/7

1... $\mathbb{E}b8!$

(1 point)

A natural attacking move.

2. $\mathbb{W}a4$   $\mathbb{E}xb2\mp$

(another 1 point)

2... $\mathbb{W}xc3?$  would be bad: 3. $\mathbb{W}xc6\mp$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  4.b3

White has a decisive attack.

3. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$

3. $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $\mathbb{E}b6\mp$

3... $\mathbb{E}b8\mp$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c1$

4. $\mathbb{W}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3\mp$

6... $\mathbb{Q}e3\mp$  7. $\mathbb{E}d2$   $\mathbb{W}xc3$  8. $\mathbb{E}a7\mp$   $\mathbb{Q}xa7$  9. $\mathbb{W}xa7\mp$   $\mathbb{E}b7$  10. $\mathbb{W}d4$   $\mathbb{W}xd4\rightarrow$  11. $\mathbb{E}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  12. $\mathbb{E}d2$  c5 13.g4 e3 14. $\mathbb{E}g2$  d4 15.g5  $\mathbb{E}f7$  16. $\mathbb{Q}d1$  e5 17.h4 e4 18. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{E}f3$  19.h5 c4

0-1

## Ex. 14-4

B.Larsen – E.Geller

Copenhagen 1960

1. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$

(2 points)

This opens the long diagonal and creates a passed pawn.

1. $\mathbb{Q}d4?$  (1 point) intending to bring a knight to f5, is not bad either.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$

1... $\mathbb{W}a6$  2. $\mathbb{W}xa6$  bxa6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7\pm$  (Larsen).

2. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{W}b3$

Larsen analysed the alternatives:

a) 3... $\mathbb{W}a6$  4. $\mathbb{W}xa6$  bxa6 5. $\mathbb{Q}c8\pm$

b) 3... $\mathbb{W}b5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  f6 5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}b4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d7$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$

7. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  8. $\mathbb{W}a4!$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  9. $\mathbb{Q}c8\mp$

4. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  b5?! 5. $\mathbb{Q}d7\pm$   $\mathbb{Q}a3$

See Ex.14-5.

## Ex. 14-5

B.Larsen – E.Geller

Copenhagen 1960

1. $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$

(1 point)

If 1. $\mathbb{Q}f1?$  then 1... $\mathbb{Q}f5\mp$ .

1. $\mathbb{E}c3$  (1consolation point) is not as strong as the game move: 1... $\mathbb{Q}b2!$  2. $\mathbb{E}xb3$   $\mathbb{Q}xa1$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e3\mp$  (but not 3. $\mathbb{Q}xa1\mp$   $\mathbb{E}e1\mp$ ).

1... $\mathbb{Q}xc1$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f6\mp$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe8\mp$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{W}h8\mp$

(another 1 point)

# Solutions

4... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ –5. $\mathbb{d}6\#!$ 

(another 1 point)

The key move; White wins by force.

5... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  6. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$ –6. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}c8$  8. $\mathbb{Q}b7$  9. $\mathbb{W}xd8$  10. $\mathbb{W}d1\#$ 9. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  10. $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$  11. $\mathbb{W}a5\#$ 

1–0

## Ex. 14-6

**B.Larsen – L.Portisch**

Amsterdam 1964

The annotations to this exercise and the next one are based on analysis by Larsen.

1. $\mathbb{h}5!$ 

(2 points)

The march of the h-pawn weakens the black castled position.

1... $\mathbb{f}6?$ 1... $\mathbb{W}a5?$  is bad: 2. $\mathbb{h}6$   $\mathbb{g}6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$   $\mathbb{W}xc7$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f6+$ –After 1... $\mathbb{h}6$  2. $\mathbb{g}4$ , the further advance of the g-pawn could be a problem for Black.2. $\mathbb{g}4$   $\mathbb{W}a5?$ The position after 2... $\mathbb{a}5!$  3. $\mathbb{W}g3$   $\mathbb{a}4$  is less clear, since 4. $\mathbb{g}5?$ ! can be met by 4... $\mathbb{f}5\#$ .3. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{d}xc4$  4. $\mathbb{a}3!$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 4... $\mathbb{Q}xa3$  loses after 5. $\mathbb{b}xa3$   $\mathbb{W}xa3\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{b}4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}a1!$   $\mathbb{b}xc3\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{W}b4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}hb1\#$ –5. $\mathbb{Q}xc3\#$   $\mathbb{W}d8$ 5... $\mathbb{b}4$  6. $\mathbb{a}xb4$   $\mathbb{W}xb4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}he1\#$ –6. $\mathbb{Q}he1!$ 6. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $\mathbb{W}d5\#$ –6... $\mathbb{a}5?$ Black should prefer 6... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 7. $\mathbb{W}xd5\#$   $\mathbb{cxd5}$  8. $\mathbb{f}3\#$ –7. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 7... $\mathbb{b}4?$ ! 8. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$   $\mathbb{b}xc3?$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{cxb2\#}$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}b1\#$ –8. $\mathbb{h}6\#$ !  $\mathbb{g}6$  9. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 

See Ex. 14-7.

## Ex. 14-7

**B.Larsen – L.Portisch**

Amsterdam 1964

1. $\mathbb{W}f4!$ 

(1 point)

White brings his queen closer to the attack. However, he has various alternatives, some of which are also strong:

a) 1. $\mathbb{Q}b8$  is not so good: 1... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}de7$ –b) 1. $\mathbb{Q}e4?$  (1 point) is met by 1... $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$ .c) 1. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  2. $\mathbb{W}e3\#$ – (2 point) puts Black in a very unpleasant pin. (2. $\mathbb{Q}e4$  is less clear after 2... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}xe1$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$  and brings you only 1 point.)1... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 1... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{cxd5}$  3. $\mathbb{W}xf6!$  (or 3. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$ –) 3... $\mathbb{W}xf6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xe8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$ –

(another 1 point for this variation)

2. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{f}5$ 2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$ –2... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{cxd5}$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$ –3. $\mathbb{Q}b8$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  4. $\mathbb{W}e5!$ Or 4. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xb7\#$ –.4... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5. $\mathbb{g}5$   $\mathbb{b}4$ 5... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{cxd5}$  7. $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$ –6. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  7. $\mathbb{W}xc6\#$ –  $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 7... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  9. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 10. $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$ –7... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$ –7... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  8. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{b}xc3$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$ –8. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  9. $\mathbb{d}5\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 9... $\mathbb{b}xc3$  10. $\mathbb{d}6\#$ –10. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 10... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  11. $\mathbb{W}xc4\#$ –11. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 11... $\mathbb{W}xc6$  12. $\mathbb{d}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  13. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 14. $\mathbb{c}7\#$ –12. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{b}xc3$ 12... $\mathbb{W}xc6$  13. $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$ –12... $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  13. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  14. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$ –13. $\mathbb{Q}b4\#$ 

1–0

# Solutions

## Ex. 14-8

A.Gipslis – B.Larsen

Sousse 1967

1... $\mathbb{W}g5!$

(2 points)

Black aims to provoke the weakening of the white position by threatening ... $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$ .

The useful 1... $\mathbb{Q}ab8$  earns 1 consolation point.

2. $\mathbb{Q}h2?$

White should prefer 2. $f4$   $\mathbb{W}e7\#$  (Larsen).

2... $\mathbb{Q}b2!$  3. $\mathbb{W}f3?$

3. $\mathbb{W}a6!$ ? is more complex, although Black is still doing well: 3... $\mathbb{W}d2$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$   $\mathbb{Q}hxg6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}e1!$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{W}xe1$  7. $\mathbb{W}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  (8. $\mathbb{W}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ ) 8... $\mathbb{W}xa1$  9. $\mathbb{W}b5$   $\mathbb{W}e1$  10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{W}c3$  White does not have enough compensation for the exchange.

3... $\mathbb{W}d2$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$   $\mathbb{Q}hxg6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}c4!$  6. $\mathbb{W}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}ab8$  7. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$

Or 7... $\mathbb{W}e2$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$ .

8. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{W}xd4\#$  9. $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $a5$  11. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $a4$  12. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $a3$  13. $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $g5$  14. $\mathbb{Q}e7$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  15. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}b2$  16. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}xa2$  17. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $dxc4$  18. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}dd2$  19. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $c3$

0-1

## Ex. 14-9

T.Petrosian – B.Larsen

Santa Monica 1966

1... $f6!$

(3 points)

The black pieces are very well placed; the time has come to bring the pawns into the game too. Black prepares ... $g5$  to break open the white bastion on the kingside.

The neutral moves 1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$  or 1... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  are awarded only 1 consolation point.

2. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $g5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}gh6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}hxg5$

4. $h5$  is met by 4... $g4\#$ ; Black will secure his  $g$ -pawn by ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  and ... $f5$ , and then continue with ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ - $g5$ - $f3$ .

4... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  5. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $g4$  7. $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  9. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$

Larsen plays some waiting moves before the time control.

11. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  12. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  13. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  14. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  15. $\mathbb{Q}f2$

See Ex.14-10.

## Ex. 14-10

T.Petrosian – B.Larsen

Santa Monica 1966

1... $\mathbb{W}a8!$

(3 points)

Black prepares to support his attack with his strongest piece. His plan consists of ... $\mathbb{W}h8$  followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}hxg3$  and ... $\mathbb{W}h3\#$ .

The immediate 1... $\mathbb{Q}hxg3$  is weaker: 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$   $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$   $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$   $\mathbb{W}g2\#$  (1 consolation point) 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2!$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  6. $\mathbb{W}g2\#$

1... $\mathbb{Q}b8$  (1 point) intends 2... $\mathbb{W}h6$ , but White can try for counterplay with 2. $\mathbb{W}c5$ .

2. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}h8\#$  3. $\mathbb{W}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$   $\mathbb{Q}hxg3$

After 5. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$   $\mathbb{W}h3\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}xg3\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}xe3\#$  (Larsen), Black easily wins the ending.

0-1

## Ex. 14-11

V.Smyslov – J.Timman

Moscow 1981

1. $f5!$

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  2. $f6\#$

(another 1 point)

This pawn sacrifice forces a critical weakening of the black kingside.

2... $\mathbb{Q}f5$

Even worse is 2... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}exf6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$  (Smyslov).

3. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $f5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$

4... $\mathbb{Q}xf5\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  6. $\mathbb{W}d4\#$   $f6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}ae1\#$

5. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  6. $\mathbb{W}d4\#$   $f6$

See Ex.14-12.

# Solutions

## Ex. 14-12

V.Smyslov – J.Timman

Moscow 1981

1.g4!

(1 point)

This pawn wins the game.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e6$

Or 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  2. $\mathbb{W}d1!+-$ .

2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$   $\mathbb{E}xf6$  3.g5--

(another 1 point)

3... $\mathbb{Q}f5$  4. $\mathbb{E}ad1$  b5 5.cxb5 axb5 6.gxf6†  
 $\mathbb{W}xf6$  7. $\mathbb{W}xf6†$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  8. $\mathbb{E}xd6†$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  9. $\mathbb{E}b6$   
 $\mathbb{E}c5$  10. $\mathbb{E}e1$

1–0

## Scoring

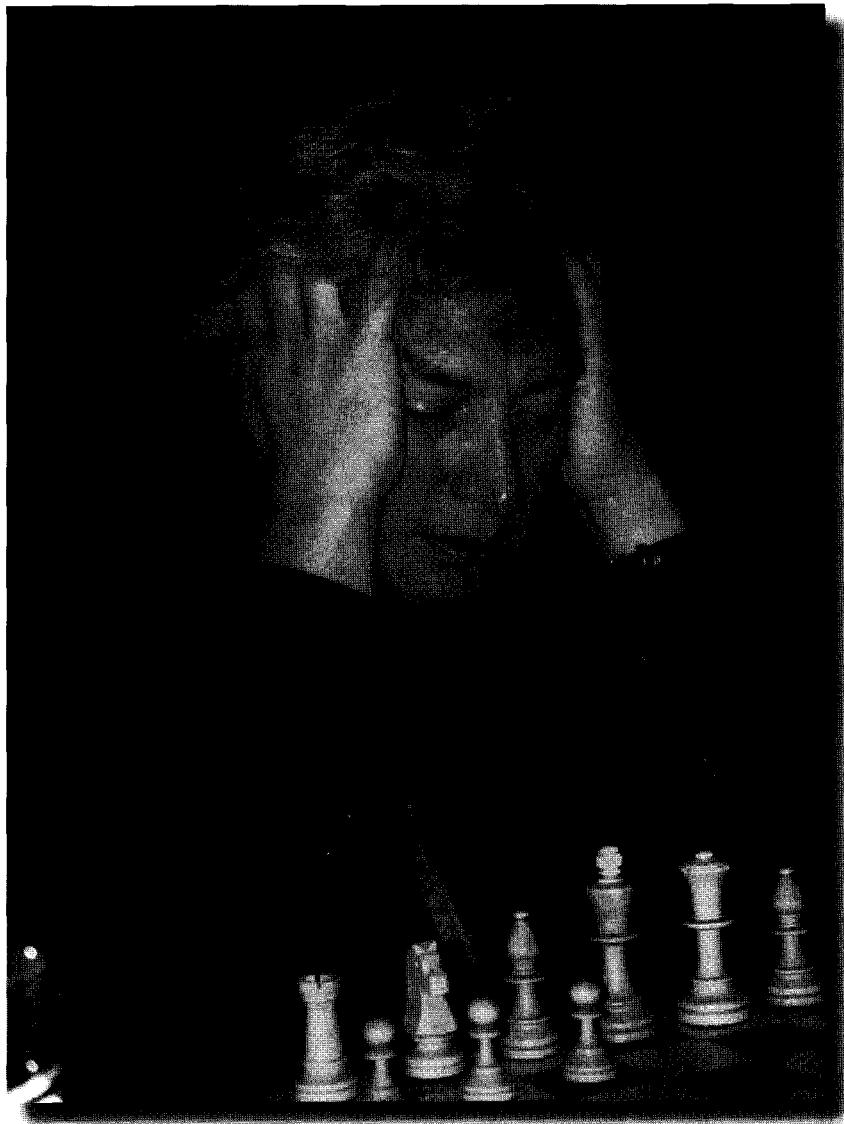
Maximum number of points is 27

23 points and above ..... ➤ Excellent

18 points and above ..... ➤ Good

13 points ..... ➤ Pass mark

*If you scored less than 13 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*



At his peak Dutchman  
Jan Timman was ranked No. 2  
in the world

## Contents

- ✓ Strengths of the pieces
- ✓ Distribution of roles
- ✓ Examples of cooperation between rook and bishop

Diagram 15-1

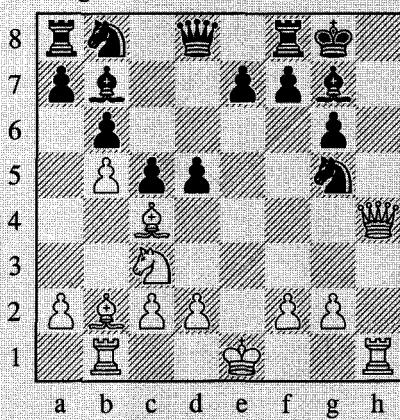
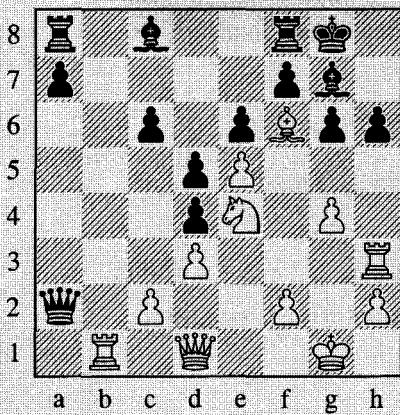


Diagram 15-2



## Attacking with rook and bishop

Rook and bishop are very easy to coordinate. However, they cannot mate the opposing king without extra help; to do so they need either their own or opposing pieces to block the king's escape route.

Normally the bishop takes on the supporting role and the rook 'closes the door', but it can happen the other way round. We have already observed some examples of the cooperation between these pieces; for example, the 'windmill' (Chapter 1 of *Boost Your Chess 1*) and Pillsbury's mate (Chapter 2 of *Build Up Your Chess 1*).

The bishop can support the rook by depriving the king of escape squares and/or providing the rook with the necessary protection. It is clear that for this coordination, **open lines and diagonals** are required.

The following mating combinations illustrate the power of these pieces.

Diagram 15-1

Trajanov – 'Allies'

1936

1.  $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 

White brings his minor pieces into play.

1...dxe4??

Black misses the main threat. He had to play 1...e5!

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5 \mathbb{E}e8\infty$ .If 1... $\mathbb{Q}xb2?$  then 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  (threatening  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ ) 2...f5 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5 \mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ .2.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh8\#$ 

An important mating pattern.

Diagram 15-2

J.Mileika – Seledkin

USSR 1971

In this game too, White used the same mating motif.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c1!$ Threatening to win the queen by 2.  $\mathbb{Q}a1$ , but that is

not the only threat!

**1...dxe4?**

Black would survive longer by surrendering the queen. But even then, after 1... $\mathbb{W}xb1$  2. $\mathbb{W}xb1$  dxe4 White has a decisive attack: 3. $\mathbb{W}c1$  g5 4. $\mathbb{B}h5+-$

**2. $\mathbb{W}xh6!$**

There is no defence against mate: 2... $\mathbb{W}xb1\#$  3. $\mathbb{B}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  4. $\mathbb{B}xh6\#$

**1-0**

**Diagram 15-3**

**Kunnermann – Uhlrich**

1934

White tries to exploit the weakness of the 8th rank.

**1. $\mathbb{W}f6?$   $\mathbb{W}xc3?$**

A fatal error. Black could save the game with the unexpected trick 1... $\mathbb{W}c1!!$ , and now:

- a) 2. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ ??  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  Black wins, because the white rook is pinned.
- b) 2. $\mathbb{Q}xc1?$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$
- c) 2. $\mathbb{B}xc1?$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$
- d) 2. $\mathbb{W}xe5$   $\mathbb{W}xh6!$  3. $\mathbb{W}f6$  (3. $\mathbb{W}b8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4. $\mathbb{W}xb7$   $\mathbb{W}d2$  is fine for Black, as White cannot play 5. $\mathbb{B}e7?$   $\mathbb{B}f5$  6. $\mathbb{W}xa7$   $\mathbb{W}d1\#$  7. $\mathbb{B}g2$   $\mathbb{W}f3\#$  8. $\mathbb{B}g1$  c5–+) 3... $\mathbb{W}f8$  4. $\mathbb{B}e7$  The position is roughly level.

**2. $\mathbb{W}g7\#!!$**

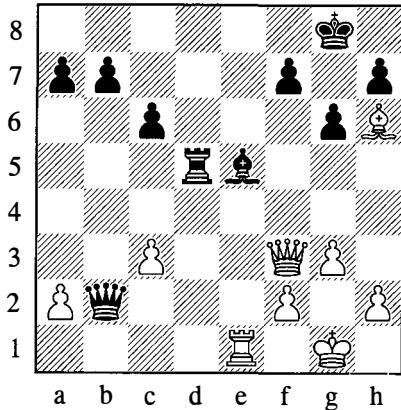
Deflecting the bishop.

**2... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  3. $\mathbb{B}e8\#$**

It is mate next move.

**1-0**

**Diagram 15-3**



**Diagram 15-4**

**P.Korning – E.Sterud**

Correspondence game 1963

For White there are many roads which lead to Rome.

**1. $\mathbb{W}f6!$**

1. $\mathbb{B}f8!$  is also good: 1... $\mathbb{B}xf8$  2. $\mathbb{B}xf7!$  (or 2.d8 $\mathbb{W}+-$ )

2... $\mathbb{B}xf7$  3. $\mathbb{B}f1\#$   $\mathbb{B}e7$  4. $\mathbb{B}xf8\#$ –

1. $\mathbb{B}e7!$  wins as well: 1... $\mathbb{B}xd7$  2. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$ –

**1... $\mathbb{B}xd7$  2. $\mathbb{W}d8\#$ !**

Very nice, although 2. $\mathbb{B}e7\#$ – is also good enough.

**2... $\mathbb{B}xd8$  3. $\mathbb{B}xd8\#$   $\mathbb{B}g7$  4. $\mathbb{B}f8\#$   $\mathbb{B}g8$  5. $\mathbb{B}h6\#$**

Another important mating pattern.

**Diagram 15-4**

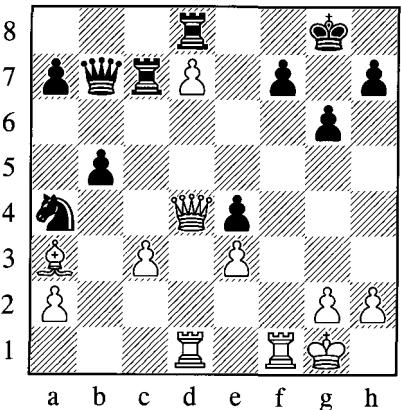


Diagram 15-5

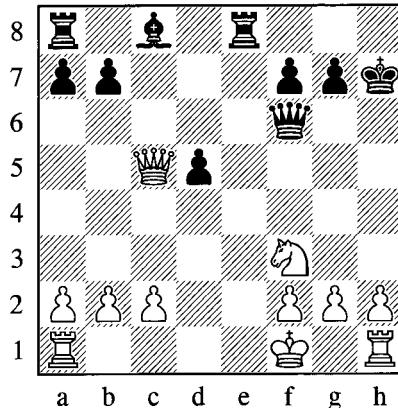


Diagram 15-5

## Kirdezoff – Kan

1918

Black opts for a rapid attack.

1...  $\mathbb{W}xf3!$ 

A strong sacrifice, although the relatively banal 1...  $\mathbb{W}xb2$  2.  $\mathbb{W}d4$   $\mathbb{W}xc2$  also gives Black a clear advantage.

2.  $\mathbb{g}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{E}e6$ The threat is simply ...  $\mathbb{E}g6\#$ .4.  $\mathbb{W}c7?$ !

White has a more resilient defence: 4.  $\mathbb{W}d4$  (or 4.  $\mathbb{W}b4$ ) 4...  $\mathbb{E}g6\#$  5.  $\mathbb{W}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  (5...  $\mathbb{E}e8?$  also looks good for Black, because after 6.  $\mathbb{W}g3!$   $\mathbb{E}e2$  the white king and h1-rook remain locked in) 6.  $f\#xg4$   $\mathbb{E}xg4\#$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{E}c8$  8.  $c3$   $d4\#$

4...  $\mathbb{E}ae8!$ 

Black threatens ...  $\mathbb{E}e1\#$  followed by mate, and 5.  $\mathbb{W}c3$  allows 5...  $\mathbb{E}g6\#$ .

0-1

Diagram 15-6

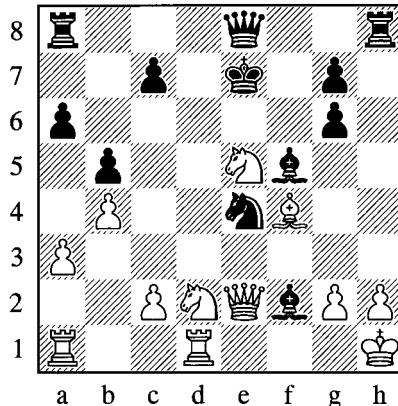


Diagram 15-6

## N.N. – Stoner

1929

Another typical situation, in which the black bishop is controlling the escape square g1. Black 'only' has to open the h-file!

1...  $\mathbb{E}xh2\#$ ! 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xh2$   $\mathbb{W}h8\#$  –2...  $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ !

In such situations, very energetic action is called for, preferably with checks, so that the opponent does not get any breathing space. For example, 2...  $\mathbb{W}h8?$  would be too slow, due to 3.  $\mathbb{Q}ef3$  –.

3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg3$   $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ 

The attack gathers pace.

4.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{W}xh2\#$ ! 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xh2$   $\mathbb{E}h8\#$  6.  $\mathbb{W}h5$   $\mathbb{E}xh5\#$

Diagram 15-7

## A.Alekhnine – Supico

Lisbon simultaneous 1941

White can force the opening of the h-file, along with the diagonal for his bishop.

**1.♗g6!!**

Threatening  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$ .

1.♗g6† is also good enough: 1... fxg6 2.♗xg6  $\mathbb{E}xf5$  3.♗h3+–

**1...fxg6**

1...♗g8 is followed by 2.♗xh7†! ♕xh7 3.♗h3#.

**2.♗xg6† hxg6 3.♗h3†**

**1–0**

In the next example, Tal's opponent tries to catch him out tactically! A dangerous business!

Diagram 15-8

## M.Tal – Benisch

1969

**1...♗xc3?**

It may look as though Black's combination is working; White cannot take the rook in view of his back-rank weakness. But Tal has an answer ready!

**2.♗d8†**

Playing 2.♗f4! first is also good: 2...♗xc2 3.♗d8†+–

**2...♗f8 3.♗f4!**

But not 3.♗xc3??  $\mathbb{W}b1†$ +–.

**1–0**

Black is lost after both 3...♗xc2 4.♗h6 and 3...♗d5 4.♗xf8† ♕xf8 5.♗xc3.

Diagram 15-7

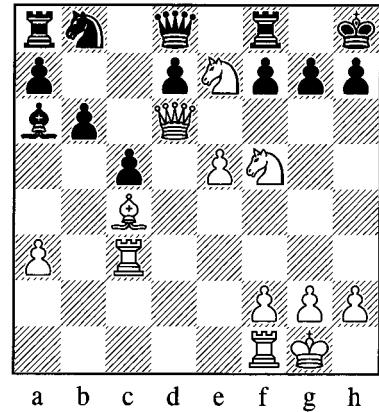
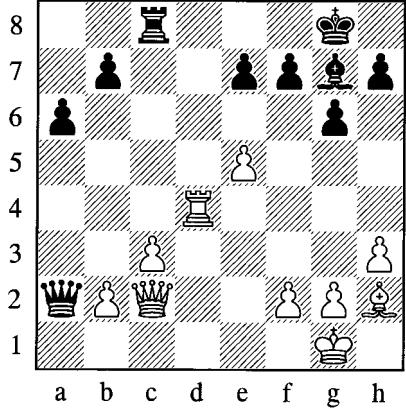
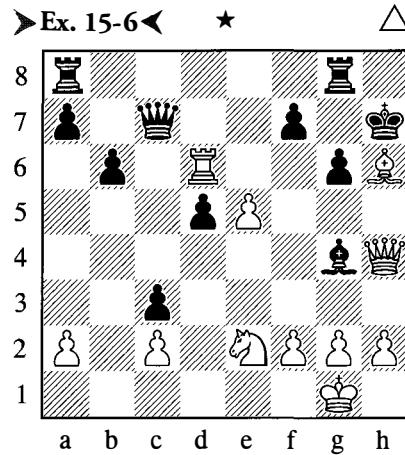
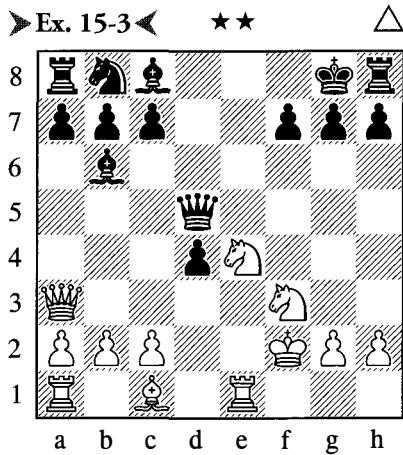
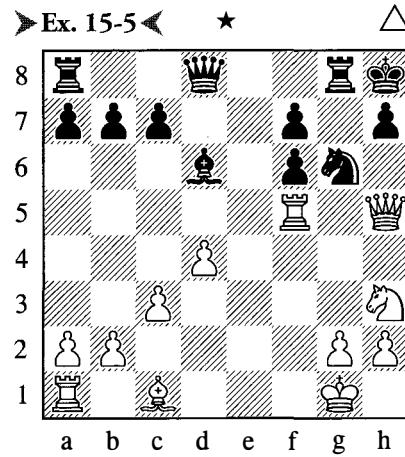
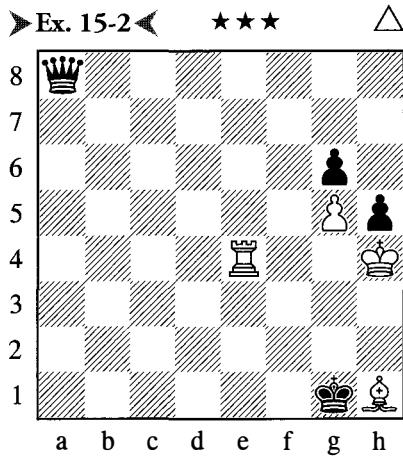
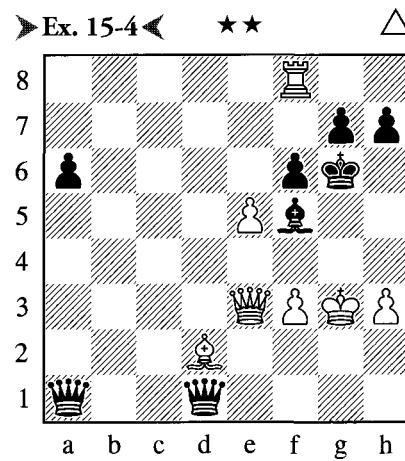
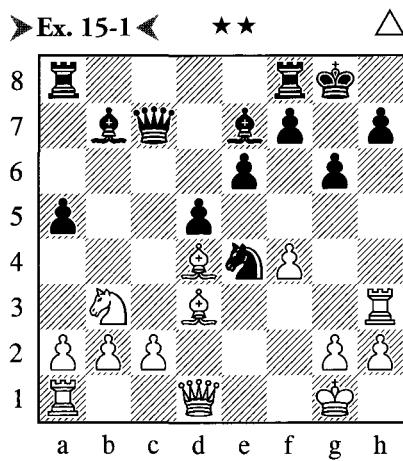


Diagram 15-8



# Exercises

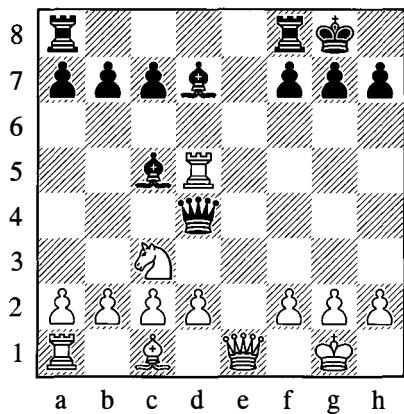


# Exercises

► Ex. 15-7 ◀

★

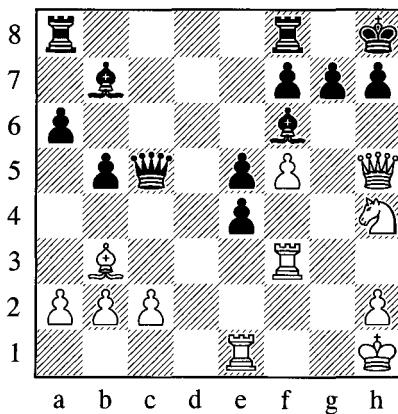
▼



► Ex. 15-10 ◀

★★

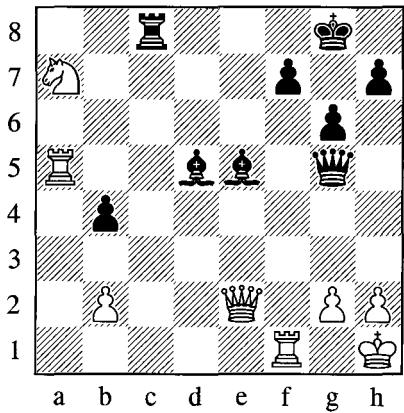
△



► Ex. 15-8 ◀

★★★

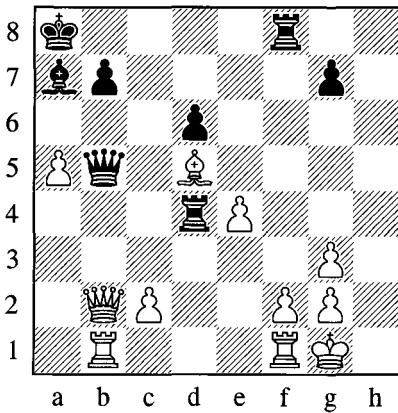
▼



► Ex. 15-11 ◀

★★★

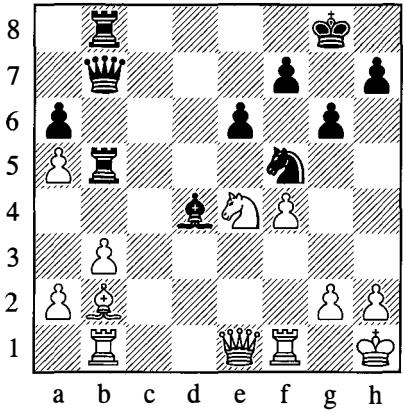
▼



► Ex. 15-9 ◀

★

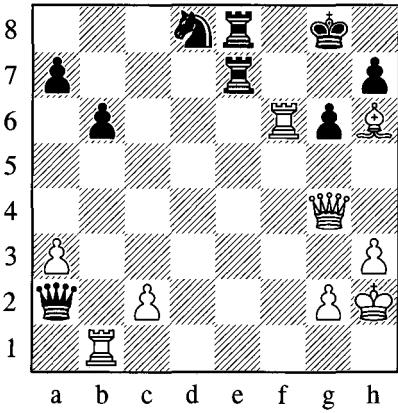
▼



► Ex. 15-12 ◀

★★

△



# Solutions

## Ex. 15-1

Vilen – Strom

1933

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$   $dxe4$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h5!$

(1 point)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}h4!!$

2...  $gxh5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g3!+-$

(another 1 point for this variation)

3.  $\mathbb{W}xh7!!$

This is even stronger than 3.  $\mathbb{W}xh4 f5!+-$ .

3...  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xh4! \mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$

## Ex. 15-2

The end of a study by

N.Kralin & A.G.Kuznetsov

1966

1.  $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$

(1 point)

But not 1.  $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$ ??  $\mathbb{Q}xh1!+-$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}h2!$

Black is playing for stalemate.

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e4!$

(1 point)

Threatening  $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$ . White naturally avoids

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xa8?$  stalemate.

2...  $\mathbb{Q}a1!$

2...  $\mathbb{W}xe4\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4!+-$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}b1!+-$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 15-3

P.Richardson – E.Delmar

New York 1887

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ !

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{W}f8\#$

But not 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  on account of

3.  $\mathbb{Q}c5!+-$ .

2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6$   $\mathbb{W}d8$  is not clear.

2...  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 15-4

Novozhenin – Panfilov

USSR 1975

1.  $\mathbb{W}h6\#$   $gxh6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  is met by 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6\#$ .

(1 point)

3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 15-5

A.Santasiere – E.Adams

USA 1926

A typical combination.

1.  $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 15-6

O.Duras – A.Olland

Karlsbad 1907

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$  also wins, but it is better to look for a forcing continuation.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}xh5\#$   $gxh5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 15-7

Danielsson – Blomberg

Sweden 1967

1...  $\mathbb{Q}fe8!$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}ae8!+-$  works the same way.

2.  $\mathbb{W}f1$

2.  $\mathbb{W}xe8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$

There now follows a typical back-rank mating combination.

2...  $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf2$   $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$

(1 point)

# Solutions

## Ex. 15-8

B.Larsen – L.Ljubojevic

Milan 1975

1... $\mathbb{W}h4!$

(1 point)

Black also has another, somewhat more complicated, win at his disposal: 1... $\mathbb{E}c2!$  (also 1 point) 2. $\mathbb{W}xc2$   $\mathbb{W}h4$  3. $\mathbb{W}c8\#$  (the variation 3.h3  $\mathbb{W}xh3\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$  5. $\mathbb{E}f2$   $\mathbb{W}xg2\#$  earns another 1 point) 3... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.h3  $\mathbb{W}g3$  (another 1 point) 5. $\mathbb{E}xf7\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f7$  7. $\mathbb{W}d8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  8. $\mathbb{W}e7\#$  9. $\mathbb{W}f8\#$  10.h5–+

2. $\mathbb{W}xe5$

2.h3  $\mathbb{W}xh3\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$  4. $\mathbb{E}f2$   $\mathbb{W}xg2\#$

(another 1 point for this variation)

2... $\mathbb{W}f2$

(another 1 point)

3. $\mathbb{E}xf2$  is met by 3... $\mathbb{E}c1\#$ .

If 3. $\mathbb{Q}g1$  then 3... $\mathbb{W}xg2\#$  is decisive: 4. $\mathbb{E}xg2$   $\mathbb{E}c1\#$ –

0–1

## Ex. 15-9

Gokhin – Bennet

1962

1... $\mathbb{W}xe4!$  2. $\mathbb{W}xe4$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{W}xe1$  3. $\mathbb{E}fxe1$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ –

2... $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$  3. $\mathbb{W}xg3$   $\mathbb{E}h5\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 15-10

K.Kaiszauri – A.Sznapik

Warsaw 1970

1. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ !  $\mathbb{W}xg6$

1... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  2. $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  3. $\mathbb{E}h3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$   
4. $\mathbb{E}h8\#$

(1 point for this variation)

2. $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  3. $\mathbb{E}h3\#$

1–0

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 15-11

N.N. – N.Rossolimo

Paris 1957

1... $\mathbb{E}d1!!$

(1 point)

2. $\mathbb{Q}xb7\#$

2. $\mathbb{W}xb5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{E}h8\#$

(another 1 point for this variation)

White also loses after either 2.c4  $\mathbb{E}xf2!$  or 2. $\mathbb{E}bx1$   $\mathbb{W}xb2$ .

2... $\mathbb{Q}b8$

(another 1 point)

3.c4?!

3. $\mathbb{E}bx1$  is more stubborn: 3... $\mathbb{W}xb2$  4. $\mathbb{Q}a6$   $\mathbb{Q}c5!$  5. $\mathbb{E}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$ –

3... $\mathbb{E}xf2!$

But not 3... $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$ ! 4. $\mathbb{W}xf2$   $\mathbb{E}xf2$  5. $\mathbb{E}fxd1\infty$ .

4. $\mathbb{W}xb5$

4. $\mathbb{W}xf2$   $\mathbb{W}xb1$ –

4... $\mathbb{E}f6\#$ ! 5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{E}h1\#$

## Ex. 15-12

Mueller – N.N.

1937

1. $\mathbb{E}bf1!$

(1 point)

1. $\mathbb{E}el!$  (also 1 point) is another route to victory: 1... $\mathbb{E}el$  2. $\mathbb{E}xg6\#$  (another 1 point)

2... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g8$  4... $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5. $\mathbb{W}d4$ –

1... $\mathbb{E}f7$

Other moves are no better:

a) 1... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  2. $\mathbb{E}xg6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ –

b) 1... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  2. $\mathbb{W}xe6\#$  3. $\mathbb{E}xe6$  3... $\mathbb{E}f8$ –

2. $\mathbb{W}d7!$

(another 1 point)

2. $\mathbb{W}d4$   $\mathbb{E}xf6$  3. $\mathbb{E}xf6$  (also 1 point) wins too.

2... $\mathbb{E}ef8$

2... $\mathbb{E}xd7$  3. $\mathbb{E}f8$ – or 2... $\mathbb{E}xf6$  3. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ .

3. $\mathbb{W}e7!$

But not 3. $\mathbb{Q}xf8??$   $\mathbb{E}xd7$ –.

1–0

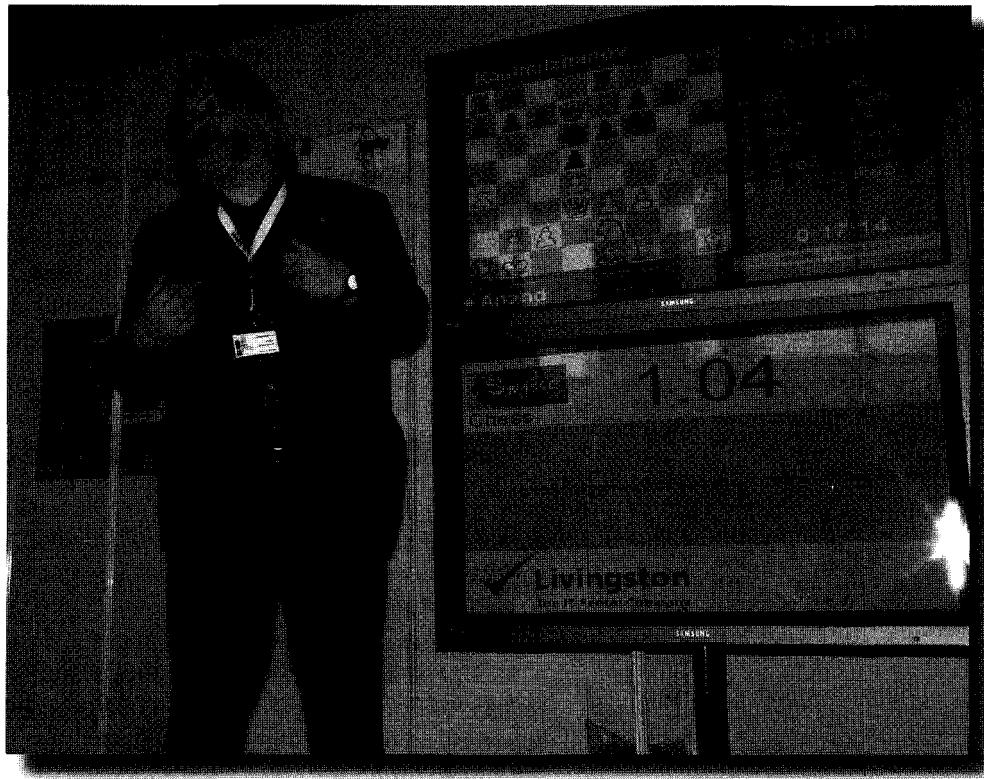
Black has no answer to the threat of  $\mathbb{W}xf8\#$ .

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **23**

- **20** points and above → **Excellent**
- **16** points and above → **Good**
- **12** points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **12** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*



Commentating on a game  
of “Fischer Random” chess, a variant  
which uses different starting positions for the  
pieces – note the bishop on h8!

# CHAPTER

## Contents

- ✓ Important fortresses
- ✓ Knight against rook's pawn
- ✓ Barriers
- ✓ Knight against knight's pawn
- ✓ Speeding things up with checks
- ✓ Defending your own pawn

Diagram 16-1

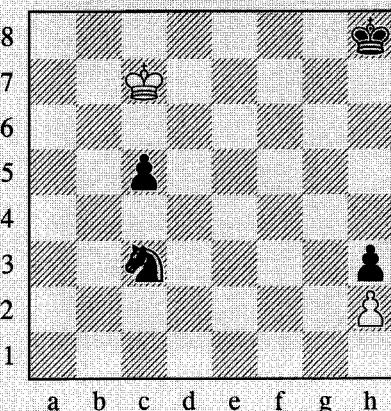
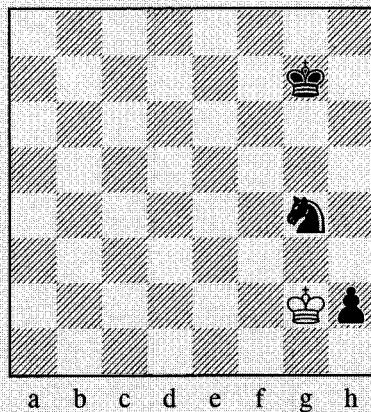


Diagram 16-2



# 16

## Knight against pawn

This subject is not completely new to us, as we have already covered some important theoretical positions. For example, in Chapter 23 of *Build Up Your Chess 1*, we looked at 'Smothered mate' with the king locked in the corner.

We also examined several very important drawing positions in Chapter 6 of *Boost Your Chess 1* – Fortress II, IV and VIII. It would be useful to revise that material before proceeding with this chapter.

Diagram 16-1

V.Chekhover

1952

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c6!$

Other moves lose an important tempo: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}d6?$   $\mathbb{Q}a4+$  or 1.  $\mathbb{Q}b6?$   $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e4$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  is followed by: 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}d1$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}g1=$  White has reached Fortress IV.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}a4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  also leads to a draw: 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xa4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}g2$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}xh2$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}f2=$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$

The knight cannot protect the pawn from in front! Black now tries winning the white h-pawn.

2...  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d5!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh2$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$

Or 5...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}f1$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$  h2 9.  $\mathbb{Q}g2=$

6.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$  h2 8.  $\mathbb{Q}g2=$

Diagram 16-2

White has reached Fortress II from Chapter 6 of *Boost Your Chess 1*.

### Knight against rook's pawn

The rook's pawn is the number one enemy of the knight!

**Diagram 16-3**

The end of a study by

**N. Grigoriev**

1932

The rook's pawn is a particularly uncomfortable opponent for the knight, because the knight can only stop it from one side. Nevertheless, a draw can be obtained if the knight can block the pawn in time, that is, before it reaches the 7th rank. In this position, White's aim is to control the h2-square from g4 or f1.

**1. ♟e5†!**

1. ♟d2†? is bad: 1... ♕e2! 2. ♟e4 h3 3. ♟g3† ♕f2 4. ♟h1† ♕g2 The knight is trapped in the corner, and the white king is too far away from the saving f2-square!

**1... ♕g3**

1... ♕f4 allows a knight fork: 2. ♟g6† ♕g3 3. ♟xh4=

**2. ♟c4!**

The knight wants to get to e3; then one goal (g4 or f1) will be achieved.

**2... h3**

2... ♕f3 3. ♟e5† repeats the position.

**3. ♟e3 ♕f3**

White captures the pawn after either 3...h2 4. ♟f1† or 3... ♕f2 4. ♟g4†.

**4. ♟f1 ♕f2 5. ♟h2 ♕g2 6. ♟g4 ♕g3 7. ♟e3**

Black cannot force the knight away.

**7... h2 8. ♟f1†=**

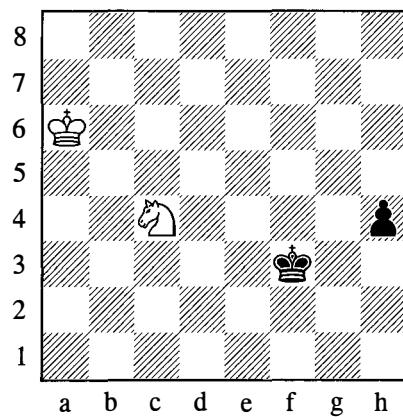
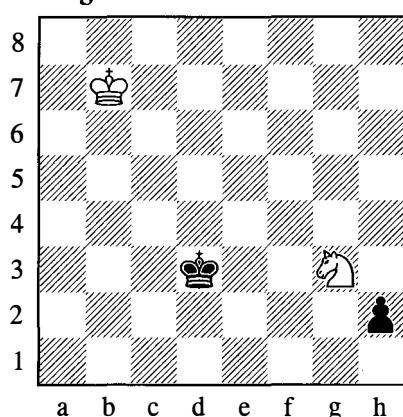
Sometimes, a **barrier** saves the game!

**Diagram 16-4****M. Dvoretsky**

The knight is controlling the e2- and e4-squares; either ♕e3 or ♕d2 will be followed by the knight fork on f1. The black king must make a detour, but this costs it a lot of time, and the white king manages to reach f2 and shut the opposing king in the corner!

**1... ♕d4**

Or 1... ♕c2 2. ♕c6 ♕d1 3. ♕d5 ♕e1 4. ♕e4 ♕f2 5. ♕f4=.

**2. ♕c6 ♕e5 3. ♕c5****Diagram 16-3****Diagram 16-4**

3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$  comes to the same thing: 3...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}g2$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}xh1$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f2=$   
 3...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}g2$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}xh1$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f2=$

### Knight against knight's pawn

The knight's pawn is close to the edge of the board and therefore also somewhat awkward. To get a draw the knight must be able to control the queening square from the correct square.

Diagram 16-5

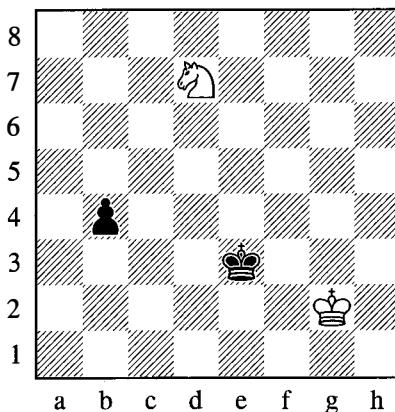


Diagram 16-6

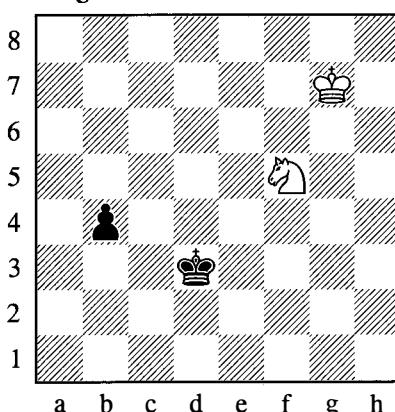


Diagram 16-5

I.Rabinovich

1...  $b3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}b6$

The threat of a fork is an important tactical option for the knight!

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e5?$  loses, in view of 2...  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c3$  and the knight can get no closer.

2...  $\mathbb{Q}d3$

2...  $b2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}a4$

In this situation White manages to draw, even without the participation of his king.

3...  $\mathbb{Q}c4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}a4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}a3$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d3=$

Diagram 16-6

Y.Averbakh

1956

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d6!$

The knight is heading for a3.

1...  $b3$

If Black approaches the knight, it can change direction and head for the b2-square: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $b3$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}b2\#$  (6.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$  is also good enough) 6...  $\mathbb{Q}c3$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}a4\#$  (7.  $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d2$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c3$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  is also a draw) 7...  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}b2=$  White draws as in the previous example.

2.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $b2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}a3$

The knight is now controlling the queening square.

3...  $\mathbb{Q}c3$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}a3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b3$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}b1=$

There is nothing Black can do.

## Knight against pawn

Such endings can usually only be won if the king can prevent the knight approaching the pawn; but in some rare cases the king can force the knight away from the pawn. Here is a nice winning idea.

### Diagram 16-7

The end of a study by

**Y.Averbakh & V.Chekhover**

Let's first examine the 'normal' moves:

- a) 1.b8 $\mathbb{W}$ ? obviously allows 1... $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$ =.
- b) 1. $\mathbb{Q}a8$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}c6$ = is also clear.
- c) 1. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ ? also leads to a draw: 1... $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$  2. $\mathbb{Q}c7$  (2. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}b8\#$ ) 2... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ ! 3.b8 $\mathbb{W}$   $\mathbb{Q}a6\#$ =

The white king must travel by a different route.

### 1. $\mathbb{Q}b8!!$

This blocks the passed pawn, but lets the king reach the correct squares! The threat is 2. $\mathbb{Q}c7$ .

### 1... $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$

1... $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$  2. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  loses to 3. $\mathbb{Q}b6!$   $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}b4\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$ .

### 2. $\mathbb{Q}c8!$

The point! The king could not reach this square in the variation with 1. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ .

But not 2. $\mathbb{Q}c7?$   $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$  as in line 'c' above.

### 2... $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d8$

White wins.

In the endgame with a knight against a central pawn, all that is required to draw is for the knight to control the queening square from the second rank.

**Speeding things up with checks** is an important motif.

### Diagram 16-8

**K.Hanneman**

1927

### 1. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$

Playing 1. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$  first is also good enough!

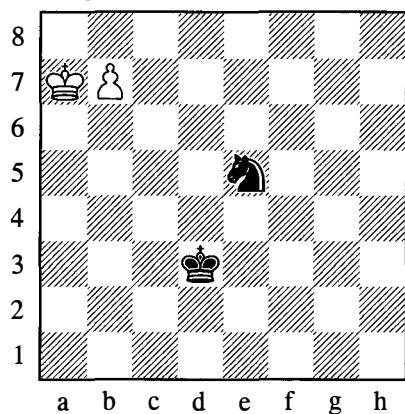
### 1...g3

How can the white knight stop the pawn?

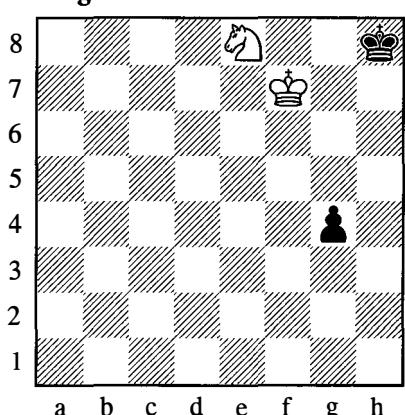
### 2. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$

Preparing to speed things up!

### Diagram 16-7



### Diagram 16-8



## Endgame 3

Diagram 16-9

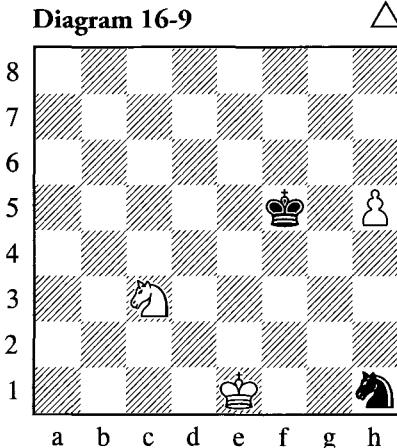


Diagram 16-10

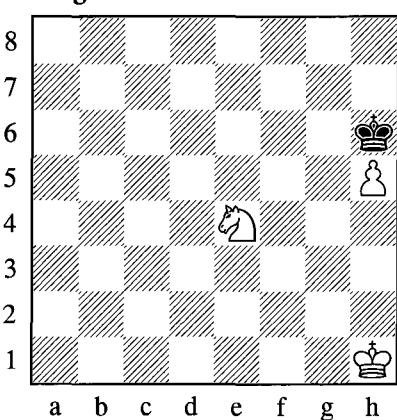
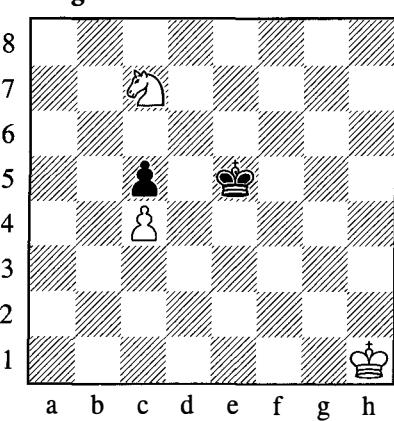


Diagram 16-11



2...g2

Or 2...h7 3.Qe4 g2 4.Qg5† Kg6 5.Qh3=.

3.Qf7†

The knight heads for h3 or f3 by giving checks, and succeeds in blockading the pawn.

3...h7 4.Qg5† Kg6 5.Qf3=

There is an important rule for positions in which the side with the knight still has pawns and needs to protect them – **the best way for the knight to defend a passed pawn is from behind.**

Diagram 16-9

A.Selesniev

1922

1.Qe4!

Preventing the black king approaching the h-pawn.

1...Qxe4 is simply followed by 2.h6 and the pawn runs through; the black king has left the square of the pawn, and the knight is too far away.

1...Qg3 2.Qxg3† Kg5 is also hopeless, since the pawn is defended.

1...Qe6 2.Qf1 Qf7 3.Qg1

The black knight has been trapped.

3...Qg7 4.Qxh1 Qh6

Diagram 16-10

5.Qg3!+-

But not 5.Qf6?? Kg5=.

Here is another important example, which shows how to protect your pawns in a different situation.

Diagram 16-11

M.Dvoretsky

2000

1.Qd5

Or 1.Qb5 Qe4 2.Qg2 Qd3 3.Qd6 and the knight protects its pawn.

1...Qd4 2.Qb6

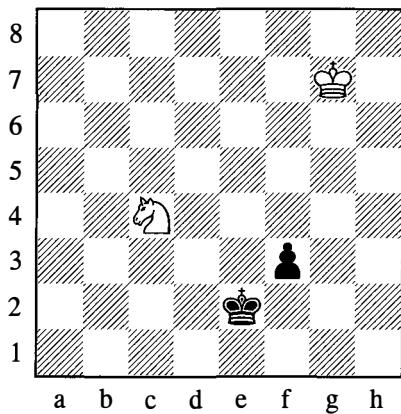
The knight can safely protect the pawn from the front, since the black pawn is blocking the c5-square; the black king must take a detour in order to attack the knight.

2...Qc3 3.Qg2 Qb4 4.Qf3 Qa5 5.Qd5+-

# Exercises

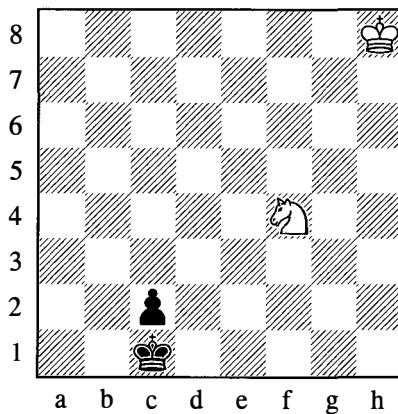
► Ex. 16-1 ◀

★★



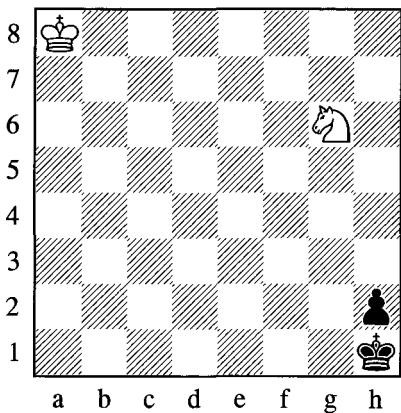
► Ex. 16-4 ◀

★



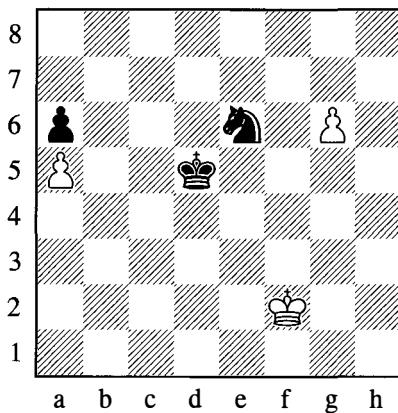
► Ex. 16-2 ◀

★



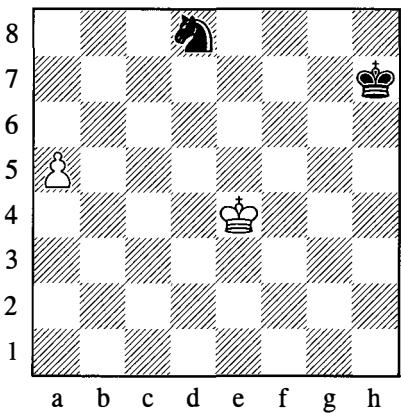
► Ex. 16-5 ◀

★★



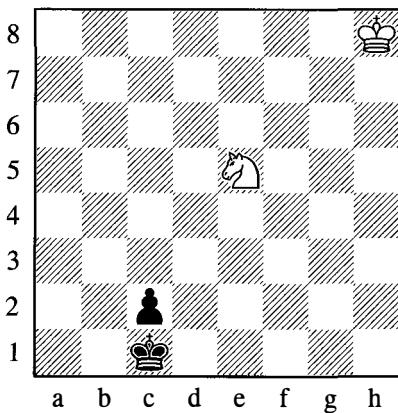
► Ex. 16-3 ◀

★

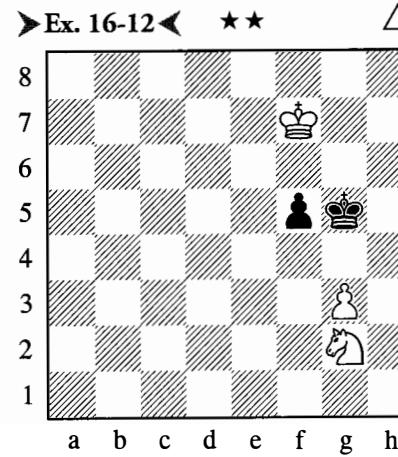
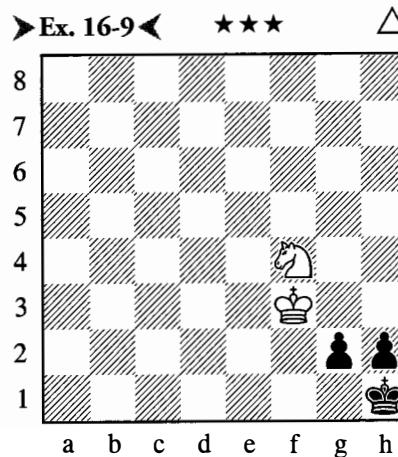
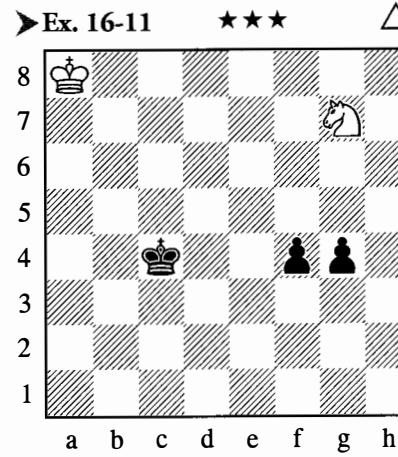
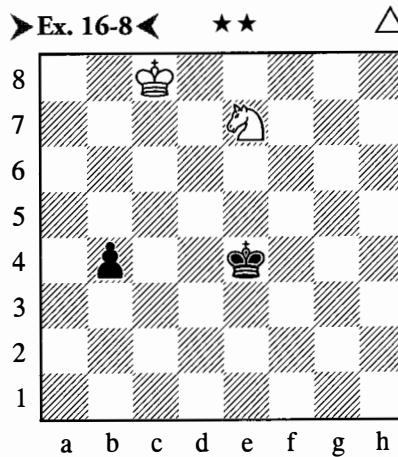
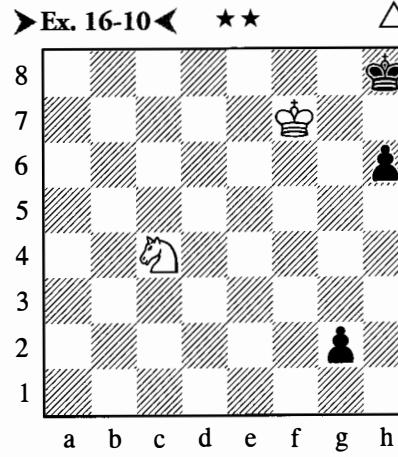
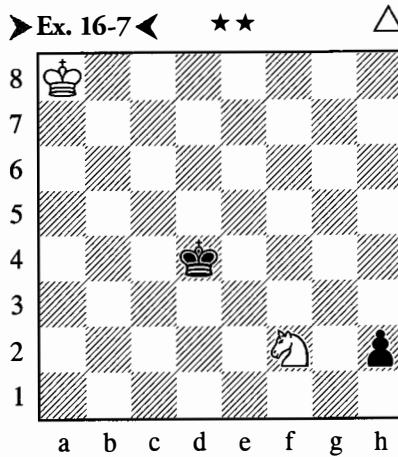


► Ex. 16-6 ◀

★



# Exercises



# Solutions

## Ex. 16-1

The end of a study by

J.Moller & J.Giersing

1895

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d6!!$

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{f}2$

Black makes no progress with: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   
2.  $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$ ! (2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}f4-$ ) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}e2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d6!=$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e4!$

(another 1 point)

But not 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5?$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$   
 $\mathbb{Q}g4-$ .

2...  $f1\mathbb{Q}$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ =

## Ex. 16-2

The end of a study by

J.Keemink

1928

1.  $\mathbb{Q}h4!$

(1 point)

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f4?$   $\mathbb{Q}g1-$  or 1.  $\mathbb{Q}e5?$   $\mathbb{Q}g2-$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}g1$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ =

## Ex. 16-3

E.Freeborough

1891

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d5!$

(1 point)

This limits the knight in its struggle against the a-pawn.

1.  $a6?$  is wrong: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}a7=$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  2.  $a6$   $\mathbb{Q}a5$  3.  $a7-$

## Ex. 16-4

A.Chéron

1924

1.  $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$ !

(1 point)

As we know, the knight should aim for the second rank!

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$ ? is bad: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}d2$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}c3!$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c4-$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}d2$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}d1$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}a2=$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}d4!$   $c1\mathbb{Q}$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$ =

## Ex. 16-5

J.Polgar – A.Yusupov

Dortmund 1997

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e4!$

(1 point)

Black blocks off the way to the g-pawn with a 'bodycheck'.

If 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e5?$  then White can draw: 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  (or 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  3.  $g7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}c5=$ )

3.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c6=$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$ +

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$

$\mathbb{Q}e5-$ +

2...  $\mathbb{Q}f4!$

(another 1 point)

3.  $g7$  is met by 3...  $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$ -.

0-1

## Ex. 16-6

A.Chéron

1924

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c4!$

(1 point)

Other moves lose: 1.  $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}d2-$  or 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d1-$  or 1.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b1-$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}d1$

Or 1...  $\mathbb{Q}b1$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}a3\#$ =.

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$ =

# Solutions

## Ex. 16-7

The end of a study by

A.Chéron

1926

1.  $\mathbb{Q}b7$

(1 point)

1.  $\mathbb{Q}a7=$  (also 1 point) comes to the same thing.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}c3$

The knight creates a barrier to the black king:

a) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e5(e3)$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$

b) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$

$\mathbb{Q}f4$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}g2$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}xh1$

8.  $\mathbb{Q}f1=$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}d2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$

Or 3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1=$ .

3...  $\mathbb{Q}e2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}g2$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}xh1$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f2=$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 16-8

The end of a study by

N.Grigoriev

1932

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c6!$

(1 point)

1...  $b3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}a5!$

You also get another 1 point if you chose the alternative route for the knight: 2.  $\mathbb{Q}a7!$   $b2$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}b5=$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}b4?$  is wrong: 2...  $b2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}a2$   $\mathbb{Q}d4+$

2...  $b2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $b1\mathbb{Q}$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 16-9

The end of a study by

M.Liburkin

1932

1.  $\mathbb{Q}h3!$

(1 point)

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d3?$   $\mathbb{Q}g1-$

1...  $g1\mathbb{Q}$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf2=$

(another 1 point for this variation)

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f1=$

(another 1 point)

White has reached Fortress VIII from Chapter 6 of *Boost Your Chess 1*.

## Ex. 16-10

The end of a study by

C.De Feijter

1933

1.  $\mathbb{Q}e5!$

(1 point)

1...  $g1\mathbb{Q}$

1...  $h5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $h4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f6$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$

5.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f4=$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}xg6\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6=$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 16-11

The end of a study by

V.Chekhover

1955

White must try to win a pawn quickly.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}h5!$

(1 point)

1...  $f3$

1...  $g3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf4=$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}d3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h5=$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6!$   $g3$

Or 2...  $f2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$   $f1\mathbb{Q}$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$

(another 1 point for this variation)

3.  $\mathbb{Q}e4!$   $g2$

3...  $f2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg3=$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}e2$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$

(another 1 point)

6...  $\mathbb{Q}f2$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$

# Solutions

## Ex. 16-12

The end of a study by

**J.Kling & B.Horwitz**

1852

**1. ♦f4!**

(1 point)

But not 1. ♦e3? f4= nor 1. ♦e6? ♦g4=.

**1... ♦g4 2. ♦e2! ♦f3**

2...f4 3.gxf4+-

**3. ♦f6 ♦xe2 4. ♦xf5+-**

(another 1 point)

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **22**

- **19** points and above ..... → **Excellent**
- **15** points and above ..... → **Good**
- **11** points ..... → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **11** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Coordination of the pieces
- ✓ Examples of cooperation between rook and knight

Diagram 17-1

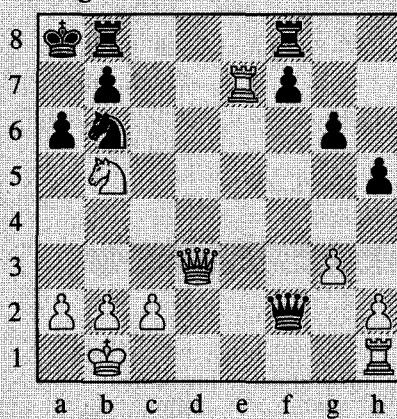
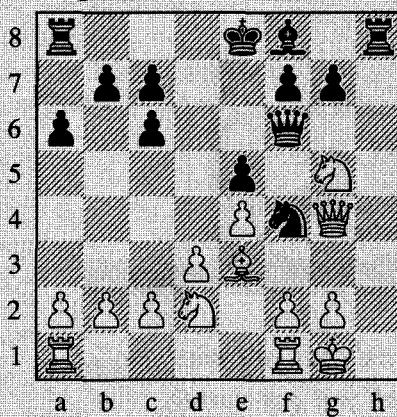


Diagram 17-2



## Attacking with rook and knight

In practice it is not always easy to coordinate the rook with the knight. Unlike the bishop, the knight must first be brought close to the opposing pieces. But when a knight is in a protected, attacking position, it can be very dangerous and can give good support to the rook. We saw examples of the cooperation between these pieces, such as Anastasia's mate and the Arabian mate, in the lesson on 'Mating motifs' (*Build Up Your Chess 1*, Chapter 1). Here are some more mating patterns.

Diagram 17-1

Munk – N.N.

Kassel 1914

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$ 

Now comes an elegant combination.

2.  $\mathbb{W}xa6\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}a8\#$ 

Diagram 17-2

H.Böhm – R.Hernandez Onna

Amsterdam 1979

1...  $\mathbb{W}xg5!$ 

White is losing in all lines:

- a) 2.  $\mathbb{W}xg5?$   $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$
- b) 2.  $\mathbb{W}f3?$   $\mathbb{W}xg2\#$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$
- c) 2. f3 is most stubborn: 2...  $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$  3.  $g\text{x}h3$   $\mathbb{W}xe3\#$

4.  $\mathbb{E}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  5.  $\mathbb{E}af1$   $\mathbb{W}xd2\#$

0–1

The rook and knight tandem becomes even more dangerous if it is receiving direct or indirect support from other pieces or pawns. We saw a beautiful illustration of this in Ex. 22-7 from *Boost Your Chess 1*. Here are some more examples.

Diagram 17-3

Demetrescu – Adam

Correspondence game 1934

1... $\mathbb{W}e5!$

This deflecting sacrifice decides the game.

2. $\mathbb{W}xe5$

Or 2. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}xd4\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$ –.

2. $\mathbb{B}d1$  loses simply to 2... $\mathbb{W}xg3$ .

2... $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{B}xc1\#$

The b4-pawn is providing indirect support to the rook and knight.

Diagram 17-3

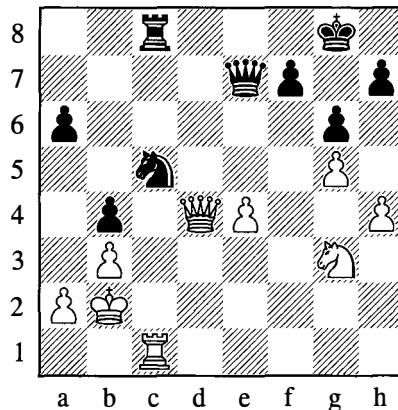


Diagram 17-4

P.List – Mannheimer

1930

1. $\mathbb{Q}xf4!$

This prepares a decisive strike. White could also play 1. $\mathbb{B}h1\#$ – first.

1... $\mathbb{W}xd4$

Or 1... $\mathbb{W}xf4$  2. $\mathbb{B}h1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. $\mathbb{W}xd8\#$ –.

2. $\mathbb{B}h1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g6!$

There is no defence against  $\mathbb{B}h8\#$ . It is of course crucial that the b3-bishop is pinning the f7-pawn.

1-0

An attack by these two pieces can often lead to a gain of material by a knight fork, a discovered attack or a double attack by the rook.

Diagram 17-4

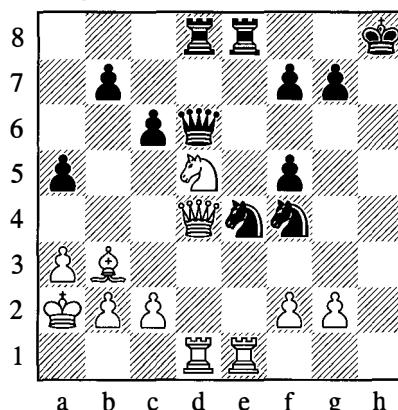


Diagram 17-5

A.Tyroler – G.Alexandrescu

Bucharest 1951

1. $\mathbb{Q}d8!!$

The unfortunate position of the black rook on c5 plays the most important role. Black cannot fend off the simple mating threat without incurring damage.

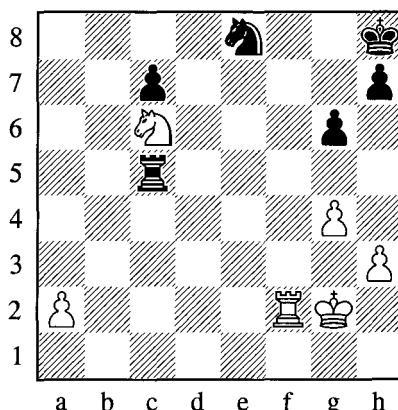
1... $\mathbb{Q}g8$

1... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ –

1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$  2. $\mathbb{B}f8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ –

1... $\mathbb{B}e5$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ –

Diagram 17-5



1... $\mathbb{E}d5$  2. $\mathbb{E}f8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$  (or 3. $\mathbb{E}xe8\#$ ) 3... $\mathbb{Q}h6$   
4. $g5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$ +-

**2. $\mathbb{Q}e6!$**

With a double attack on the c5-rook and the f8-square (the mate threat!).

**1-0**

Diagram 17-6

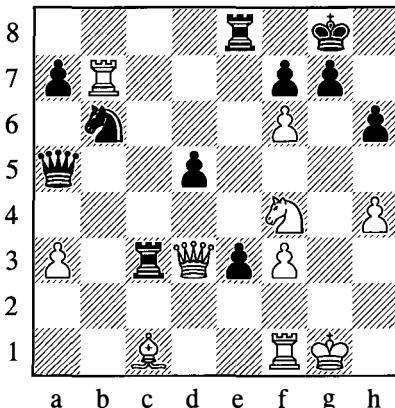


Diagram 17-7

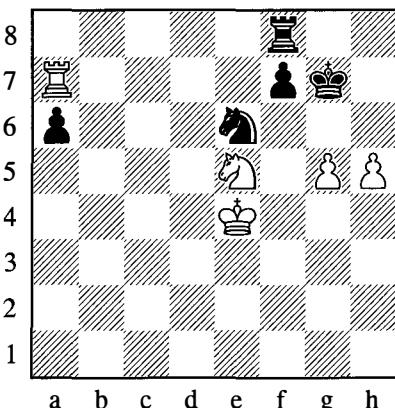


Diagram 17-6

**D.Bronstein – E.Geller**

USSR Ch, Moscow 1961

**1. $\mathbb{W}g6!$**

The most elegant solution. Black has no defence against mate: 1...fxg6 2. $\mathbb{E}xg7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  (or 2... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xg6\#$ ) 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg6\#$  The f6-pawn gives the white pieces the necessary support.

**1-0**

In the endgame the king can decisively strengthen the attack, as we saw previously in the lesson on 'Coordination of the pieces' (*Boost Your Chess 1*, Chapter 22).

Diagram 17-7

**V.Smyslov – J.Penrose**

Amsterdam Olympiad 1954

Now comes an energetic pawn attack.

**1. $h6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  2. $g6$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$**

If 2...fxg6 then 3. $h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xg6\#$ .

2... $\mathbb{Q}c5\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f5$  fxg6# 4. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  also leads to a quick mate.

**3. $\mathbb{Q}d7!$**

The knight is heading for f6.

**3... $\mathbb{E}e8\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d5$**

Black cannot parry the threat of  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$  without serious damage: 4... $\mathbb{E}e6$  5. $\mathbb{E}a8$  (or 5. $h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6. $gxf7\#$ ) 5... $\mathbb{E}xg6$  6. $\mathbb{E}xd8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$ +-

**1-0**

Diagram 17-8

M. Platov

1903

Black cannot avoid the loss of his queen here, because the white pieces are too well coordinated!

**1.  $\mathbb{E}f1\#! \mathbb{Q}e5$**

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\#+-$

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!!$**

The point of the study. White threatens 3.  $\mathbb{E}f5\#$ ,  $\mathbb{Q}e6$ , 4.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\#+-$ , and surprisingly the black queen is unable to find a safe square.

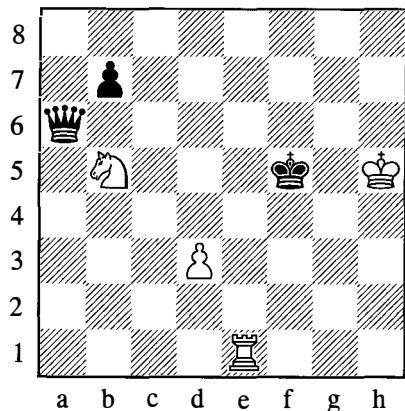
**2...  $\mathbb{Q}a2$**

All other moves also lose:

- a) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  3.  $\mathbb{E}f5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d4\#+-$
- b) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.  $\mathbb{E}f5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d4\#+-$
- c) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}b6$  3.  $\mathbb{E}f5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4.  $\mathbb{E}f6\#+-$
- d) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}a8$  3.  $\mathbb{E}f5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\#+-$
- e) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}a4$  3.  $\mathbb{E}e1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c3\#+-$

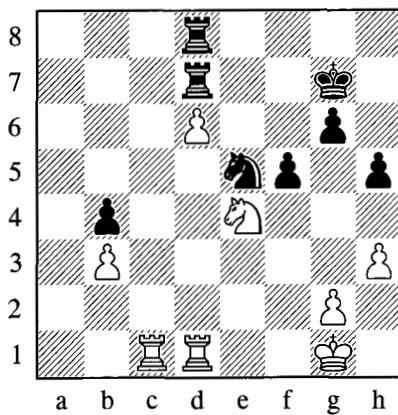
**3.  $\mathbb{E}e1\#! \mathbb{Q}d5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c3\#+-$**

Diagram 17-8

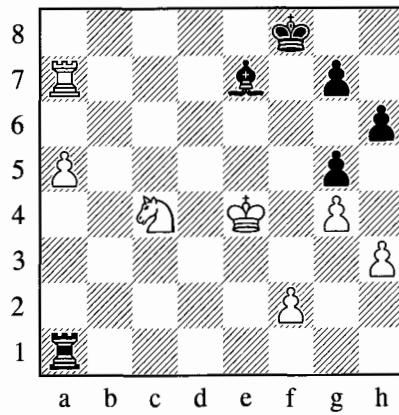


# Exercises

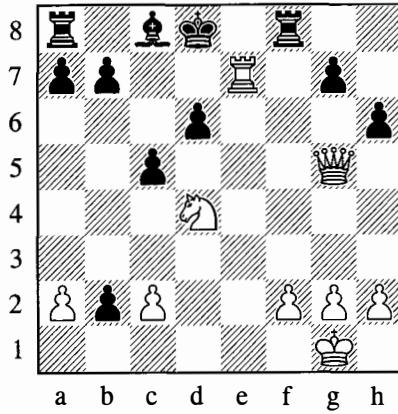
► Ex. 17-1 ◀ ★ △



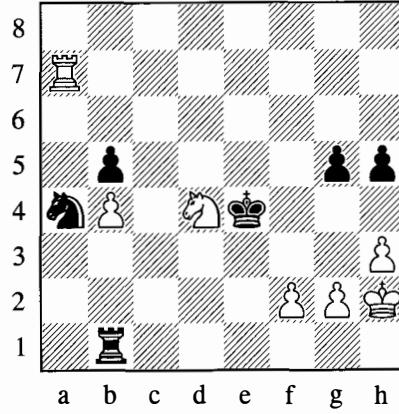
► Ex. 17-4 ◀ ★ △



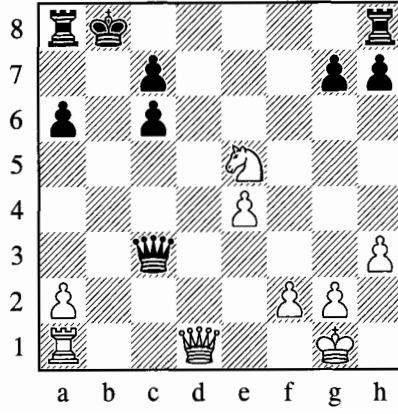
► Ex. 17-2 ◀ ★ △



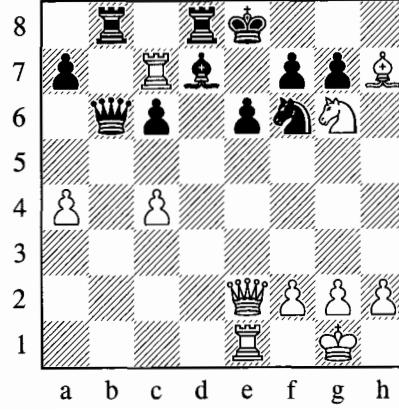
► Ex. 17-5 ◀ ★ △



► Ex. 17-3 ◀ ★ △

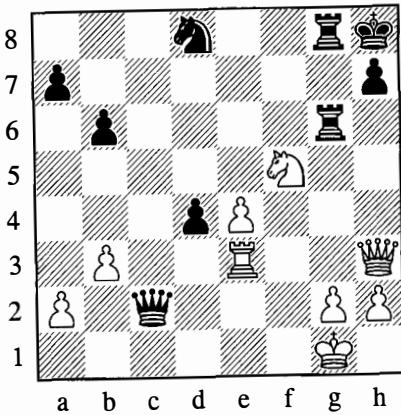


► Ex. 17-6 ◀ ★ △

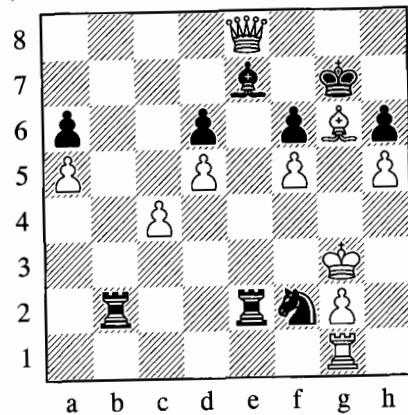


## Exercises

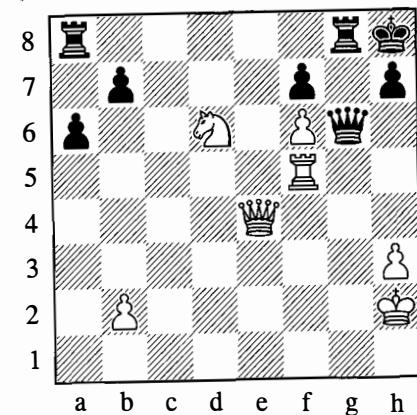
➤ Ex. 17-7 <



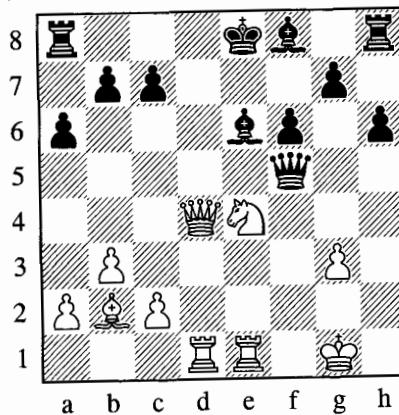
➤ Ex. 17-8 ◀



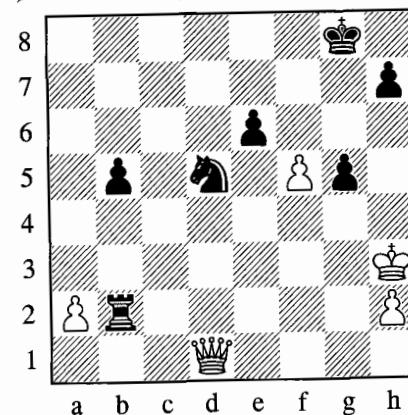
➤ Ex. 17-9 ◀



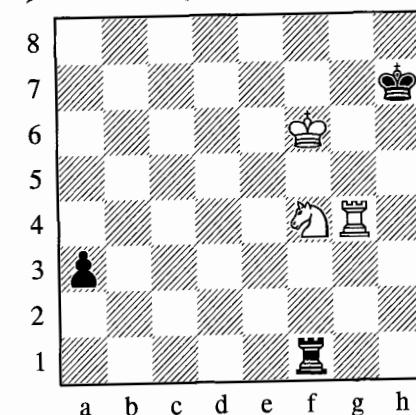
➤ Ex. 17-10 ◀



► Ex. 17-11



➤ Ex. 17-12



# Solutions

## Ex. 17-1

Variation from the game

**A.Yusupov – J.Gallagher**

Switzerland 2005

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c5!$   $\mathbb{B}xd6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$ !  $\mathbb{B}xe6$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xd8\pm$

(1 point)

## Ex. 17-2

**E.Sokolov – V.Rushnikov**

Correspondence game 1965

1.  $\mathbb{B}xb7\#$ !  $hxg5$

1...  $\mathbb{B}f6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{B}e7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{B}e7\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 17-3

**H.Mecking – A.Rocha**

Mar del Plata 1969

1.  $\mathbb{B}b1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  2.  $\mathbb{W}d7\#$

2.  $\mathbb{W}d4\#$ !  $\mathbb{W}xd4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 17-4

**V.Bologan – A.Yusupov**

Cannes 2005

1.  $\mathbb{B}a8\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  3.  $\mathbb{B}a6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$

(1 point)

The pawn ending after 4...  $\mathbb{B}d1$  5.  $\mathbb{B}xd6\#$   $\mathbb{B}xd6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  is a trivial win.

1-0

## Ex. 17-5

**A.Yusupov – M.Mrdja**

Bastia 2004

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5!$

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{B}xb4$  is met by 2.  $\mathbb{B}xa4!+-$ .

1-0

## Ex. 17-6

**Horvath – M.Udovcic**

Zagreb 1948

1.  $\mathbb{W}xe6\#$ !

(1 point)

Black is quickly mated: 1...  $\mathbb{fxe6}$  (1...  $\mathbb{B}xe6$  2.  $\mathbb{B}e7\#$ ) 2.  $\mathbb{B}xe6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{B}e7\#$

1-0

## Ex. 17-7

**K.Mueller – Kuehne**

Ziesar 1912

1.  $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  2.  $\mathbb{B}h3\#$   $\mathbb{B}h6$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xh6\#$

(1 point)

## Ex. 17-8

**Brannath – Riedel**

Karlsruhe 1934

1...  $\mathbb{B}b3\#$ ! 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{B}e4\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{B}e4\#$  3.  $g4$   $\mathbb{B}h3\#$

(1 point for this variation)

2...  $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{B}h3\#$ ! 4.  $gxh3$   $\mathbb{B}h2\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 17-9

**M.Suta – Sutey**

Bucharest 1953

1.  $\mathbb{B}g5!$

(1 point)

A deflecting sacrifice.

1...  $\mathbb{W}xf6$

1...  $\mathbb{W}xe4?$  and 1...  $\mathbb{W}xg5?$  both allow

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$ .

2.  $\mathbb{W}d4!$

(another 1 point)

But not 2.  $\mathbb{W}e5??$  when 2...  $\mathbb{W}xe5\#$  comes with check.

2.  $\mathbb{W}g6$

If 2...  $\mathbb{B}xg5$  then 3.  $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$   $\mathbb{B}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ .

# Solutions

3.  $\mathbb{B}xg6!$

(another 1 point)

3...  $\mathbb{W}xd4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$

## Ex. 17-10

Based on the game

**W.Pollock – N.N.**

Buffalo 1893

1.  $\mathbb{W}d7\#!!$

(1 point)

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$  (1 consolation point) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$   
2.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  also wins, but the text leads to a forced mate.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$

But not 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#?$   $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ .

2...  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  4.  $\mathbb{B}e8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 17-11

**J.Bellon Lopez – S.Garcia**

Cienfuegos 1976

1...  $\mathbb{B}g2!$

(2 points)

White has no good defence to the threat of

...  $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$ :

a) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  loses to 2...  $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$ .

b) 2.  $\mathbb{W}f1$  is followed by 2...  $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf4$   $gxf4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $e5\#$ .

**0-1**

## Ex. 17-12

**G.Rotlewi – H.Fahrni**

Karlsbad 1911

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f7!$

(1 point)

Threatening mate on the h-file.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$

After 1...  $\mathbb{Q}h1$  White has a choice of ways to win:

a) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$

b) 2.  $\mathbb{B}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{Q}g8!$   
and the threat of  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$  is decisive.

(another 1 point for either of these variations)

2.  $\mathbb{Q}g8!$

(another 1 point)

The threat of  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$  is winning.

**1-0**

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is 19

- 17 points and above ..... **Excellent**
- 14 points and above ..... **Good**
- 10 points ..... **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than 10 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ The role of the centre
- ✓ Typical plans in the Closed Sicilian

## 18

## Semi-open games

In this chapter we shall examine the Closed Variation of the Sicilian Defence. Play in this variation develops relatively slowly. White generally tries to take action on the kingside, and he must often be prepared to throw his pawns forward. Black, on the other hand, looks to obtain counter-chances on the queenside. Of course, the relatively closed nature of the play does not mean that the centre should be ignored. On the contrary, **it is only good control of the centre which allows us to attack.**

The main focus of this variation is not on specific moves, but on the various typical plans. For that reason, it is very important to find games with good annotations, and to study them well. In this chapter we shall stick to games played by Vasily Smyslov.

A standard plan for Black is to fianchetto his king's bishop. This may be combined with the moves ...d6, ...e6 (or sometimes ...e5) and ... $\mathbb{Q}ge7$ . This is quite a safe set-up, and Black may later stop the advance of the white kingside pawns with ...f5.

A second, more ambitious alternative is ...d6 and  $\mathbb{Q}f6$ , after which Black tries to act quickly on the queenside.

We shall now look at two typical games.

V.Smyslov – A.Kotov

Moscow 1943

**1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$**

This move does not automatically mean that White wants to play the Closed Variation. For example, after 2...e6 he can continue with 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  followed by 4.d4, transposing into other variations. Black should always bear that possibility in mind.

**2... $\mathbb{Q}c6$**

Here is an example of a set-up including ...d5 from the Fischer – Spassky rematch: 2...e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}ge2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  4.g3 (4.d4 takes the game in a different direction) 4...d5 5.exd5 exd5 6.d3  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  d4 9. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  11. $\mathbb{Q}f4$  0–0 12.0–0  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  13. $\mathbb{Q}h5!$  g6 14. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  15. $\mathbb{Q}fe1$   $\mathbb{Q}g7=$  Fischer – Spassky, St Stefan/Belgrade (23) 1992.

**3.g3**

It is only with the fianchetto of the king's bishop that we enter the Closed Variation. An earlier game from the aforementioned match went: 3.♗ge2 e6 4.g3 d5 5.exd5 exd5 6.♗g2 d4 7.♗d5 ♗f6 8.♗ef4 ♗xd5 9.♗xd5 ♗d6 10.0-0 0-0 11.d3 ♗e6 12.♗f4 ♗f5 13.h3! ♗b8 14.♗d2 ♗e8 15.♗e1 ♗xe1† 16.♗xe1= ♗d7?! 17.g4! ♗e8 18.♗d1 ♗xf4 19.♗xf4 ♗e6 20.♗f3± Fischer – Spassky, St Stefan/Belgrade (17) 1992.

**3...g6 4.♗g2 ♗g7 5.d3 d6 6.♗f3?!**

**Diagram 18-1**

Another plan of development for White is 6.♗ge2 followed by 0-0, ♗e3 and ♗d2.

White may also play 6.f4 followed by ♗f3 and 0-0, which is featured in the following game.

6.♗e3 is also popular, and we shall see examples of it in the exercises at the end of the chapter.

**6...e6 7.♗g5**

An important idea. White aims to play ♗d2 and ♗h6 to exchange the fianchettoed bishop. Then White will have a freer hand on the kingside. This plan is very sound, since the opponent's dark-squared bishop is also attacking our queenside.

**7...♗ge7 8.♗d2 h6**

Black does not want to allow the exchange of bishops, but after this he will be unable to castle.

8...0-0 9.♗h6 e5 is a standard reaction; with the bishops coming off, Black places his pawns on the dark squares.

**9.♗e3 e5**

Black prepares to develop his light-squared bishop.

9...♗d4?! is a playable alternative.

On the other hand, 9...♗b8?! is a typical mistake:

**Diagram 18-2**

10.d4! cxd4 11.♗xd4± The d6-pawn is a decided weakness.

**10.0-0 ♗e6 11.♗e1**

White prepares f2-f4. Losing a couple of tempi to do so is not a tragedy; the position is closed and Black has also lost some time (with ...e6-e5).

**11...♗d7 12.a3**

This move is aimed against the possibility of queenside castling.

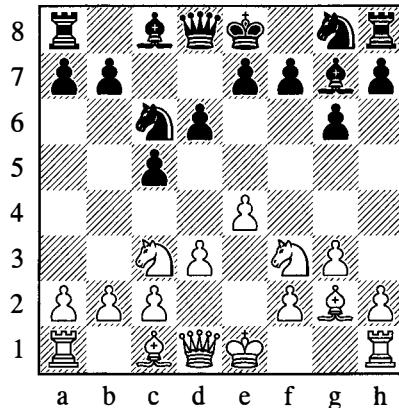
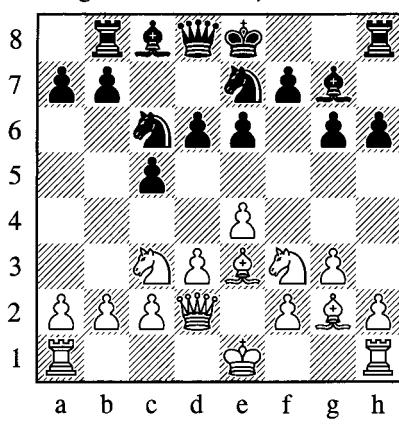
**12...♗h3 13.f4 ♗d4 14.♗b1****Diagram 18-1****Diagram 18-2 (analysis)**



Diagram 18-6

27.  $\mathbb{E}g6$ 

In this position 27.  $\mathbb{E}xh6!$  would be very strong:  
 27.  $\mathbb{E}xh6$  28.  $\mathbb{E}g6$   $\mathbb{W}g7$  29.  $\mathbb{E}xg7\#$  30.  $\mathbb{E}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$   
 31.  $\mathbb{E}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  32.  $\mathbb{E}h4$   $\mathbb{E}d7$  33.  $\mathbb{W}g4\#$

27...  $\mathbb{E}f7\#!$ 27...  $\mathbb{E}h8!$  followed by ...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  is more resilient.28.  $\mathbb{E}bg1$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 

Black's king wants to flee the danger.

29.  $\mathbb{E}xh6\#?$ 

29.  $\mathbb{E}xh6$  is also strong, with the idea 29...  $\mathbb{Q}f8?$   
 30.  $\mathbb{E}xg7\#$

29...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  30.  $\mathbb{E}h7$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 

Diagram 18-7

31.  $\mathbb{W}h5!$ 

An important move, increasing the pressure on the black position.

31...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 

31...  $\mathbb{E}c8$  is met by 32.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!$   $\mathbb{f}xg5$  33.  $\mathbb{E}xg5\#$  and White has a winning attack:

a) 33...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  34.  $\mathbb{E}xf6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  (or 34...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  34.  $\mathbb{E}gxg7\#$ ) 35.  $\mathbb{W}h4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  36.  $\mathbb{E}g6!$  and Black is caught in a mating net.

b) 33...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  34.  $\mathbb{E}f4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  (34...  $\mathbb{Q}e5$  35.  $\mathbb{W}g6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  36.  $\mathbb{E}xf6\#$ ) 35.  $\mathbb{f}6\#$  (35.  $\mathbb{E}gxg7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  36.  $\mathbb{f}6\#$  also wins) 35...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  36.  $\mathbb{E}gxg7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  37.  $\mathbb{E}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  38.  $\mathbb{E}xd7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  39.  $\mathbb{E}xb7\#$

32.  $\mathbb{E}f4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  33.  $\mathbb{W}xe5\#$   $\mathbb{f}xe5$ 

Diagram 18-8

34.  $\mathbb{f}6\#$ 

Ruining the coordination of the defending pieces.

34...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 34...  $\mathbb{E}xf6$  35.  $\mathbb{E}gxg7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  36.  $\mathbb{W}xe5\#$ 35.  $\mathbb{W}xe5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  36.  $\mathbb{E}hxg7\#$ 

White wins material and his attack continues.

36...  $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 36...  $\mathbb{E}xg7$  37.  $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$ 37.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 37...  $\mathbb{W}xd4$  38.  $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{c}xd4$  39.  $\mathbb{E}xf7\#$ 38.  $\mathbb{b}4$   $\mathbb{E}c8$  39.  $\mathbb{E}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$  40.  $\mathbb{W}d6\#$   $\mathbb{E}c6$  41.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6\#$  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  42.  $\mathbb{b}xc5\#$ But not 42.  $\mathbb{d}xe4\#?$   $\mathbb{W}f3\#$  with perpetual check.

1-0

Black's position is hopeless, for example: 42...  $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 43.  $\mathbb{Q}xa7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a4$  44.  $\mathbb{W}d4\#$ 

Diagram 18-6

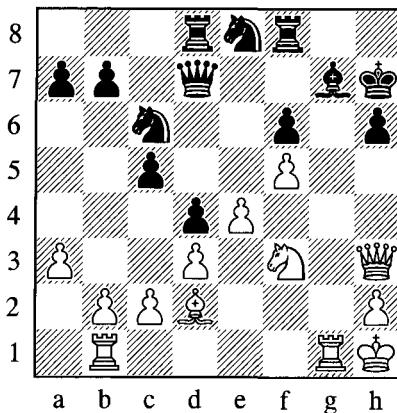


Diagram 18-7

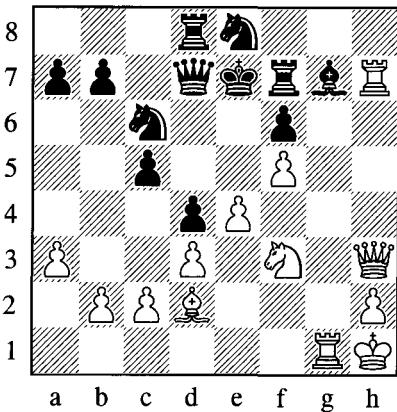
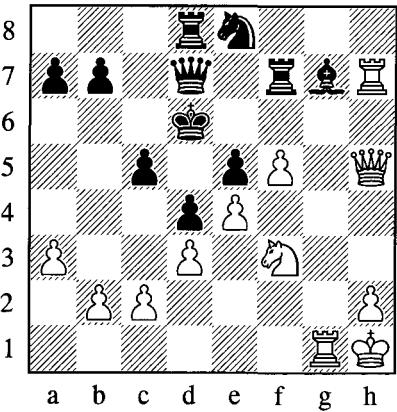


Diagram 18-8



## Opening 2

V.Smyslov – M.Taimanov

Moscow 1959

Diagram 18-9

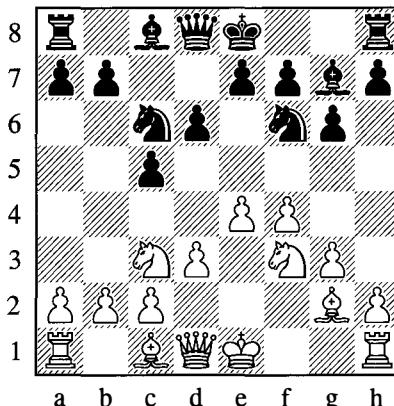


Diagram 18-10

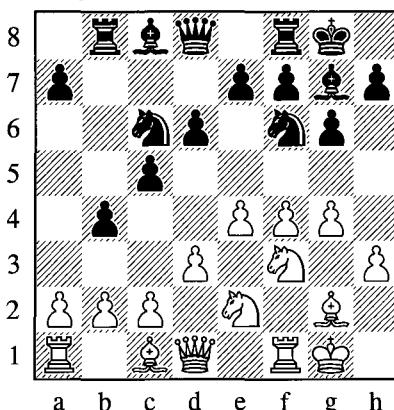
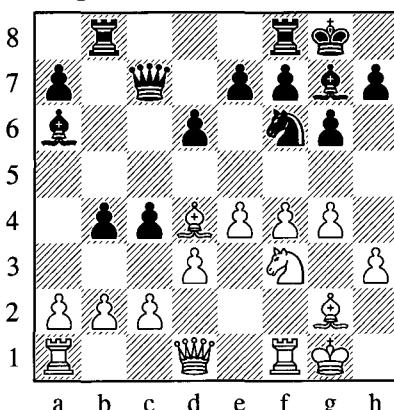


Diagram 18-11

**1.e4 c5 2.♘c3 ♘c6 3.f4**

Of course 3.g3 is the more usual route to the Closed Variation.

**3...g6 4.♘f3 ♖g7 5.d3 d6 6.g3 ♘f6 7.♗g2**

Diagram 18-9

We have now reached a typical Closed Sicilian with f2-f4.

**7...0-0 8.0-0 ♖b8**

Black is more active on the queenside and wants to advance his b-pawn.

**9.h3**

Controlling the g4-square and preparing g3-g4.

**9...b5 10.g4**

If 10.♗e3 then 10...b4 11.♘e2 ♘d7 12.♗b1 ♖a5=.

I believe that 10.a3! is a good alternative, although it is not always easy to evaluate who gains more from the opening of the a-file. The following classical game gives a good example of how White may prepare a kingside attack: 10...a5 11.♗e3 b4 12.axb4 axb4 13.♘e2 ♖b7 (13...♗d7?!) 14.b3! ♖a8 (14...♗d7 15.♗c1 e6 16.g4 d5??) 15.♗c1 ♖a2 16.g4 ♖a8?? 17.♗e1 ♖a6?? 18.♗f2 ♖a7?? 19.f5! ♘b5 20.fxg6 hxg6 21.♗g5 ♘a3 22.♗h4 White had a powerful attack in Spassky – Geller, Sukhumi (6) 1968; the major threat is ♖xf6.

**10...b4 11.♘e2**

Diagram 18-10

**11...c4**

Black wants to open lines on the queenside as quickly as possible. This strategy is understandable since White is aiming to attack on the kingside (♘h1 followed by f4-f5, possibly with a later ♖e1-h4). However, Black now loses control over the d4-square. Smyslov immediately seizes the opportunity to strengthen his position in the centre.

**12.♗e3! ♖a6 13.♘ed4 ♘xd4 14.♘xd4 ♖c7**

Diagram 18-11

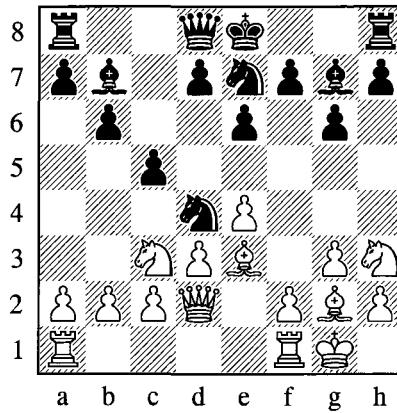
**15.♗f2**

An excellent move, combining attack and defence. White protects the c2-square, while also preparing to double rooks.

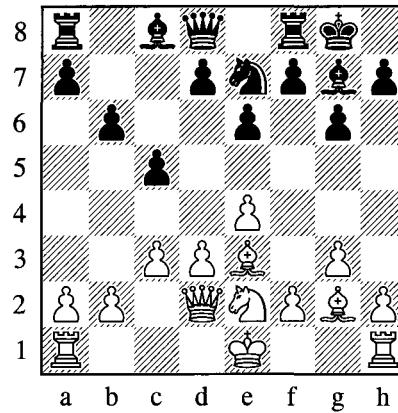


## Exercises

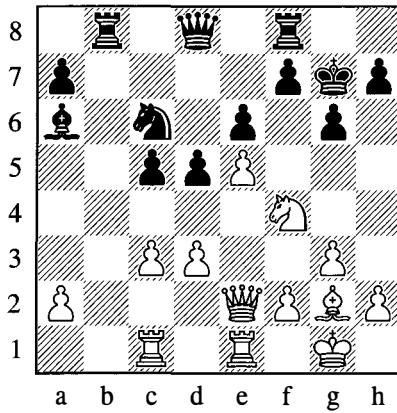
➤ Ex. 18-1 ◀ ★★



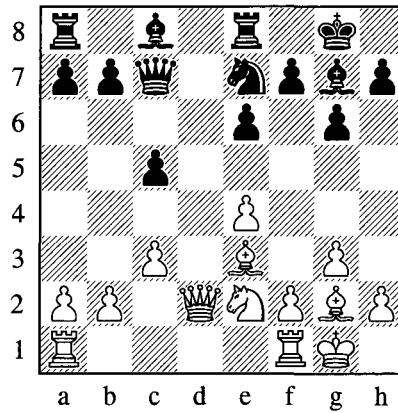
➤ Ex. 18-4 ◀ ★



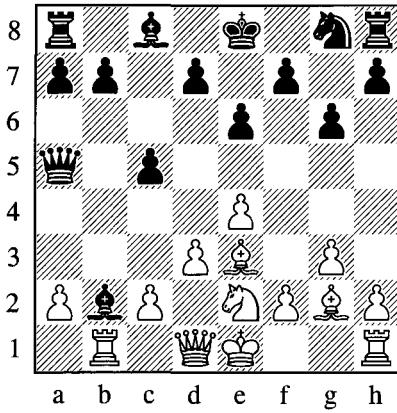
➤ Ex. 18-2 ◀ ★



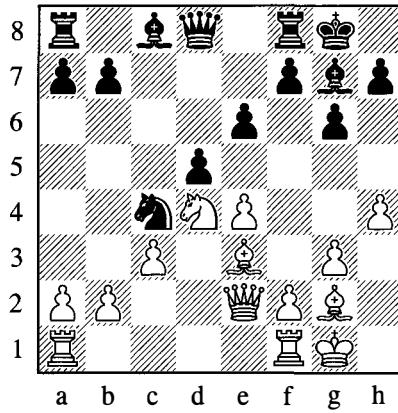
➤ Ex. 18-5 ◀ ★★



➤ Ex. 18-3 ◀ ★★

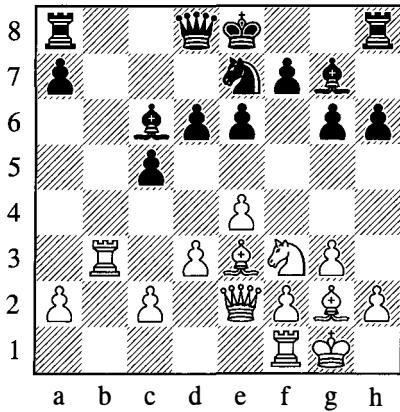


➤ Ex. 18-6 ◀ ★ ★

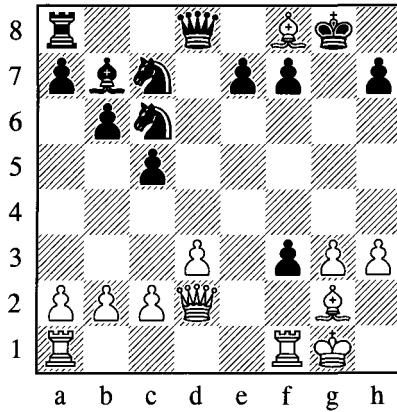


## Exercises

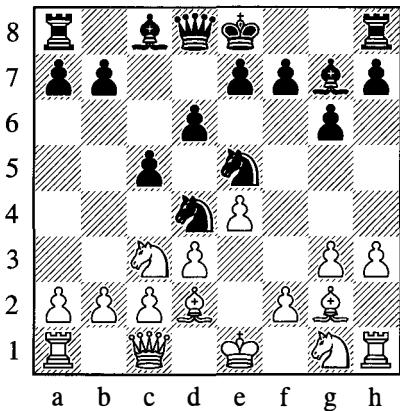
► Ex. 18-7 ◀ ★★



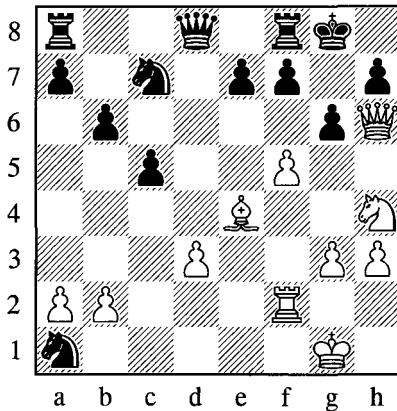
➤ Ex. 18-10 ◀ ★★



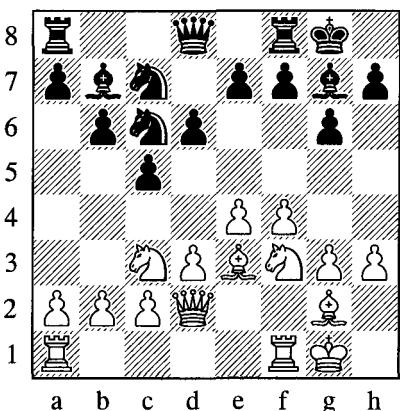
► Ex. 18-8 ◀ ★★



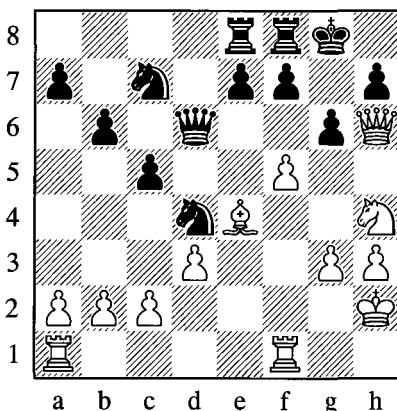
➤ Ex. 18-11 < ★★



➤ Ex. 18-9 ◀ ★★



➤ Ex. 18-12 ◀ ★★★



# Solutions

## Ex. 18-1

V.Smyslov – A.Kotov

Moscow 1946

1.e4 c5 2.♘c3 ♘c6 3.g3 g6 4.♗g2 ♗g7 5.d3  
b6 6.♗e3 ♗b7 7.♗h3?! e6 8.0–0 ♘ge7 9.♗d2  
♗d4

### Diagram Ex. 18-1

10.♗h6!

(1 point)

The bishop exchange is a typical idea.

An alternative is 10.♗d1?! (1 point), aiming to kick the black knight away with c2-c3.

10...0–0

After 10...♗h6 11.♗xh6 ♘xc2 12.♗acl  
♗d4 13.♗g7 ♗g8 14.♗xh7 White has the initiative (Smyslov).

(another 1 point for this variation)

11.♗xg7 ♗xg7 12.♗e2 ♘xe2† 13.♗xe2 d5

14.e5 ♘b8 15.c3 b5 16.♗f4 ♘c6?!

Smyslov pointed out that Black should play 16...d4 17.♗xb7 ♘xb7 18.c4 bxc4 19.dxc4  
♗c6 20.♗d3 ♘e7 intending ...♗b4.

17.♗fe1 b4 18.♗acl bxc3 19.bxc3 ♗a6±

See Ex.18-2.

## Ex. 18-2

V.Smyslov – A.Kotov

Moscow 1946

20.♗g4!

(1 point)

20...♗e7

20...♗b2 21.c4!±

21.c4!± dxc4?

After 21...d4 22.h4± White's plans may include h4-h5 or ♘h5-f6.

22.dxc4 ♘g8 23.♗ed1 ♘e7 24.♗d6 ♘b6

25.♗cd1 ♗c8 26.h4 ♘xd6 27.exd6! ♘d8

28.♗e2!+– ♘f6

28...♗f6 29.d7 ♗a6 30.♗d6+–

29.♗e5 ♗a6 30.♗xc5 ♘g8 31.d7

Not the only way to win; the simple 31.♗c6 is effective too.

31...♗xd7 32.♗xa7 ♗c8 33.c5 ♘f6 34.c6

♗e5 35.c7 ♘g4 36.♗b6 ♘f5 37.♗d8 ♘c2

38.♗d3

Or 38.♗b4 ♘xf2† 39.♗h1+–.

38...♗d1† 39.♗f1 ♘h2 40.♗xh2 ♘xf1

41.♗d6

1–0

## Ex. 18-3

Variation from the game

V.Smyslov – A.Denker

Moscow 1946

1.e4 c5 2.♘c3 ♘c6 3.g3 g6 4.♗g2 ♗g7  
5.d3 e6 6.♗e3 ♘d4?! (6...d6) 7.♗ce2! ♘xe2  
(Smyslov – Denker actually continued  
7...d6 8.c3 ♘c6 [8...♗xe2 9.♗xe2 ♘e7  
10.d4 ♘c7] 9.d4 cxd4 10.♗xd4 ♘xd4  
11.♗xd4 e5?! [11...♗f6] 12.♗e3±) 8.♗xe2  
♗xb2 9.♗b1 ♘a5†? (9...♗g7 10.♗xc5±)

### Diagram Ex. 18-3

10.♗d2!

(1 point)

White wins by force.

10...♗xa2 11.♗xb2! ♘xb2 12.♗c3+–

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 18-4

V.Smyslov – M.Kamishov

Moscow 1946

1.e4 c5 2.♘c3 ♘c6 3.g3 g6 4.♗g2 ♗g7 5.d3  
e6 6.♗e3 ♘d4 7.♗ce2 ♘e7 8.c3 ♘xe2 9.♗xe2  
b6 (9...d6) 10.♗d2 0–0

### Diagram Ex. 18-4

11.♗h6

(1 point)

We have already seen this idea of exchanging dark-squared bishops.

11.h4?! is just as good, and the natural 11.0–0 is fine too. Either of these moves also earn you 1 point.

11...♗b7 12.h4±

Since White is secure in the centre, he can risk this flank attack.

12...f6?!

# Solutions

12... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ !? 13. $\mathbb{W}xh6$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  would be a smarter way to react. After 14.h5 g5 15.f4 f6 Black can defend with ... $\mathbb{W}e7$ -g7.

13. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  14.h5 g5 15.0-0-0 h6 16.f4 16.d4± is also pleasant for White.

16... $\mathbb{W}c7$  17.d4  $\mathbb{Q}ad8$ !?

17...d5!? should be tried.

18.d5 exd5 19.exd5 d6 20.g4  $\mathbb{E}de8$  21. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ ?

22.c4! is stronger, because Black cannot get away with: 22... $\mathbb{W}xg4$ ? 23. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  24.fxg5 hxg5 25. $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{W}d8$  26. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{E}xf6$  27. $\mathbb{W}xg5$ †  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  28. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ +-

22... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  23.fxg5 fxg5 24.c4  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$

$\mathbb{Q}xg2$  26. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ †  $\mathbb{W}xf5$  27.gxh5  $\mathbb{Q}e2$ † 28. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$ † 29. $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$

Now 30.b3  $\mathbb{Q}xh1$  would be slightly better for Black, while 30. $\mathbb{Q}hg1$  is followed by 30... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ † 31. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$ †=.

1/2-1/2

## Ex. 18-5

V.Smyslov – H.Golombek

London 1947

1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.g3 g6 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.d3 e6 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}ce2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8.c3  $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  d6 10. $\mathbb{W}d2$  0-0 11.h4?  $\mathbb{Q}c6$ ! (Δ... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ ) 12.d4 cxd4 13. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ ! (Xd6) 13... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  14. $\mathbb{W}e2$  d5 15.0-0 (15.0-0-0) 15... $\mathbb{Q}c4$  (15...dxe4 16. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  a6 17. $\mathbb{E}fd1$ ± Smyslov)

## Diagram 18-5

14. $\mathbb{E}fd1$

(2 points)

White increases his influence down the d-file.

14. $\mathbb{E}ad1$  (1 point) is almost as good. However, as the black bishop is liable to be developed to a6, it is better to move the f1-rook so that the e2-knight will not be pinned.

14...b6 15. $\mathbb{W}d6$

15. $\mathbb{Q}h6$  is also possible.

15... $\mathbb{W}xd6$  16. $\mathbb{E}xd6$ ±  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  17. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$

18. $\mathbb{E}d2$   $\mathbb{E}ad8$  19. $\mathbb{E}ad1$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  20.f4  $\mathbb{Q}b8$

21.e5  $\mathbb{E}xd2$  22. $\mathbb{E}xd2$   $\mathbb{E}d8$  23. $\mathbb{E}xd8$ †  $\mathbb{Q}xd8$

24.b3  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  25.c4± f6 26. $\mathbb{E}xf6$ †  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  27. $\mathbb{Q}c3$

$\mathbb{Q}b7$  28. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  29. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  30. $\mathbb{Q}f3$

$\mathbb{Q}b4$  31. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  (31...e5!?) 32. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  33. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  34. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  35. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  36. $\mathbb{Q}g4$  h5 37. $\mathbb{Q}f6$ †  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  38. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  39. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  40. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$ † 41. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  42. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  43. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$ † 44. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$ † 45. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  46.h3  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  47.g4  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  48. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  49. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  50.g5  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  51. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  52. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  53. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ !

1-0

## Ex. 18-6

V.Smyslov – R.Renter

Parnu 1947

1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.g3 g6 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.d3 e6 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}ce2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8.c3  $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  d6 10. $\mathbb{W}d2$  0-0 11.h4?  $\mathbb{Q}c6$ ! (Δ... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ ) 12.d4 cxd4 13. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ ! (Xd6) 13... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  14. $\mathbb{W}e2$  d5 15.0-0 (15.0-0-0) 15... $\mathbb{Q}c4$  (15...dxe4 16. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  a6 17. $\mathbb{E}fd1$ ± Smyslov)

## Diagram 18-6

16. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ !

(2 points)

A strong move which provokes a weakening of the black position.

16... $\mathbb{f}6$

16... $\mathbb{W}d6$ ? is bad: 17.exd5 exd5 18. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ +- 17. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  18.exd5 exd5 19. $\mathbb{E}e1$ ±  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  20. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  21. $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  22. $\mathbb{W}xe6$   $\mathbb{E}e8$  23. $\mathbb{W}f7$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  24. $\mathbb{W}xd7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ +-

## Ex. 18-7

V.Smyslov – M.Botvinnik

Moscow 1951

1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.g3 g6 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.d3 e6 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  d6 7. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  (7... $\mathbb{Q}ge7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}h6$ ) 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  9.0-0 h6 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ !?

$\mathbb{Q}xe2$ † 11. $\mathbb{W}xe2$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  12. $\mathbb{E}ab1$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  13. $\mathbb{E}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  14. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$

## Diagram 18-7

15. $\mathbb{W}d2$ !

(2 points)

This prevents kingside castling, and is more accurate than: 15. $\mathbb{E}fb1$  (1 consolation point)

# Solutions

15...0-0 16.♗d2 ♘h7±

15...♞f8

15...h5 16.♗fb1±

16.e5 ♖d5 17.c4 ♖xe3 18.fxe3 ♖c8 19.♖h4

♖e7 20.♗f2 ♖f8 21.♖xc6 ♖xc6 22.♗b7†

♖c7 23.♗f3±

## Ex. 18-8

V.Smyslov – D.Bronstein

USSR Ch, Moscow 1951

1.e4 c5 2.♘c3 ♖c6 3.g3 g6 4.♗g2 ♗g7 5.d3  
d6 6.♘e3 ♖h6 7.♗c1 (7.h3 f5 8.♗d2 ♖f7)

7...♗g4 8.♗d2 ♖d4 9.h3 ♖e5

### Diagram 18-8

10.♗ce2!

(2 points)

White is planning to kick the black knights with f2-f4 and c2-c3.

10.f4 ♖ec6 11.♗ce2 (also 2 points) is equally good.

10...♗b6 11.f4

After 11.♗xd4 cxd4 12.f4 ♖c6 Black would be able to play for counterplay down the c-file.

11...♗xc2†

Enterprising, but Black should probably settle for 11...♗ec6 12.c3 ♖xe2 13.♗xe2± (Smyslov).

12.♗xc2 ♖xb2 13.♗xb2 ♖xd3† 14.♗f1!

14.♗d1?! is weaker: 14...♗xb2† 15.♗c2 ♖c4† (Smyslov).

14...♗xb2

14...♗xb2 15.♗c3±

15.♗b1 ♖e6 16.♗c3

16.♗xb2 17.♗xb2 18.♗xb2±

19.♗g7 ♖xa2 (Smyslov).

16...♗xa2 17.♗xb2 18.♗xb2 19.♗g5†

## Ex. 18-9

V.Smyslov – G.Ilivitzki

USSR Ch, Moscow 1952

1.e4 c5 2.♘c3 ♖c6 3.g3 g6 4.♗g2 ♗g7 5.d3  
d6 6.f4 ♖f6 7.♗f3 0-0 8.0-0 ♖e8 9.h3 ♖c7

10.♗e3 b6 11.♗d2 ♖b7 (11...d5? 12.♗xd5  
♗xd5 13.exd5 ♖xd5 14.♗e5)

### Diagram 18-9

12.f5!

(2 points)

This opens the c1-h6 diagonal for the white battery.

White could also opt for a different plan with 12.d4? (1 point).

12...d5

It is natural for Black to seek counterplay in the centre.

13.♗h6 dxe4

Smyslov analysed the alternatives:

a) 13...♗d7 14.♗xg7 ♖xg7 15.♗ael White has good attacking chances.

b) 13...♗d4 14.♗xd4 cxd4 15.♗xg7 ♖xg7

16.♗e2 dxe4 17.dxe4 ♖a6 18.e5 ♖b8 19.♗f4  
♗xe2 20.♗xe2±

14.♗xe4 ♖d4

After 14...gx f5 15.♗xg7 ♖xg7 (for 15...fxe4?!) 16.♗xf8 exf3 see Ex.18-10) 16.♗g5† White has a strong attack.

15.♗h4 ♖xe4

15...gx f5 16.♗xg7 ♖xg7 17.♗xf5† ♖xf5  
18.♗xf5±

16.♗xe4 ♖xh6 17.♗xh6 ♖d6

For 17...♗xc2 18.♗f2! ♖xa1 see Ex.18-11.

18.♗h2?

18.♗xa8 ♖xa8 is not advisable, as Black gets reasonable compensation for the exchange.

However, the direct 18.♗xg6?! fxg6 19.fxg6 is a strong way to proceed with the attack.

18...♗ae8

See Ex.18-12.

## Ex. 18-10

Variation from the game

V.Smyslov – G.Ilivitzki

USSR Ch, Moscow 1952

17.♗h6!

(2 points)

White saves this important bishop and threatens mate after ♖g5†.

# Solutions

## 17... $\mathbb{W}d4\#$ 18. $\mathbb{Q}h2$

The simple 18. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{W}xb2$  19. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  is also very good for White.

## 18...fxg2

18... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  is more resilient: 19. $\mathbb{W}g5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xf3\pm$

## 19. $\mathbb{W}g5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$

20... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  21. $\mathbb{W}f5+-$

## 21. $\mathbb{W}xg8\#$ $\mathbb{Q}xg8$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$

### Ex. 18-11

Variation from the game

## V.Smyslov – G.Ilivitzki

USSR Ch, Moscow 1952

## 19. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$

(2 points)

The threat of  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  is very strong.

White has another way to win: 19.fxg6 fxg6

## 20. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{W}xg6$ 21. $\mathbb{W}xg6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 22. $\mathbb{W}h6\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$

## 23. $\mathbb{W}g5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}f5+-$ (also 2 points).

## 19... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 21.fxg6 fxg6

21... $\mathbb{W}d4$  22. $\mathbb{Q}g7+-$

## 22. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{W}d4\#$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 24. $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$

## 25. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$

### Ex. 18-12

## V.Smyslov – G.Ilivitzki

USSR Ch, Moscow 1952

## 19.fxg6!

(2 points)

White wins by force. Any of the less incisive moves 1.c3, 1. $\mathbb{Q}ael$  or 1. $\mathbb{Q}f4$  earn 1 consolation point.

## 1...fxg6 20. $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$ $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$

20... $\mathbb{W}hxg6$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xg6+-$

## 21. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 22. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$

(another 1 point)

## 22... $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}xf3+-$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 24. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$

## 25. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 26. $\mathbb{W}h5$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 27. $\mathbb{W}e5\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$

## 28. $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 30. $\mathbb{W}e6\#$ $\mathbb{W}f7$

## 31. $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$

1–0

# Scoring

Maximum number of points is 23

- 19 points and above → Excellent
- 15 points and above → Good
- 11 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 11 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

# CHAPTER

## Contents

- ✓ Value of pawns in the endgame
- ✓ Combinations

Diagram 19-1

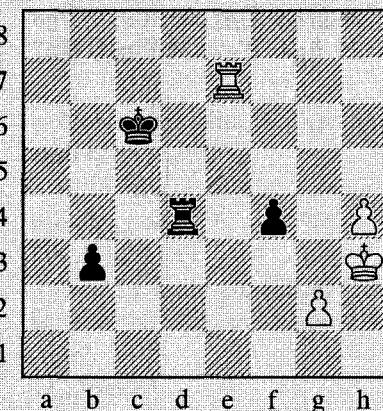
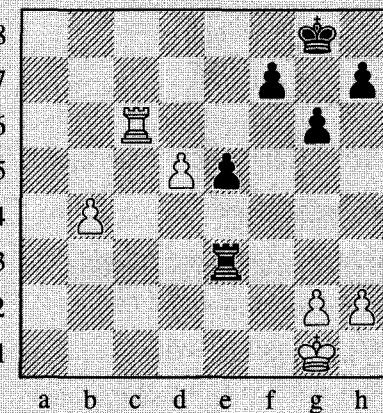


Diagram 19-2



# 19

## Combinations involving promotion

This lesson continues the theme of Chapter 19 of *Build Up Your Chess 1*, and presents some more examples of combinations involving promotion.

The more pieces that have been exchanged, the greater the value of the pawns. One of the main aims in the endgame is to promote a pawn, although you do not always need a combination to achieve that.

Diagram 19-1

A.Morozevich – L.Van Wely

Tilburg 1993

1...b2?

Black misses his chance. The correct idea is 1... $\mathbb{Q}d3!$  2. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}e3!$  and White cannot stop the b-pawn! For example: 3. $\mathbb{Q}f7$  f3! (3...b2? 4. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xf4!$   $\mathbb{Q}a3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f1=$ ) 4.gxf3 b2 5. $\mathbb{Q}f6!$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$   $\mathbb{Q}c3=+$

2. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b1$

The position is now drawn.

3... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$

4... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  5.h5  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  6.g3 fxg3! 7. $\mathbb{Q}xg3$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f3=$  5.h5  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  7.h6  $\mathbb{Q}g8!$  8. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  9.h7  $\mathbb{Q}h2$  10. $\mathbb{Q}xb2$   $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  11. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  12. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$   $\mathbb{Q}h4!$  13. $\mathbb{Q}g3$

½-½

Diagram 19-2

L.Yudasin – V.Kramnik

Candidates Match (3), Wijk aan Zee 1994

1.d6?

This obvious move does not achieve its goal, since the black king is able to take part in the defence.

1.b5? is no better, because after 1... $\mathbb{Q}f8!$  the king is in time to blockade the d-pawn, and Black secures the draw.

The correct way to advance the pawns is 1. $\mathbb{Q}c8!$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  2.b5  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e8!$  White cuts off the king, and on its own the black rook can only eliminate one of

the pawns. After either 3... $\mathbb{Q}b3$  4.d6  $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  5.d7+– or 3... $\mathbb{Q}d3$  4.b6  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  5.b7+– Black must give up his rook for the remaining pawn.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g7!$  2.b5

But not 2.d7?  $\mathbb{Q}d3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.b5  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  5.b6  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  6.b7, because Black can stop the b-pawn: 6... $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}b1\#$

2... $\mathbb{Q}f6$

Diagram 19-3

3.d7†?!

Once again, advancing the d-pawn is not best. White's last chance was: 3. $\mathbb{Q}c1!$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  (3... $\mathbb{Q}d3$  4.b6  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  5.b7  $\mathbb{Q}b6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#!$ +– is an important point) 4. $\mathbb{Q}b1$  The rook belongs behind the passed pawn! 4... $\mathbb{Q}c3$  5.b6  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  6.b7  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  7. $\mathbb{Q}b6$  The black rook is passively placed in front of the b-pawn, not actively behind it as in the game. So White still has winning chances.

3... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}d8=$

The king blockades the d-pawn and the rook will go behind the b-pawn; White can no longer win.

5. $\mathbb{Q}f6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$   $\mathbb{Q}b3$  8. $\mathbb{Q}b7$   $\mathbb{Q}b2!$

Although White has won a pawn, he cannot win the endgame with his king cut off.

9.b6

Or 9.h3 e4 10. $\mathbb{Q}h2$  e3 11. $\mathbb{Q}g3$  e2 12. $\mathbb{Q}f2$  e1 $\mathbb{Q}\#$  13. $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2=$ .

9...e4 10. $\mathbb{Q}b8$  e3 11. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  12.h4  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  13.g4  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  14. $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  15. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  16.h5  $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  17. $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  e2 18.h6  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  19. $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  20.b7  $\mathbb{Q}b1\#$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $\mathbb{Q}b2\#$  22. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$  23. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}b4\#$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$

½–½

Let us take a look at another rook ending.

Diagram 19-4

A.Alekhine – N.N.

Simultaneous game 1933

White prevents the black rook from getting back to stop the a-pawn.

1.g4!

Aimed against ... $\mathbb{Q}h5-h8$ .

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4$  2.a5

Diagram 19-3

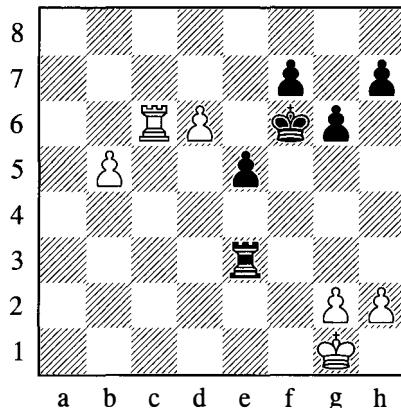
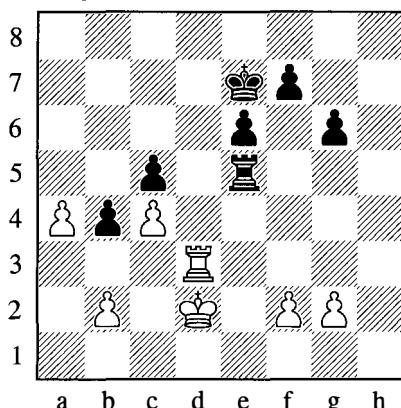


Diagram 19-4



Now things get going!

2... $\mathbb{E}xg4$  3.a6  $\mathbb{E}h4$

Whichever way the rook goes, the game is decided by tactical means. 3... $\mathbb{E}g1$  is met by 4.a7  $\mathbb{E}a1$  5. $\mathbb{E}a3!+-$ .

4. $\mathbb{E}d8!$

But not 4.a7??  $\mathbb{E}h8-+$ .

4... $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  5.a7

The pawn promotes.

1-0

The next example is very interesting, because both sides obtain a far-advanced passed pawn.

Diagram 19-5

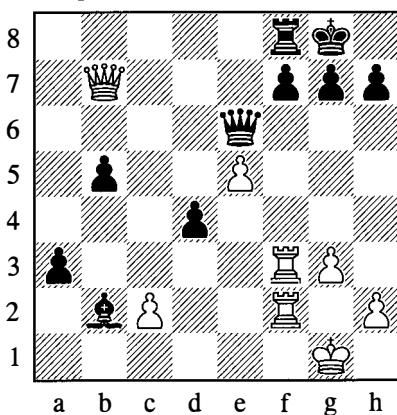


Diagram 19-5

Variation from the game

M.Chigorin – G.Marco

Berlin 1897

Black has a dangerous passed pawn on a3. But after a tactical battle it is the e5-pawn that becomes more important.

1. $\mathbb{E}xf7!$   $\mathbb{W}xf7$

There is nothing better. If 1... $\mathbb{E}xf7$  then 2. $\mathbb{W}b8\#$   $\mathbb{E}f8$  3. $\mathbb{W}xf8\#$ .

2. $\mathbb{E}xf7$   $\mathbb{E}xf7$  3. $\mathbb{W}a8\#$   $\mathbb{E}f8$  4. $\mathbb{W}d5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$

4... $\mathbb{E}f7$  5.e6+-

5.e6

Black cannot cope with the e-pawn.

5...h6 6.e7  $\mathbb{E}e8$  7. $\mathbb{W}d8$  a2 8. $\mathbb{W}xe8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  9. $\mathbb{W}a8-+$

Forcing an exchange of pieces can make the promotion of the passed pawn decidedly easier.

Diagram 19-6

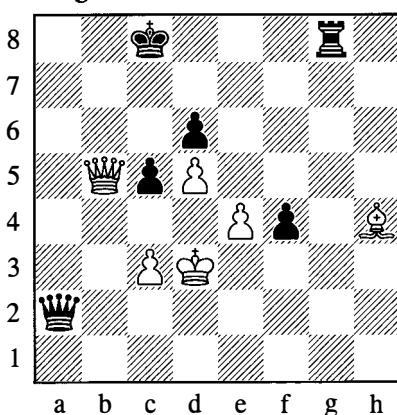


Diagram 19-6

Z.Polgar – K.Bischoff

Dortmund 1985

Black forces the transition to a pawn ending in which his passed pawn will become a queen.

1... $\mathbb{E}g3\#$ ! 2. $\mathbb{E}xg3$  c4#!!

The point of the combination.

3. $\mathbb{Q}d4$

3. $\mathbb{W}xc4\#$   $\mathbb{W}xc4\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  fxg3-+

3... $\mathbb{W}d2\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{W}e2\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}b4$   $\mathbb{W}xb5\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  fxg3

0-1



Diagram 19-10

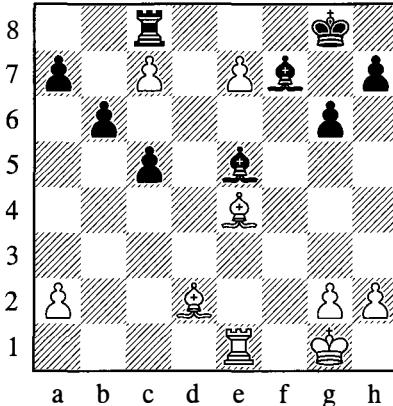


Diagram 19-11

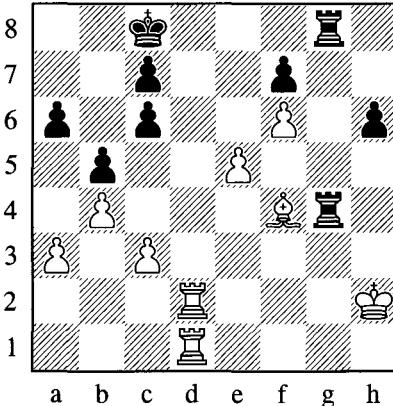
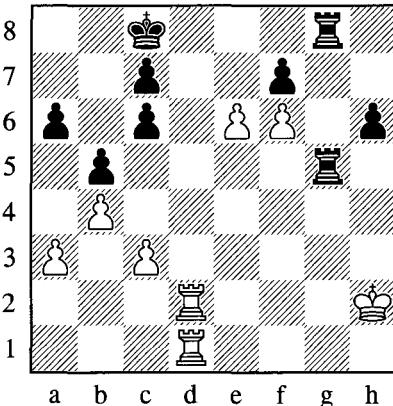


Diagram 19-12



It may be possible to win a piece for a passed pawn, as in the following example.

Diagram 19-10

H.Gruenberg – L.Gutman

Moscow 1989

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d5!$

This little combination results in the win of a piece.

White had an alternative route to victory:  
 1.  $\mathbb{Q}b7$   $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$  (1...  $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}xb7$  3.  $e8\mathbb{Q}\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8\#$ )  
 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$ ) 3.  $e8\mathbb{Q}\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8\#$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}b8\#$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  2.  $e8\mathbb{Q}\#$

2.  $e8\mathbb{Q}\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8\#$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5\#$

This next example demonstrates the strengths of a far-advanced pawn.

Diagram 19-11

A.Nielsen – N.N.

Denmark 1930

White is losing back his extra piece, due to the threat of ...  $\mathbb{Q}h4\#$ . But he can sell its life dearly!

1.  $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  2.  $e6$

This breakthrough creates some embarrassment for the defence.

2...  $\mathbb{Q}3g5$

2...  $fxe6$  3.  $f7\#$

Diagram 19-12

Mate is threatened again, but...

3.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$ !

The decisive combination.

3...  $\mathbb{Q}xd8$

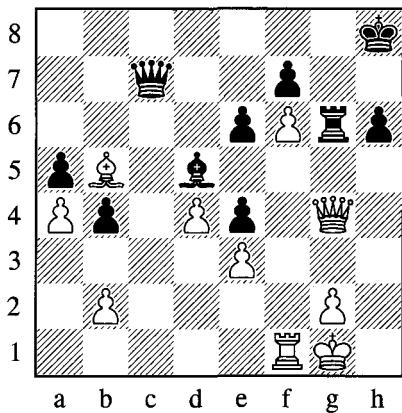
After 3...  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg8$   $\mathbb{Q}xg8$  5.  $e7$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$  the e-pawn paralyses Black, and he will eventually run out of sensible moves. For example: 6...  $\mathbb{Q}h4$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $a5$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $a4$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$  Black is in zugzwang.

4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  5.  $exf7$

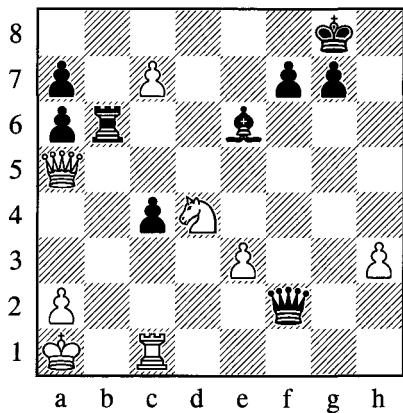
1-0

# Exercises

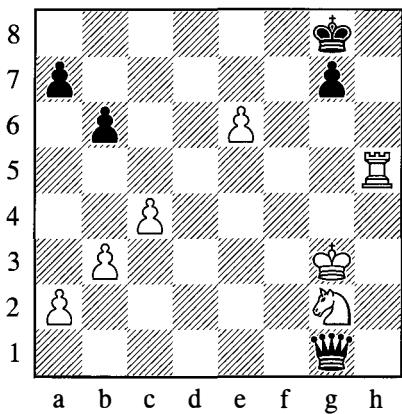
► Ex. 19-1 ◀ ★



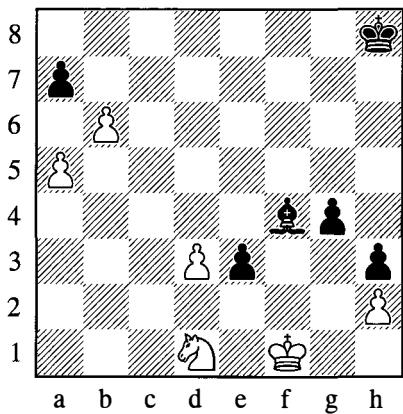
► Ex. 19-4 ◀ ★★



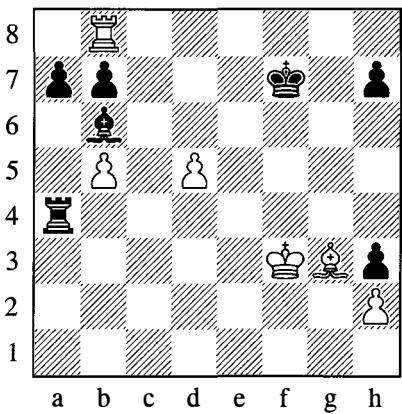
► Ex. 19-2 ◀ ★



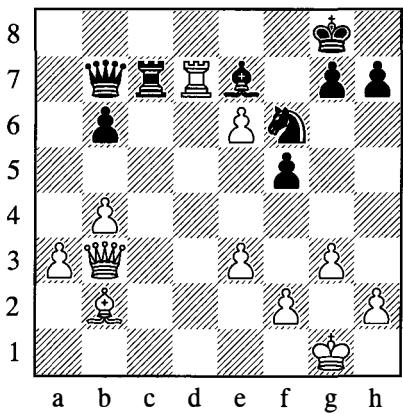
► Ex. 19-5 ◀ ★★★



► Ex. 19-3 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 19-6 ◀ ★

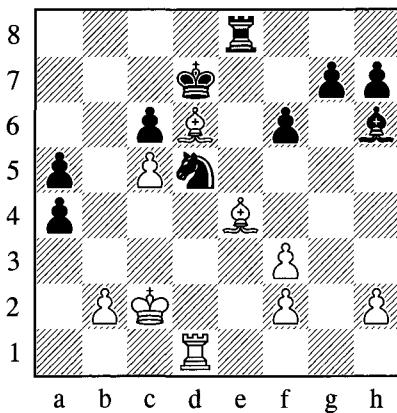


# Exercises

► Ex. 19-7 ◀

★★

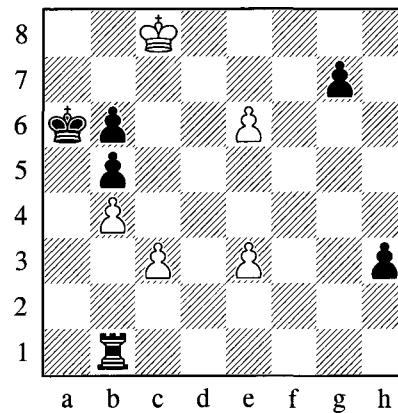
△



► Ex. 19-10 ◀

★★★

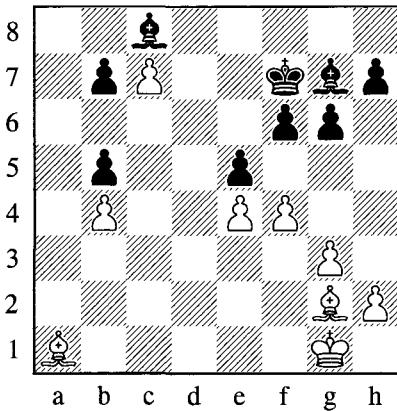
△



► Ex. 19-8 ◀

★★

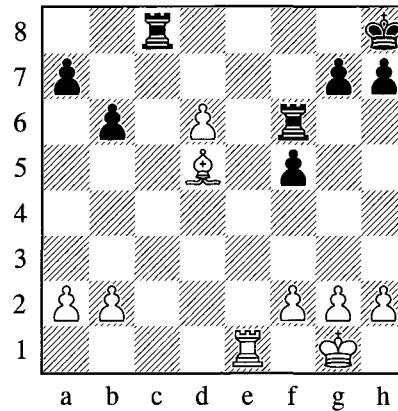
△



► Ex. 19-11 ◀

★★

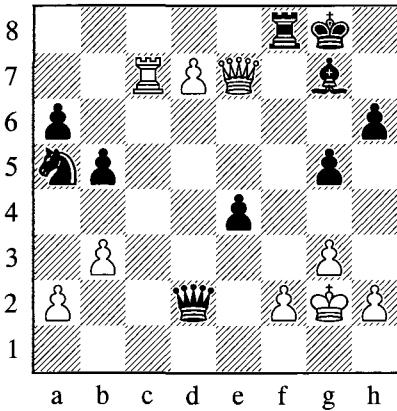
△



► Ex. 19-9 ◀

★

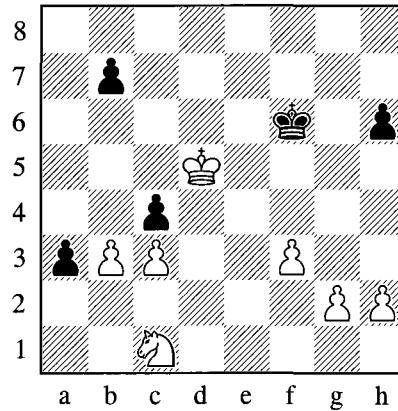
△



► Ex. 19-12 ◀

★

▼



# Solutions

## Ex. 19-1

Variation from the game

**A.Yusupov – R.Fontaine**

Cannes 2005

1.  $\mathbb{W}xg6!$   $\mathbb{f}xg6$  2.  $\mathbb{f}7+$ –

(1 point)

A typical tactical idea.

## Ex. 19-2

**Danielsen – Nilson**

1952

1.  $\mathbb{E}h8\#!$

This deflecting sacrifice wins on the spot.

Not 1.  $\mathbb{E}f5$   $\mathbb{W}d1$  2.  $e7?$   $\mathbb{W}d6\#$ –.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  2.  $e7$

(1 point)

Notice how well the white knight shields its king from attacks by the queen.

1-0

## Ex. 19-3

**Sherman – B.Eley**

England 1972

1...  $\mathbb{E}a3\#!$

(1 point)

In the game Black missed his chance, playing 1...  $h5?$ – and only drawing.

2.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$

Other king moves are no better: 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$ – or 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{E}xg3$ –.

2...  $\mathbb{E}xg3\#!$

(another 1 point)

3.  $\mathbb{h}xg3$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$ –

3...  $h2$ –

# Solutions

## Ex. 19-7

**Popov – R. Borngässer**

Correspondence game 1972

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ !**

(1 point)

**1–0**

2... $cx d5$  is followed by 3.c6  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  5.c7+–.

(another 1 point for this variation)

## Ex. 19-8

**A. Shashin – E. Gik**

USSR 1967

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$ !**

A study-like idea.

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$**

1... $f5$  is more resilient, but White still wins with 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  3.  $fxe5$  and now:

a) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $exf5$   $gxf5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f2+–$

b) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4.  $exf5\#$   $gxf5$  5.  $g4!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  6.  $gxf5$

$\mathbb{Q}d6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  8.  $f6!+–$

c) 3...  $h5$  4.  $exf5$   $gxf5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$

7.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$

$\mathbb{Q}d5$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  12.  $h4!+–$

**2.  $f5$**

**1–0**

(2 points)

## Ex. 19-9

**Y. Anikaev – V. Kuporosov**

Stavropol 1982

**1.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$ !**

(1 point)

White cannot promote immediately:

1.  $d8\mathbb{W}??$   $\mathbb{W}xf2\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{W}f5\#$  3.  $g4$  (3.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}f1\#$ ) 3...  $\mathbb{W}f3\#$

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  2.  $d8\mathbb{W}\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd2$**

**1–0**

## Ex. 19-10

**Babushkin – Postnikov**

Correspondence game 1970

**1.  $e7$**

(1 point)

**1...  $h2$  2.  $e8\mathbb{Q}\#$ !!**

(another 2 points)

White saves the game with a perpetual check.

2.  $e8\mathbb{W}$  loses to 2...  $h1\mathbb{W}$  3.  $e4$   $\mathbb{W}h3\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b8$   $\mathbb{Q}d1$  5.  $c4$   $\mathbb{W}d7$ .

**2...  $h1\mathbb{W}$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$   $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$**

## Ex. 19-11

**A. Alekhine – Pen**

Odessa simultaneous 1918

**1.  $d7!$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7!$**

(1 point)

**3...  $g6$**

3...  $\mathbb{Q}fxe8$  4.  $dxe8\mathbb{W}\#+–$

**4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#+–$**

**1–0**

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 19-12

**Agapov – Kurmachov**

Kaliningrad 1978

**1...  $a2!$**

(1 point)

1...  $cxb3?$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xb3+–$

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}xa2$   $cxb3$**

White cannot stop the pawn after 3.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $b2$  or 3.  $\mathbb{Q}b4$   $b2$ .

**0–1**

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **21**

- **18** points and above ..... ➤ **Excellent**
- **14** points and above ..... ➤ **Good**
- **11** points ..... ➤ **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **11** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Calculating short variations
- ✓ Introduction to the exercises
- ✓ Exercises with mate in three moves

Diagram 20-1

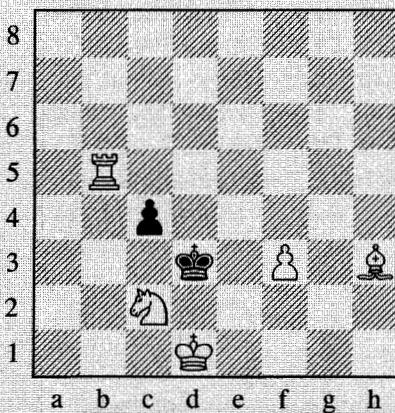
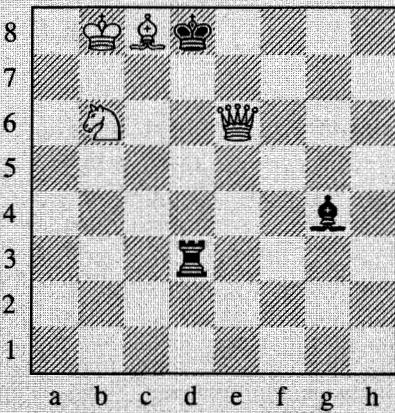


Diagram 20-2



## Mate in three moves

In this lesson we continue with your training in the calculation of variations. Solving chess problems with natural-looking positions is a good way to practise calculating short variations.

**In all the positions in this chapter, you should look for a mate in three moves!** It is important that you calculate and write down only the necessary variations. If we have reached a position in which we are threatening mate, we need only concern ourselves with the moves which parry this threat of mate. You only have to write down the first two moves of the solution. However, you must be certain that mate will follow on the third move.

Try to solve the following positions. At first, think for a maximum of ten minutes without moving the pieces. If you cannot find a solution, then you may move the pieces and think things over for another ten minutes. Only then should you look at the solutions.

Diagram 20-1

E.Chelebi

1958

White makes use of zugzwang.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c8!$   $\mathbb{Q}c3$   
1...c3 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f1\#$
2.  $\mathbb{Q}a6$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$

Diagram 20-2

N.Van Dijk

1964

An example on the theme of 'line blocking'.

1.  $\mathbb{W}f7!$   
Threatening  $\mathbb{W}f8\#$ .  
1...  $\mathbb{E}e3$   
1...  $\mathbb{E}f3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5!$   $\mathbb{E}xf5$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f8\#$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{W}d7\#$   
1...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  (or h5) 2.  $\mathbb{W}f8\#$   $\mathbb{E}e8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f6\#$
2.  $\mathbb{Q}e6!$   $\mathbb{E}xe6$   
2...  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f8\#$
3.  $\mathbb{W}d7\#$

## Mate in three moves

### Diagram 20-3

The end of a study by

**G.Kasparian**

1961

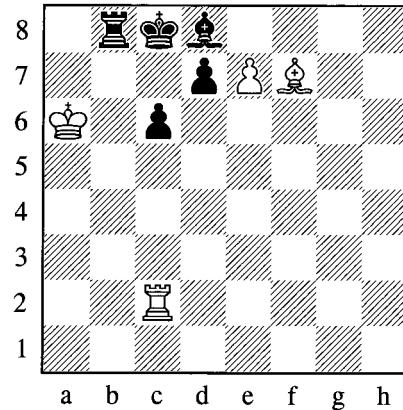
**1.  $\mathbb{B}xc6\#$**

1...  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  2.  $e8\mathbb{Q}\#$

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$**

An underpromotion is always spectacular!

### Diagram 20-3



### Diagram 20-4

The end of a study by

**G.Kasparian**

1935

What follows is an original double attack!

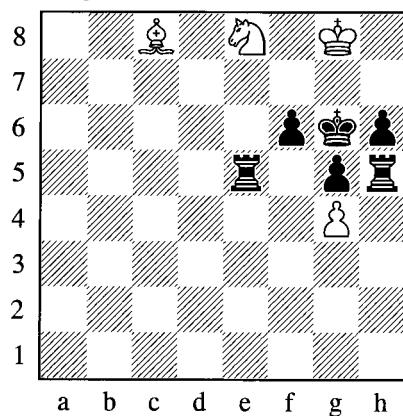
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$**

After 1.  $\mathbb{Q}g7?$  f5 the king escapes.

**1...  $\mathbb{B}xf5$**

The pawn mates next move.

### Diagram 20-4



### Diagram 20-5

#### Training position

A well-known mate will arise after some forcing play.

**1.  $\mathbb{W}c4\#$**

This lures the black king into the trap.

**2...  $\mathbb{Q}xc1$**

Normally two knights are not enough to finish a game, but here they demonstrate extraordinarily good cooperation with the king.

### Diagram 20-5

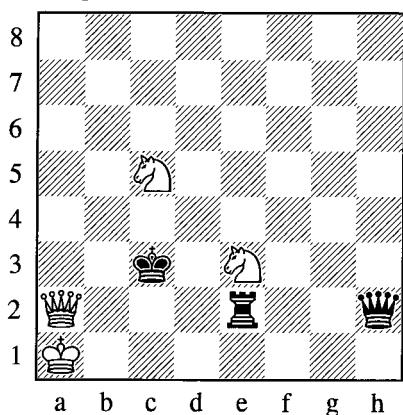


Diagram 20-6

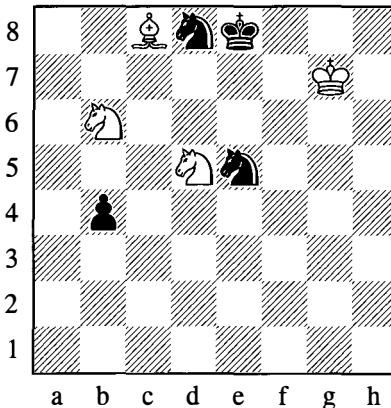


Diagram 20-6

The end of a study by

G. Kasparian

1934

Another example of the same theme!

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d7\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$ 

Diagram 20-7

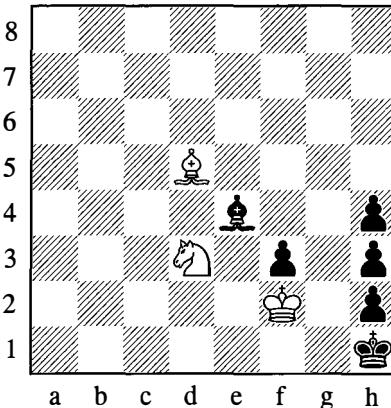


Diagram 20-7

The end of a study by

Y. Beljakin

1950

The first move is the point of the whole study, and is hard to find! It is an original form of deflection.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}a8!!$   $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$ 1...  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$ 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$ 

Diagram 20-8

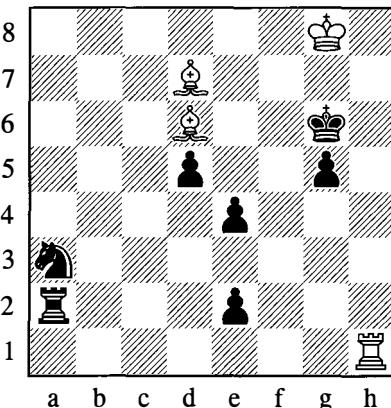


Diagram 20-8

Training position

Firstly the opposing king must be forced into a metaphorical corner! White starts with a sacrifice to decoy the king to an unfavourable square.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ A quiet move with the deadly threat of  $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$ . Black has only one way to stop this.2...  $g4$ 

But mate now arrives from the other direction.

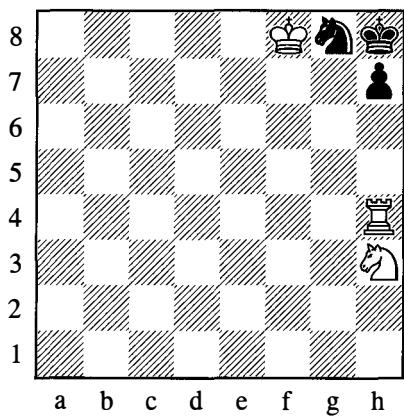
3.  $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$ 

Now try to solve the following positions with mate in three moves.

# Exercises

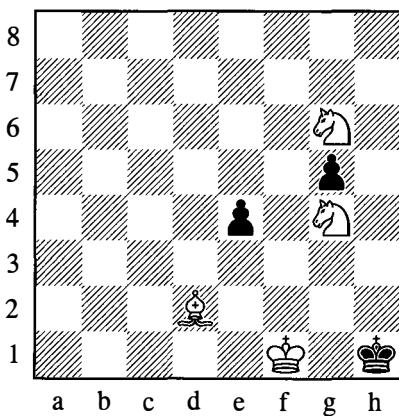
►Ex. 20-1◀

★★



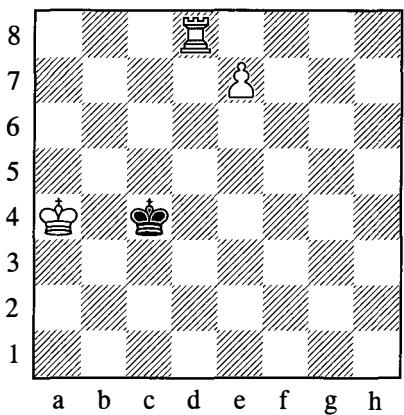
►Ex. 20-4◀

★★



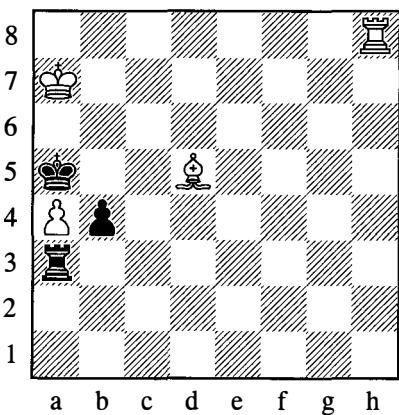
►Ex. 20-2◀

★★



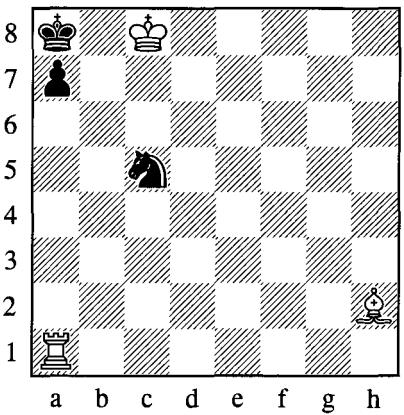
►Ex. 20-5◀

★★



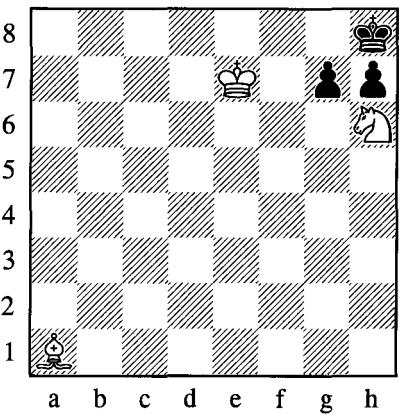
►Ex. 20-3◀

★★



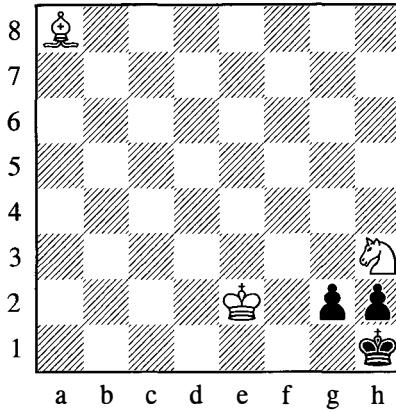
►Ex. 20-6◀

★★

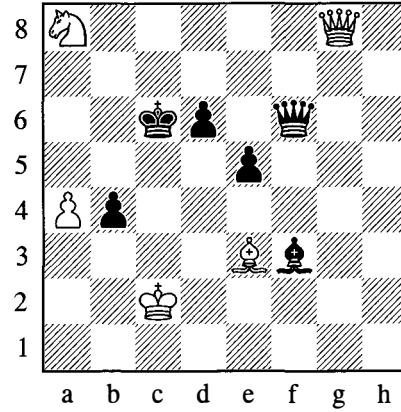


# Exercises

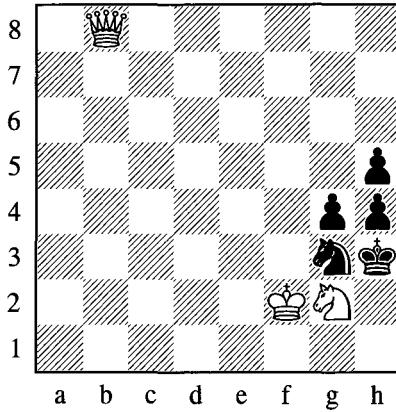
► Ex. 20-7 ◀ ★★



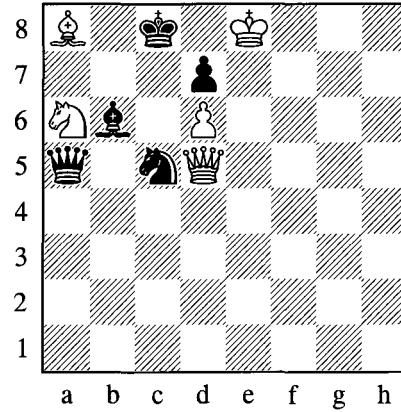
► Ex. 20-10 ◀ ★★



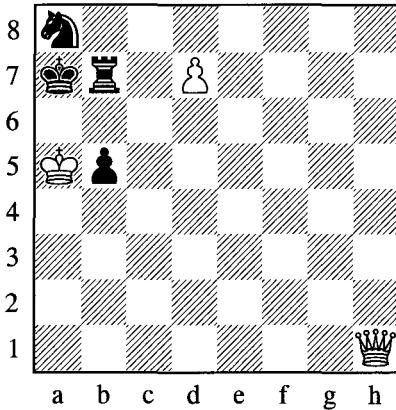
► Ex. 20-8 ◀ ★★



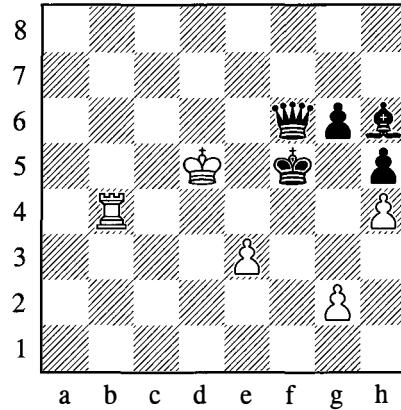
► Ex. 20-11 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 20-9 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 20-12 ◀ ★★



# Solutions

## Ex. 20-1

L.Kubbel

1958

1.  $\mathbb{Q}h6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   
1...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$

(2 points)

Zugzwang features in all variations!

## Ex. 20-2

R.L'Hermet

1888

1.  $e8\mathbb{Q}!$

Underpromotion. If, instead of the rook, we choose a queen, then the possibility of stalemate means that mate will take four moves!

1...  $\mathbb{Q}c5$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}c3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e2!$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c2\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e6!$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$

(2 points)

## Ex. 20-3

L.Kubbel

1941

1.  $\mathbb{Q}g1!$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$

1...  $a6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5+-$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}a4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xa4+-$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}b6!$

(2 points)

Black is in zugzwang.

## Ex. 20-4

Based on a study by

S.Limbach

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f4!$   $e3$

1...  $gx\mathbb{Q}f4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf4\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $ex\mathbb{Q}d2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$

(2 points)

## Ex. 20-5

Based on a study by

A.Gurvitch

1959

1.  $\mathbb{Q}b3!$

Threatening  $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xb3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}a8!$

Threatening  $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$ .

2...  $\mathbb{Q}xa4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$

(2 points)

## Ex. 20-6

A.Galitzky

1900

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f6!$   $gx\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f8$   $f5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$

(2 points)

## Ex. 20-7

A.Galitzky

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f3!$   $g1\mathbb{Q}$

1...  $g1\mathbb{Q}\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf2\#$

(2 points)

## Ex. 20-8

Training position

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xg3\#$   $hx\mathbb{Q}g3\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $h4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f4\#$

(2 points)

## Ex. 20-9

C.Fitch

1876

1.  $d8\mathbb{Q}!$

Threatening  $\mathbb{Q}xb7\#$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xb7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$

(2 points)

# Solutions

## Ex. 20-10

### Training position

1.  $\mathbb{W}c8\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  2.  $\mathbb{W}c4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$

(2 points)

## Ex. 20-11

### Training position

1.  $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xb7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}c6\#$ !  $dxc6$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd7\#$

3.  $d7\#$

(2 points)

## Ex. 20-12

The end of a study by

A.Kazantsev

1964

1.  $g4\#$ !  $hxg4$  2.  $\mathbb{E}f4\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  3.  $e4\#$

(2 points)

# Scoring

Maximum number of points is 24

22 points and above ..... → Excellent

18 points and above ..... → Good

12 points ..... → Pass mark

*If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*



One of World Champion  
Anatoly Karpov's many talents was his ability  
to weave mating nets in the endgame

## Contents

- ✓ The role of the king in the endgame
- ✓ The position of the king in the endgame
- ✓ Coordination of the pieces
- ✓ Some mating nets

## Mating nets in the endgame

In the game of chess the highest priority of all must be given to the safety of the king. In the opening and in the middlegame we are continuously faced with this problem. In the endgame things appear to be slightly different. The exchange of numerous pieces allows our king to become active and show what a strong piece it is.

Nevertheless, even in the endgame some dangerous situations can arise. If our opponent has at least a rook or a couple of minor pieces, we need to think carefully about where to place our king. We must be wary of leaving our king on its own, or advancing it over-optimistically. The situation in which our king is cut off on the edge of the board is a particularly dangerous one.

Even a small but well organized army (often led by the enemy king!) can endanger our king. The best defence against such problems is good coordination of our forces, which can also support and protect the king.

Here are some examples of mating nets in the endgame.

Diagram 21-1

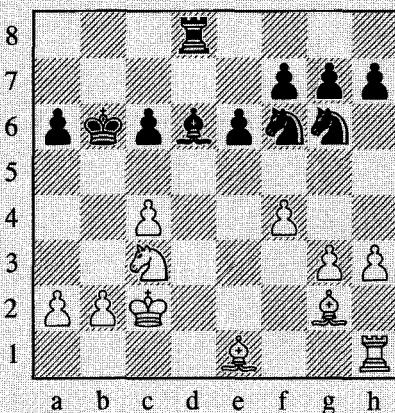


Diagram 21-1

A.Karpov – V.Sergievsky

Russian Ch, Kuibyshev 1970

1.c5†!

White uses this sacrifice to attract the black king forward.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$

After 1... $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  the black king is in trouble: 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2†$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  (or 2... $\mathbb{Q}b4$  3.a3†  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  4.b4†+–) 3. $\mathbb{Q}f1†$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b6!$  and Black cannot prevent 5.a3#.

2. $\mathbb{Q}a4†$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$

The white king joins the hunt too, threatening 4. $\mathbb{Q}f1†$ .

3.b3 would have a similar idea, but it is weaker because 3... $\mathbb{Q}b4$  enables the black king to escape.

3... $\mathbb{Q}d3†$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$

Black has no good defence against  $\mathbb{Q}f1$  and must surrender material.

4... $\mathbb{Q}xc3\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xc3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a5$  6. $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{Q}f2$  7. $\mathbb{Q}c1+$ -

Now 7... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  would be answered by 8. $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$ . Black soon resigned.

Diagram 21-2

A.Karpov – H.Mecking

Hastings 1971/2

1. $\mathbb{Q}h7!$

Karpov starts a king hunt against the lonely monarch.

1... $\mathbb{Q}g5?!$

Black should not play this voluntarily!

2. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$

White wants to bring his king to f3, then play  $\mathbb{Q}7h6$ , and finally deliver mate with the other rook.

2... $\mathbb{Q}f4$

2... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h4\#$

3. $\mathbb{Q}1h3$

Preparing the mate. There is nothing Black can do.

3... $\mathbb{Q}d4$

3... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  does not save Black: 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  (threatening 5. $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f1+$ ) 4... $\mathbb{Q}g5$  (4... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  puts up the toughest resistance, but loses too much material) 5. $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}hg7$  and 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ .

4. $\mathbb{Q}g7!$

Black cannot stop 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ .

1-0

Diagram 21-3

S.Lputian – A.Yusupov

Batumi 1999

Black has assembled his forces on the kingside, and they are attacking a king which has been left almost alone.

1... $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$  2. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b6$

White clears the way for his rook to take part in the defence.

White cannot take the knight: 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg2??$   $\mathbb{Q}h4\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}h2$  (4. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$ ) 4... $\mathbb{Q}f4!$  (threatening 5... $\mathbb{Q}f3\#$  followed by 6... $\mathbb{Q}g1\#$ ) 5.f3  $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  and 8... $\mathbb{Q}f2\#$ .

Diagram 21-2

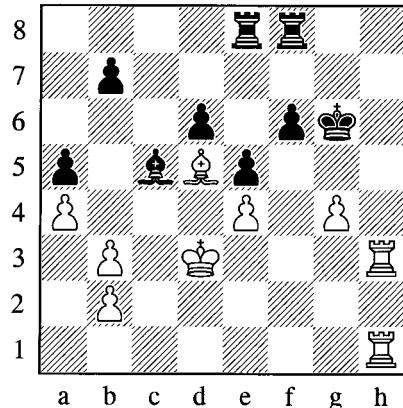
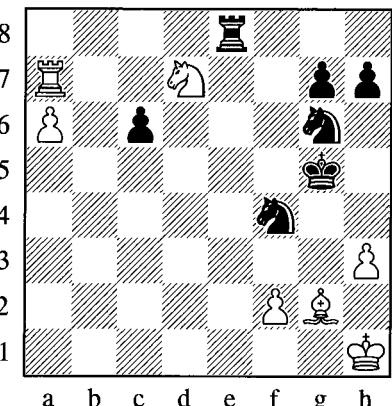


Diagram 21-3





The next typical mating attack was played by one of the greatest players of the previous and the current century – Viktor Korchnoi – who once again demonstrates his remarkable tactical skills.

Diagram 21-7

V.Korchnoi – J.Gallagher

Switzerland 2011

1.  $\mathbb{Q}g6!!$   $dxe2$ 1...  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd3+-$  is hopeless for Black.2.  $h6$ Threatening 2.  $h7\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$ .2...  $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 2...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3.  $h7+-$ 3.  $h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 

Diagram 21-8

4.  $\mathbb{Q}h6!$ 

The key move of the combination. Black cannot defend against mate.

1-0

Diagram 21-7

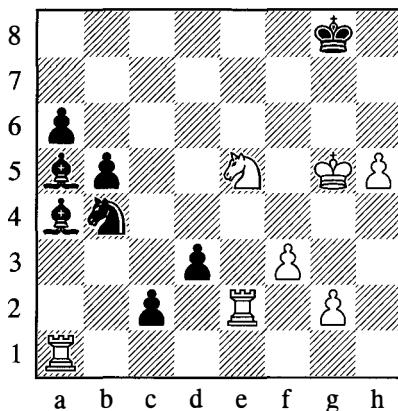
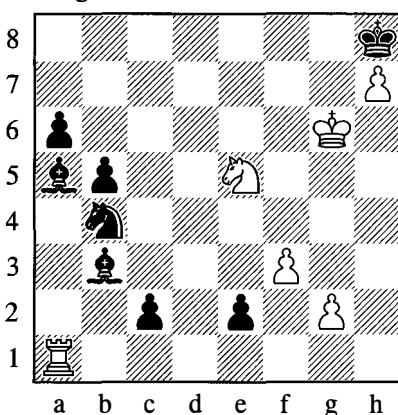
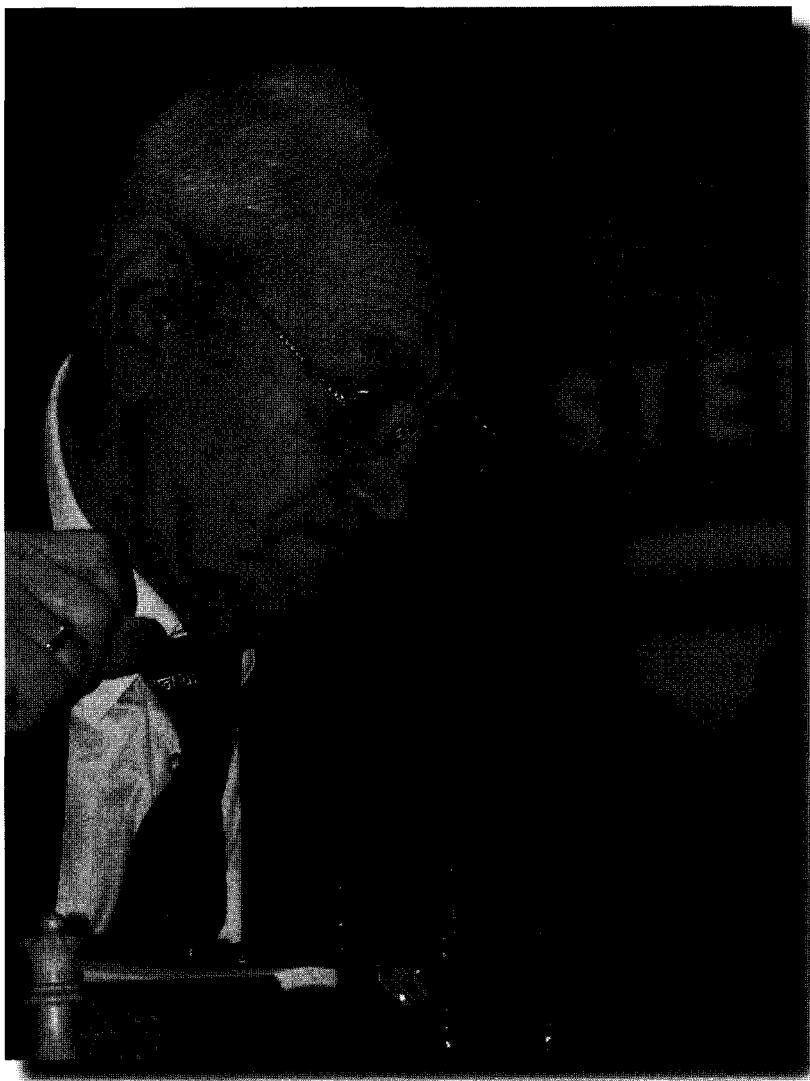


Diagram 21-8

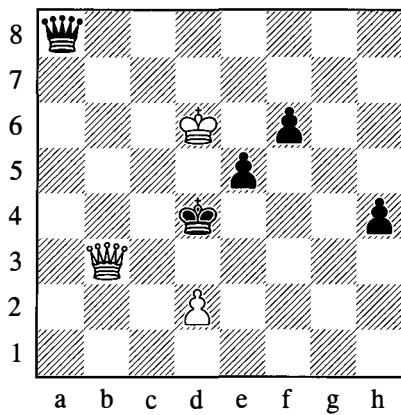




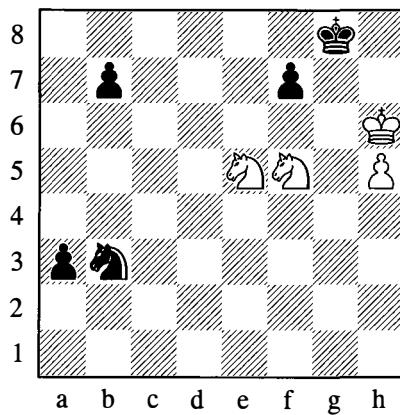
Even at the age of 80  
Viktor Korchnoi is still producing  
sparkling chess

# Exercises

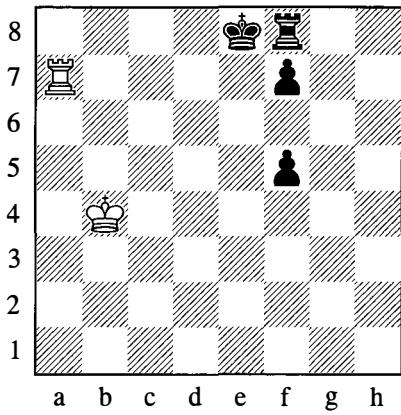
► Ex. 21-1 ◀ ★★



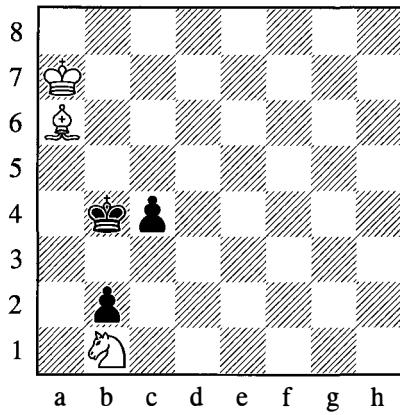
► Ex. 21-4 ◀ ★★★



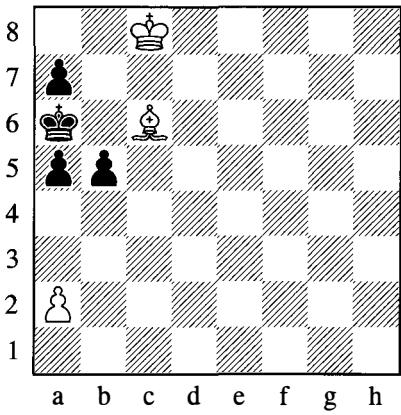
► Ex. 21-2 ◀ ★★



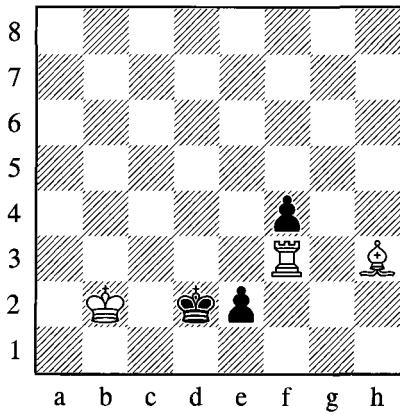
► Ex. 21-5 ◀ ★★★



► Ex. 21-3 ◀ ★★★



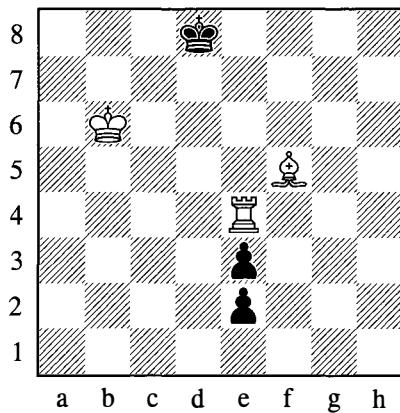
► Ex. 21-6 ◀ ★★



# Exercises

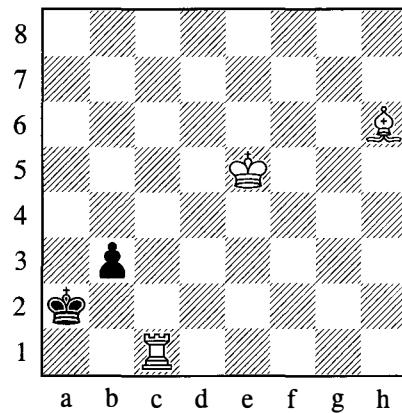
► Ex. 21-7 ◀

★★★



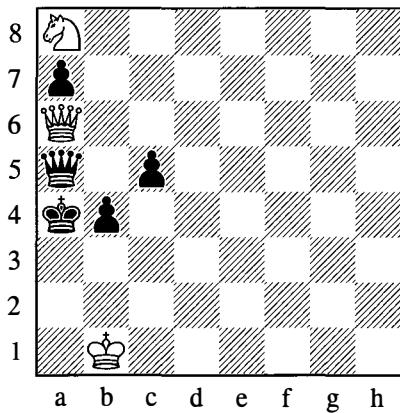
► Ex. 21-10 ◀

★★



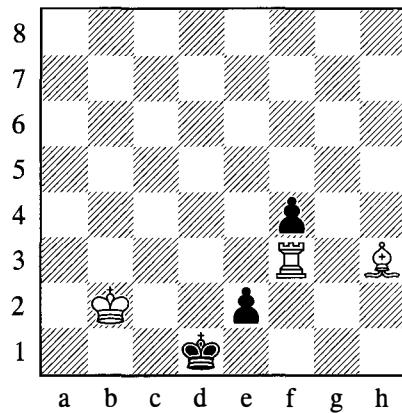
► Ex. 21-8 ◀

★★



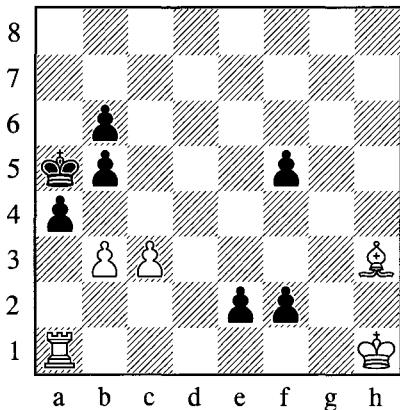
► Ex. 21-11 ◀

★★



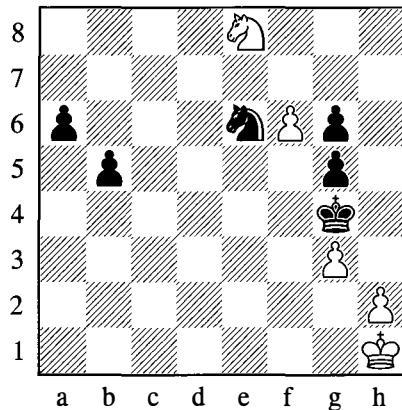
► Ex. 21-9 ◀

★★★



► Ex. 21-12 ◀

★★



# Solutions

## Ex. 21-1

The end of a study by

**H.Rinck**

1906

White forces the opposing king to the edge of the board.

1.  $\mathbb{W}e3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  2.  $\mathbb{W}c3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$  3.  $\mathbb{W}b3\#$

(1 point)

3...  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}a4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  5.  $\mathbb{W}b5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$

5...  $\mathbb{Q}a7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$

6.  $\mathbb{W}d7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  7.  $\mathbb{W}c7\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 21-2

The end of a study by

**J.Hasek**

1929

The black king is already cut off on the edge of the board.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $f6$

1...  $f4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $f5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$

(1 point for this variation)

2.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}a8\#$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}a8\#$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 21-3

**G.Zakhodiakin**

1932

1.  $a4!!$

(1 point)

But not 1.  $a3?$   $a4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}a5$  followed by  $\dots b4=$ .

1...  $bx a4$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}b6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $a3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}a4!!$

(another 1 point)

3...  $a2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $a1\mathbb{W}$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 21-4

Variation from the game

**A.V.Zakharov – A.Petrushin**

USSR 1973

White wins by force.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d7!!$

(1 point)

Threatening 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$

1...  $f6$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  is met with 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  followed by 3.  $\mathbb{Q}d6\#$

1...  $a2$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $a1\mathbb{W}$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$   
(another 1 point for this variation)

2.  $\mathbb{Q}g1!!$   $a2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$  also leads to mate: 3...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f8$   
a1 $\mathbb{W}$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$   $\mathbb{W}g1$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}eg6\#$   $\mathbb{W}xg6\#$  7.  $hxg6$  and 8.  $g7\#$ .

3...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $a1\mathbb{W}$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 21-5

The end of a study by

**L.Kubbel**

1940

1.  $\mathbb{Q}b6!!$

(1 point)

1...  $c3$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}b3$  is followed by: 2.  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  (or 2.  $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$ )

2...  $c3$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}c2$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f5\#$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $c2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$

(another 1 point)

2.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}b3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $c2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 21-6

The end of a study by

**R.Reti**

1923

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f1!!$

(1 point)

1...  $e1\mathbb{W}$

After 1...  $exf1\mathbb{W}$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  White easily stops the f-pawn: 2...  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$  (3.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $f3$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e1\#$ )

# Solutions

comes to the same thing) 3...f3 4.♕e1†! (but not 4.♔d1? f2 5.♕h1 ♔f3=) 4...♔f2 5.♔d2+– (another 1 point for this variation)

2.♕d3#

3.♕a1#) 3.cxb4† ♔xb4 4.bxa4 ♔xa4 5.♔g2 b5 6.♔xf2+–

2.♕xa4†! bxa4 3.b4#

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 21-7

The end of a study by

R.Reti

1928

1.♕d7!!

(2 points)

White must avoid 1.♕xe3? e1♛! 2.♕xel stalemate.

(another 1 point for this variation)

1...e1♛

1...♔xd7 2.♕xe3+–

2.♕b5+–

(another 1 point)

Black has no good defence to the threat of ♕e8#.

## Ex. 21-8

The end of a study by

L.Kubbel & A.Troitzky

1936

1.♔b6†!

(1 point)

1...axb6 2.♔c4!+–

(another 1 point)

Black is in zugzwang:

a) 2...♔a3 3.♔a2#

b) 2...b5 3.♔a2#

c) 2...♔a7 3.♔a2†+–

## Ex. 21-9

The end of a study by

L.Kubbel

1927

1.♔f1!

(2 points)

1...e1♛

1...exf1♛† also loses: 2.♕xf1 b4 (2...axb3

## Ex. 21-10

R.Reti

1923

1.♕c3! b2 2.♕c1! b1♛ 3.♕a3#

(2 points)

The same idea as in Ex. 21-6.

## Ex. 21-11

The end of a study by

R.Reti

1923

1.♔g4! e1♛ 2.♔d3#

(2 points)

## Ex. 21-12

The end of a study by

L.Kubbel

1915

1.♔g7!

(1 point)

1...♔f8

After 1...b4 White has several routes to victory:

a) 2.♕xe6 b3 3.♔g2! b2 4.♔g7 b1♛ 5.h3#

b) 2.♔g2 ♔f4† 3.gxf4 b3 4.f7 b2 5.f8♛

b1♛ 6.h3† ♔h4 7.♔h8#

c) 2.f7 b3 3.f8♛ ♔xf8 4.♔g2 b2 5.h3#

2.♔g2! b4 3.h3#

(another 1 point)

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **30**

- 25 points and above → **Excellent**
- 20 points and above → **Good**
- 15 points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than 15 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ The value of a pawn
- ✓ The higher value of a passed pawn
- ✓ Guidelines for playing with (and against) passed pawns

Diagram 22-1

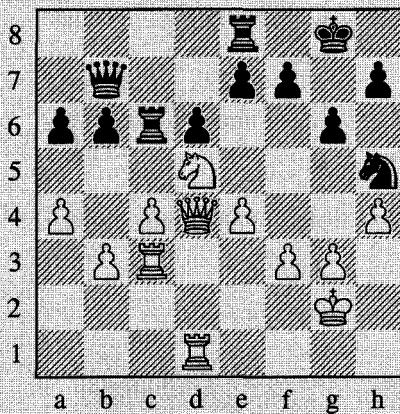
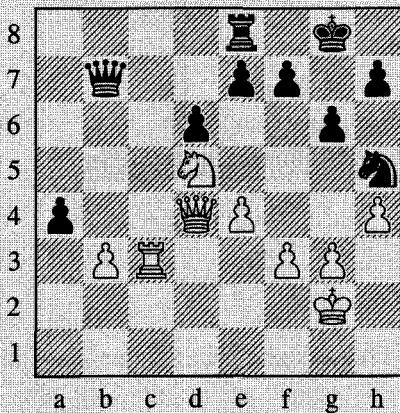


Diagram 22-2



## The passed pawn

The value of a pawn can vary during the course of a game. The nearer a pawn gets to the queening square, the more dangerous it becomes. But the way to the 8th rank must first be cleared of opposing pawns.

The value of a passed pawn is of course higher. This value becomes even greater in the endgame, when there are fewer pieces about to endanger our pawn, and thus more chances of promoting our pawn.

Diagram 22-1

M.Botvinnik – A.Lilienthal

Moscow 1936

1...b5?

This typical move is a positional mistake in this instance, as White obtains a strong outside passed pawn.

Botvinnik analysed 1... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  and now:

a) 2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$  exf6 3. $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$ ! ( $\square$ 3.h5?  $\mathbb{W}e7$  4.hxg6 hxg6 5. $\mathbb{W}d5\pm$ ) 3...d5! $\rightarrow$

b) Botvinnik's preference was the simple 2. $\mathbb{E}dc1$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  3.exd5  $\mathbb{E}c7$  4.h5 with attacking chances.

2.cxb5!

This ensures that White will get a passed pawn on the a-file.

2...axb5

After 2... $\mathbb{E}xc3$  White can just win a pawn with 3. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ , although getting a passed a-pawn by 3. $\mathbb{W}xc3$  axb5 4.a5! is even better.

3. $\mathbb{E}dc1$ 

White gain control of the c-file. The standard move 3.a5 is also good here.

3... $\mathbb{E}xc3$  4. $\mathbb{E}xc3$  bxa4

Diagram 22-2

5. $\mathbb{E}c7\!$ 

A strong intermediate move. If Black now takes the b-pawn, he will be mated: 5... $\mathbb{W}xb3$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$   $\mathbb{E}xe7$  7. $\mathbb{E}c8\#$ –

5... $\mathbb{W}b5$  6.bxa4

Botvinnik chooses a safe continuation.

6. $\mathbb{Q}xe7\#$   $\mathbb{E}xe7$  7. $\mathbb{E}xe7$  axb3 is more complicated, in view of Black's strong passed pawn. However, with

accurate play White can win. For example: 8.♕c7 ♔g7 9.♕f6 ♕e2† 10.♔h3 ♕f1† 11.♔g4 h5† 12.♔g5+– 6...♕e2†

The exchange of queens is forced because the e7-pawn is hanging.

7.♕f2 ♕xf2† 8.♔xf2

Diagram 22-3

In the endgame the white passed pawn plays a decisive role. White can support it with his rook and knight, whereas the black knight is offside.

8...e6

8...♕a8 loses to 9.♕c8†! ♕xc8 10.♔xe7†.

9.♕b6 ♕f6 10.a5 ♕b8

Diagram 22-4

11.♕c8†!

The technical phase of the game is very instructive. White exchanges rooks and sets his passed pawn in motion.

11.a6 ♕xb6 12.a7 ♕a6 13.♕c8† ♕g7 14.a8♕ ♕xa8 15.♕xa8 d5 would leave White with work still to do.

11...♕xc8 12.♕xc8 ♕e8 13.a6 ♕c7 14.a7

The threat of 15.♕b6 forces the black knight into the corner.

Diagram 22-5

14...♕a8

Black blocks the passed pawn, but loses a pawn. The ending is very easy for White, since Black has absolutely no counterplay.

15.♕xd6 ♕f8 16.e5 ♕e7 17.♔e3

The white king can either go to the queenside or penetrate on the kingside.

17...f6

If Black's king goes to the queenside, he loses his kingside pawns.

18.♔f4

Also good is 18.♕c8† ♕f7 19.♔d4+–.

18...h6 19.♕c8† ♕f7

19...♔d7 20.exf6+–

20.♔e4 ♕g7 21.♔d4 ♕c7 22.♔c5

The penetration of the white king breaks the blockade of the a-pawn.

1–0

A passed pawn can also be very dangerous in the middlegame.

Diagram 22-3

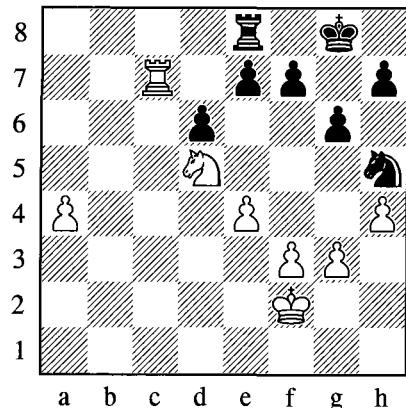


Diagram 22-4

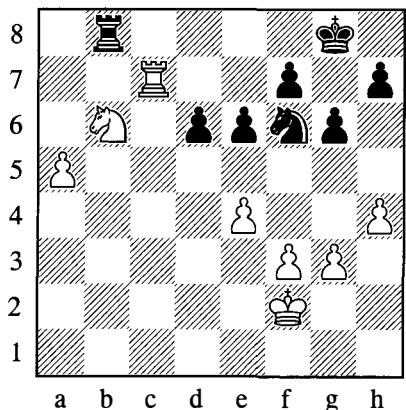
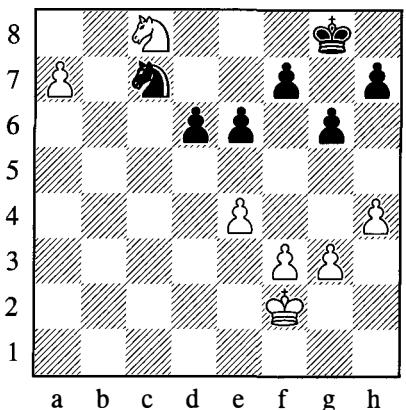


Diagram 22-5



## A.Naumann – U.Bönsch

Bundesliga 2005

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 ♗c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 e5 5.♗b5  
d6 6.♗c3 a6 7.♗a3 b5 8.♗d5 ♗ce7 9.c4 ♗xd5  
10.exd5 bxc4 11.♗xc4

Diagram 22-6

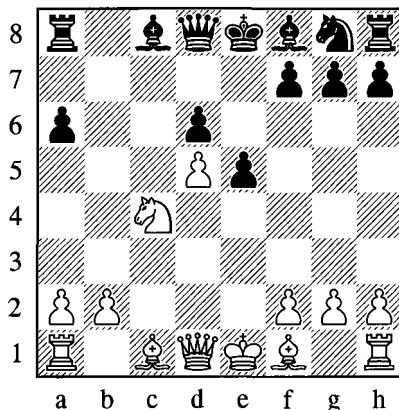


Diagram 22-6

In this line White tries his luck on the queenside. He has a pawn majority there and can create a passed pawn. Black must counter energetically in the centre.

11...♗e7

11...♗f6 is the usual move.

12.♗e3

Another option is 12.♗d2?! intending ♗a5.

12...♗b8 13.a4 ♗f6

It is questionable whether the black pieces can develop sufficient activity to provide compensation for White's queenside initiative. For that reason 13...f5 would be the principled move here.

14.♗e2 ♗b7

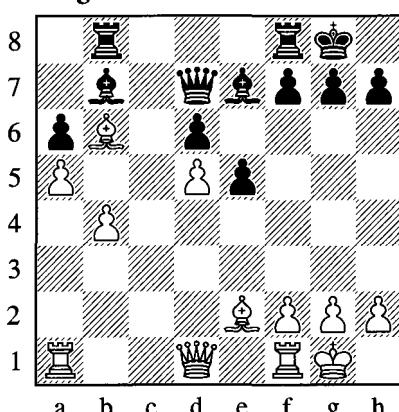
14...0-0 15.0-0 ♗f5 is an alternative, although White can continue his play on the queenside with 16.a5 followed by ♗b6.

15.♗b6 ♗d7 16.a5 ♗xb6

Black should try 16...0-0 followed by ...f5.

17.♗xb6 ♗d7 18.0-0 0-0 19.b4

Diagram 22-7



White continues to play on the queenside, and he will eventually obtain a passed pawn there. Black must seek counterplay.

19...♗bc8

Trying to exchange White's strong bishop by 19...♗d8 was a better defensive plan.

20.♗b1

The immediate 20.b5?! axb5 21.a6 ♗a8 22.♗b3 ♗b8 23.♗e3 is possible, and White has good compensation for the pawn. His passed pawn has only a couple more steps to take, although the final step is somewhat difficult to prepare.

20...♗c3

Here too, 20...♗d8?! would be an improvement, intending to meet 21.b5 with 21...♗xb6.

21.♗d2

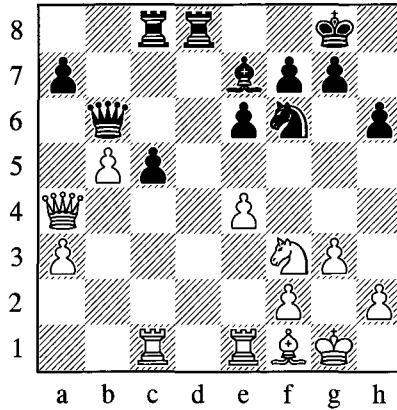
Again 21.b5 is possible.

21...♗fc8

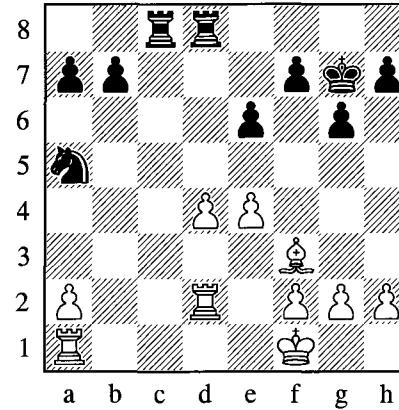


# Exercises

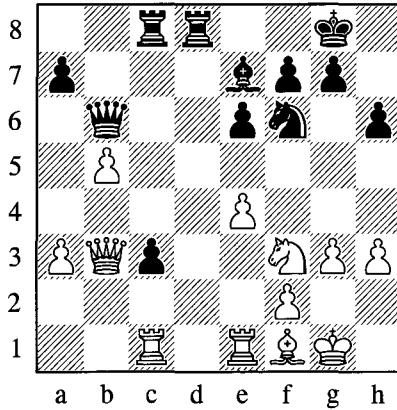
► Ex. 22-1 ◀ ★★



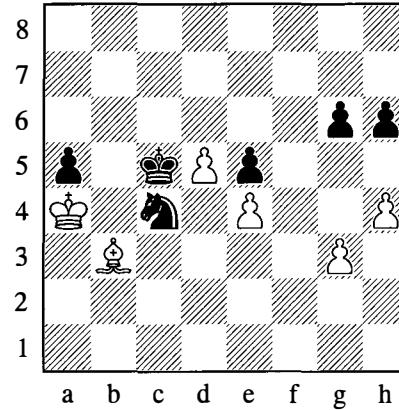
► Ex. 22-4 ◀ ★★



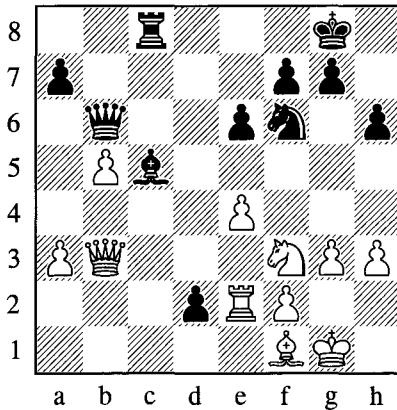
► Ex. 22-2 ◀ ★★



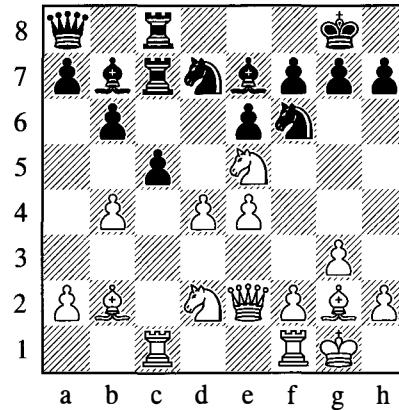
► Ex. 22-5 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 22-3 ◀ ★

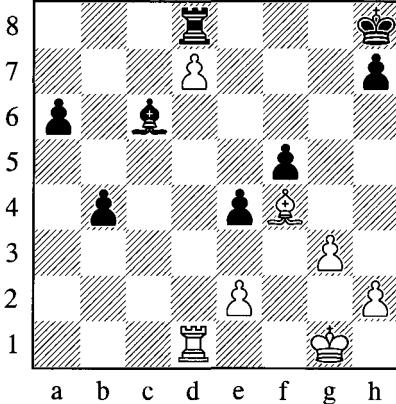


► Ex. 22-6 ◀ ★

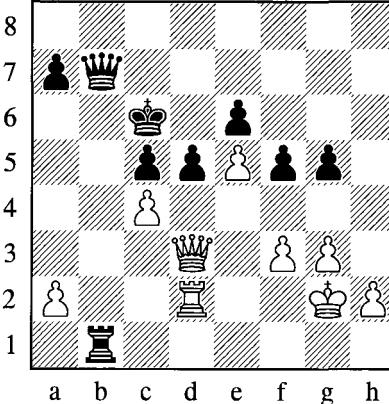


# Exercises

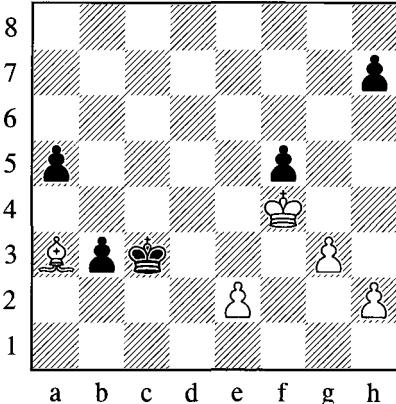
► Ex. 22-7 ◀ ★★



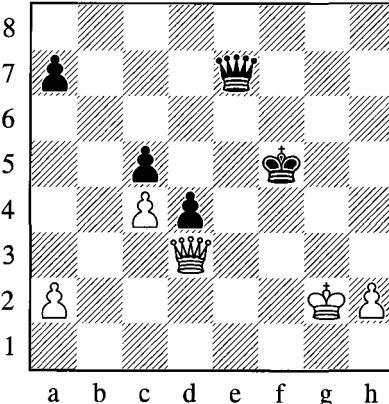
► Ex. 22-10 ◀ ★



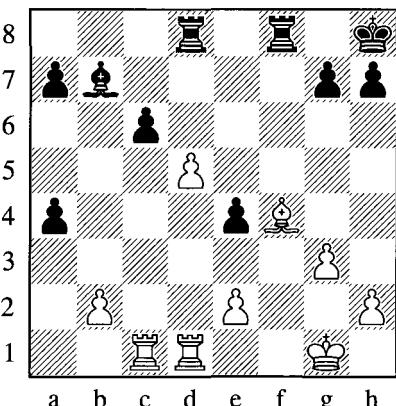
► Ex. 22-8 ◀ ★★



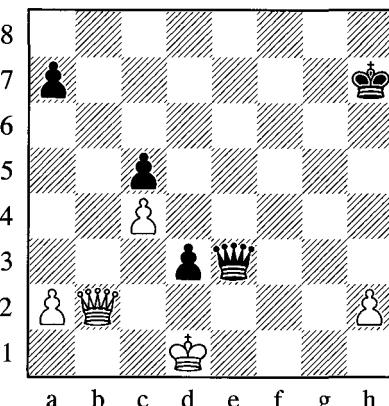
► Ex. 22-11 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 22-9 ◀ ★



► Ex. 22-12 ◀ ★★



# Solutions

## Ex. 22-1

**G.Ravinsky – V.Smyslov**

USSR Ch, Moscow 1944

1...c4!

(2 points)

By opening the a7-g1 diagonal, Black can play for an advantage.

1...Qd7 (1 consolation point) aims to redeploy the knight to the b6-square, but it is a bit passive.

2.h3?!

Taking the c-pawn looks dangerous, but maybe it could be tried:

a) 2.Qxc4 Qg4 3.Qe2 (3.Qf1 Qd3 4.Qxd3 Qxc1+) 3...Qd3! Black has a strong attack.

b) 2.Qxc4 Qg4 3.Qe2 Qxc4 4.Qxc4 Qc5 5.Qc2 Qxb5 Black has regained the pawn and has the initiative.

2...c3 3.Qb3?!

3.Qg2? would limit Black's advantage.

See Ex. 22-2.

## Ex. 22-2

**G.Ravinsky – V.Smyslov**

USSR Ch, Moscow 1944

1...Qc5!

(1 point)

2.Qc2

2.Qxc3 Qxf2? –

2...Qd2!

(another 1 point)

3.Qxd2 cxd2 4.Qe2+ –

See Ex. 22-3.

## Ex. 22-3

**G.Ravinsky – V.Smyslov**

USSR Ch, Moscow 1944

1...Qxf2?!

(1 point)

1...Qd8? is much weaker: 2.Qxd2 Qxf2?!

3.Qg2?

2.Qg2

2.Qxf2 Qxe4+ –

2...Qc3

2...Qe1 is also very strong: 3.Qxe1 Qxe4 4.Qf3 (4.Qxe4 Qc1+) 4...Qc3 5.Qd1 Qc1+ –

3.Qd1 Qe3+ 4.Qxd2 Qd4! 5.Qe1 Qxe4

6.Qxe4 Qxe4† 7.Qh2 Qd4 8.Qg2 Qc1

9.Qe2 Qa1 10.Qxe3 Qxf1 11.g4 Qe1

12.Qe2

0–1

## Ex. 22-4

**E.Eliksases – S.Flohr**

Semmering/Baden 1937

1...e5!

(2 points)

Black enforces the blockade of the white centre. On the queenside he will be able to create a passed pawn at will.

1...Qc4 (1 point) is not so accurate; after 2.Qdd1 e5 3.dxe5 the game is unclear.

2.d5

2.Qad1? loses material to 2...Qc4.

2...Qc4! 3.Qe2 Qd6† 4.Qb1 Qc4 5.g3 Qdc8

6.Qg2 Qc1†?!

Black does not need to rush to exchange rooks. He could also consider 6...Qf8!? intending ...Qe7 and ...b5.

7.Qxc1 Qxc1† 8.Qe1 Qxe1† 9.Qxe1 f5 10.Qf3 fxe4 11.Qxe4 b5 12.Qd2 a5 13.Qd3 Qf6 14.Qf3 Qe7 15.h4 h6 16.Qd1 Qd8 17.a4 bxa4

17...b4? is also good.

18.Qxa4 Qc7 19.Qc2 Qb6 20.Qc3 Qb5

21.Qb3 Qc5 22.Qa4 Qc4 23.Qb3?

Either 23.Qb1 or 23.Qb3 is more resilient.

See Ex. 22-5.

## Ex. 22-5

**E.Eliksases – S.Flohr**

Semmering/Baden 1937

1...Qd2?!

(2 points)

Using the a-pawn to deflect his opponent,

# Solutions

Black will attack the white kingside pawns.

2.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}f1$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xa5$

3.  $g4$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$ +

3...  $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$ ?

It is better to use the knight to target the  $h4$ -pawn: 4...  $\mathbb{Q}e2$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}d4\uparrow$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}f3\mp$

5.  $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}b4$ ?

A decisive error. White could still save the game with 6.  $\mathbb{Q}b2!$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  8.  $d6$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$

9.  $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  10.  $d7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7=$ .

6...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  7.  $d6$   $g5$  8.  $hxg5$   $hxg5$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $g4$

10.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $g3$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}f2$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$

$g2$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  15.  $d7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$

$\mathbb{Q}f3$

0-1

## Ex. 22-6

A. Alekhine – P. Keres

Munich 1942

1.  $dx5$   $bx5$  2.  $b5\pm$

(1 point)

With this standard idea, White ensures that he will be able to create a passed pawn on the queenside.

2...  $a6$

Or 2...  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  4.  $f3\pm$  and White will continue with  $\mathbb{Q}c4$ .

3.  $a4$   $axb5$  4.  $axb5$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}ec4\pm$

5.  $\mathbb{Q}dc4\pm$  is also strong.

5...  $\mathbb{Q}a8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $gxf6$

6...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  7.  $b6\pm$

6...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}b6\pm$

7.  $b6$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  8.  $e5$

8.  $\mathbb{Q}b1\pm$  and 8.  $\mathbb{Q}a1\pm$  are also good.

8...  $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}xb7$

11.  $exf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}g4\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$

14.  $\mathbb{Q}f4\pm$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$

15...  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  (16.  $\mathbb{Q}d4\uparrow\uparrow$   $e5\uparrow\uparrow$ )

16...  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}g5\uparrow\uparrow$

16.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}xf4$

1-0

## Ex. 22-7

P. Keres – K. Richter

Munich Olympiad 1936

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$ !

(2 points)

A tactical solution. White will win a piece by a pin.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}b5$  loses to 2.  $\mathbb{Q}c8$ .

2.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $b3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  stops the bishop going to  $e5$ , but White can still win: 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $b2$  (4...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $a5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}a7$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\uparrow\uparrow$ ) 5.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $a5$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\uparrow\uparrow$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd7$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d6\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}a3\pm$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $e3\uparrow$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}c3$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $a5$

See Ex. 22-8.

## Ex. 22-8

P. Keres – K. Richter

Munich Olympiad 1936

1.  $g4!$

(1 point)

This wins a tempo in the pawn race.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  is less accurate: 1...  $b2$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xb2\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  3.  $e4$   $a4$  4.  $e5$   $a3$  5.  $e6$   $a2$  6.  $e7$   $a1\mathbb{Q}$  7.  $e8\mathbb{Q}\pm$  1...  $fxg4$  2.  $e4$   $a4$  3.  $e5$   $b2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xb2\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  5.  $e6$   $a3$  6.  $e7$   $a2$  7.  $e8\mathbb{Q}$   $a1\mathbb{Q}$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}a2$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xa1\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}xa1$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$   $\mathbb{Q}b2$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}c3$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}h6$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}g6$

1-0

(another 1 point for the whole variation)

## Ex. 22-9

P. Keres – K. Richter

Munich Olympiad 1936

1.  $d6!$

(1 point)

Nothing is achieved by 1.  $dx6?$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1\uparrow$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6\mp$ .

# Solutions

2... $\mathbb{E}f5$  3. $\mathbb{E}c4$  c5!?

If 3...g5 4. $\mathbb{E}e3$   $\mathbb{E}d5$ ? then 5. $\mathbb{E}xd5$  cxd5 6. $\mathbb{E}c7$ —.

4. $\mathbb{E}xa4$  a6 5. $\mathbb{E}a5$  g6 6.b4! cxb4 7. $\mathbb{E}xf5$  gx5 8.d7  $\mathbb{E}c6$

See Ex. 22-7.

## Ex. 22-10

P.Heuäcker – E.Eliskases

Vienna 1932

1...d4!

(1 point)

Black creates a protected passed pawn and secures his king.

2.g4  $\mathbb{E}e1$ !?

2...fxg4 is equally possible.

3.gxf5  $\mathbb{E}xe5$  4. $\mathbb{E}e2$   $\mathbb{E}d6$  5. $\mathbb{E}xe5$   $\mathbb{E}xe5$  6.fxe6 g4! 7.e7 gxf3† 8. $\mathbb{E}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}xe7$  9. $\mathbb{W}g3$ †  $\mathbb{E}f5$  10. $\mathbb{W}h3$ †

For 10. $\mathbb{W}d3$ † see Ex.22-11.

10... $\mathbb{E}g6$  11. $\mathbb{W}d3$ †  $\mathbb{E}g7$  12. $\mathbb{W}g3$ †  $\mathbb{E}h8$  13. $\mathbb{W}b8$ †

After 13. $\mathbb{W}h3$ †  $\mathbb{W}h7$  14. $\mathbb{W}c8$ † Black is happy to exchange queens with 14... $\mathbb{W}g8$ !—+, as the protected passed pawn is a force to be reckoned with in the pawn ending.

13... $\mathbb{W}h7$  14. $\mathbb{W}b3$

14. $\mathbb{W}b1$ †  $\mathbb{E}g7$  15. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{W}e5$ —

14... $\mathbb{W}e4$ ! 15. $\mathbb{E}f2$  d3 16. $\mathbb{W}b2$   $\mathbb{W}f4$ †

17. $\mathbb{E}e1$

17. $\mathbb{E}g2$   $\mathbb{W}xc4$  18. $\mathbb{W}b7$ †  $\mathbb{E}g6$  19. $\mathbb{W}c6$ †  $\mathbb{E}g5$ —

17... $\mathbb{W}e3$ ! 18. $\mathbb{E}d1$

Or 18. $\mathbb{E}f1$   $\mathbb{W}f3$ † and now:

a) 19. $\mathbb{W}f2$   $\mathbb{W}h1$ † 20. $\mathbb{W}g1$   $\mathbb{W}xg1$ † 21. $\mathbb{E}xg1$  d2—

b) 19. $\mathbb{E}e1$   $\mathbb{W}h1$ !—

c) 19. $\mathbb{E}g1$   $\mathbb{W}d1$ † 20. $\mathbb{E}f2$   $\mathbb{W}c2$ !—

See Ex. 22-12.

## Ex. 22-11

Variation from the game

P.Heuäcker – E.Eliskases

Vienna 1932

1... $\mathbb{W}e4$ !—+

(2 points)

The transition to a pawn ending decides the game.

2. $\mathbb{W}xe4$ †

The same ending is reached after 2. $\mathbb{W}f3$ †.

2... $\mathbb{E}xe4$  3. $\mathbb{E}f2$   $\mathbb{E}d3$

Black can also win with: 3... $\mathbb{E}f4$  4. $\mathbb{E}e2$   $\mathbb{E}g4$  5. $\mathbb{E}f2$   $\mathbb{E}h3$  6. $\mathbb{E}g1$  d3 7. $\mathbb{E}f2$   $\mathbb{E}xh2$  8. $\mathbb{E}e3$   $\mathbb{E}g3$  9. $\mathbb{E}xd3$   $\mathbb{E}f4$ — Play has transposed back into the game continuation (see Ex. 22-12).

4.h4  $\mathbb{E}c3$  5.h5 d3 6.h6 d2 7.h7 d1 $\mathbb{W}$  8.h8 $\mathbb{W}$ †  $\mathbb{W}d4$ † 9. $\mathbb{W}xd4$ †  $\mathbb{W}xd4$ —

## Ex. 22-12

P.Heuäcker – E.Eliskases

Vienna 1932

The simplest solution is the transition to a pawn ending.

1... $\mathbb{W}g1$ † 2. $\mathbb{E}d2$   $\mathbb{W}xh2$ † 3. $\mathbb{E}c3$   $\mathbb{W}xb2$ † 4. $\mathbb{E}xb2$   $\mathbb{E}g6$  5. $\mathbb{E}c3$   $\mathbb{E}f5$  6. $\mathbb{E}xd3$   $\mathbb{E}f4$ —

(2 points)

Black wins the c-pawn and after that the game, because his pawn is still on a7!

7. $\mathbb{E}c2$   $\mathbb{E}e4$  8. $\mathbb{E}c3$   $\mathbb{E}e3$  9. $\mathbb{E}b3$   $\mathbb{E}d3$  10. $\mathbb{E}b2$   $\mathbb{E}xc4$  11. $\mathbb{E}c2$   $\mathbb{E}d4$  12. $\mathbb{E}d2$  c4 13. $\mathbb{E}c2$  c3 14. $\mathbb{E}c1$   $\mathbb{E}d3$  15. $\mathbb{E}d1$  c2† 16. $\mathbb{E}c1$   $\mathbb{E}c3$

17.a3

17.a4 a6!—

17...a5!

0-1

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **20**

- 17 points and above → **Excellent**
- 14 points and above → **Good**
- 10 points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **10** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Coordination of the major pieces
- ✓ Typical tactical ideas

## Combinations involving files

In this chapter we shall take another look at combinations in which it is the major pieces acting along files that play a decisive role. It is important to point out that **the major pieces can best make their influence felt in open positions, and in particular when the opponent's castled position has been destroyed.**

Here are some examples which illustrate typical ideas.

Diagram 23-1

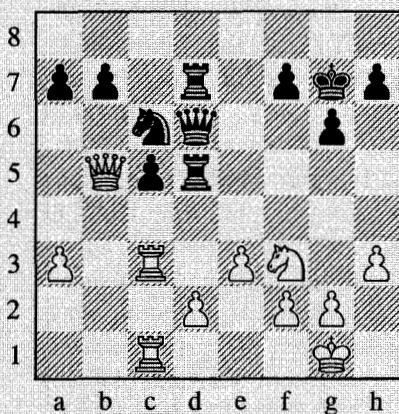


Diagram 23-1

S.Kagan – L.Shmuter

Tel Aviv 1995

1... $\mathbb{Q}d4!!$

This sacrifice is the preparation for a double attack. From a practical viewpoint, White has to accept the sacrifice, because otherwise his castled position will be destroyed after 2... $\mathbb{Q}xf3\#$ .

2. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$

2... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  3. $\mathbb{R}c5$   $\mathbb{R}c7!$  4. $exd4$   $b6-+$

2... $\mathbb{R}xd4$

Black is attacking the queen and the rook. But what happens if White uses the rook to block the attack on his queen?

3. $\mathbb{R}c5$   $\mathbb{R}c7!$

The point of the combination. The c5-rook is pinned in two directions, and White loses a rook or a queen. This tactical motif has its own name: the Maltese Cross.

3. $\mathbb{R}xc7$

3... $\mathbb{R}xd5$   $\mathbb{R}xc1\#$

3... $\mathbb{R}xb5+$

Diagram 23-2

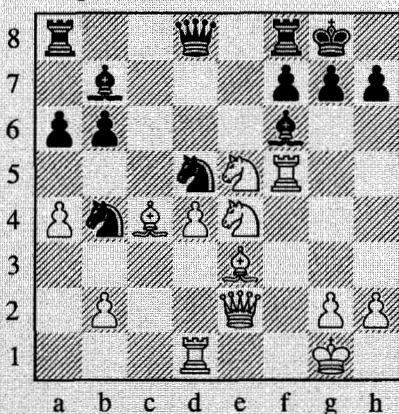


Diagram 23-2

B.Spassky – Y.Nikolaevsky

1963

1... $\mathbb{Q}xe3?$

Black wants to simplify the position, but White can

seize the opportunity to open up his king.

Instead 1...b5 was worth considering.

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\text{!}$

Black was hoping for 2.  $\mathbb{W}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  3.  $\mathbb{B}xe5$   $\mathbb{B}c8\pm$ .

2...  $\mathbb{g}xf6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xe3$   $\mathbb{f}xe5$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xe5$

Threatening  $\mathbb{B}g5\text{!}$ .

White must play precisely; the tempting 4.  $\mathbb{W}h6?$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  5.  $\mathbb{B}h5$  can be answered by 5...  $\mathbb{Q}e4$ .

4...  $\mathbb{h}6$  5.  $\mathbb{B}f6$

Now the threat is  $\mathbb{B}g6\text{!}$ .

5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7\text{!}$  is also good: 5...  $\mathbb{B}xf7$  6.  $\mathbb{B}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  7.  $\mathbb{B}f1\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  (7...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  8.  $\mathbb{W}e6\text{!+-}$ ) 8.  $\mathbb{W}e6\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  9.  $\mathbb{W}xh6\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  10.  $\mathbb{W}g6\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  11.  $\mathbb{W}h5\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  12.  $\mathbb{W}g4\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  13.  $\mathbb{B}f7\text{+-}$

5...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$

If 5...  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  then 6.  $\mathbb{W}g3\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d3\text{!+-}$ .

5...  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  is no better: 6.  $\mathbb{B}xh6$   $f6$  7.  $\mathbb{W}g3\text{!}$  (or 7.  $\mathbb{W}h5\text{!+-}$ ) 7...  $\mathbb{B}f7$  8.  $\mathbb{B}h7\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  9.  $\mathbb{B}e1\text{!+-}$

6.  $\mathbb{B}df1\text{!+-}$

Black now must protect the pawn on f7.

6...  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  7.  $\mathbb{B}f5\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$

Diagram 23-3

8.  $\mathbb{W}g4\text{!}$

A typical attack by the major pieces.

8...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  9.  $\mathbb{B}xh6\text{!}$

The last shield falls.

9...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  10.  $\mathbb{B}f5$

Black has no defence against mate along the files.

1-0

Diagram 23-4

Karlson – Iljushenko

1972

White attacks down the open f-file.

1.  $\mathbb{W}f7\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c3\text{!}$

This prepares a mating finish.

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f8\text{!}$  is also good:

a) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}d3\text{!}$  3.  $\mathbb{cxd3}$   $\mathbb{Q}b2\text{!}$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xb2$   $\mathbb{W}b6\text{!}$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{W}c7\text{!}$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{W}c3$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\text{!}$   $\mathbb{W}xg7$  8.  $\mathbb{W}e8\text{!+-}$

b) 2...  $\mathbb{Q}c3$  3.  $\mathbb{B}f6\text{!+-}$

c) 2...  $\mathbb{W}xf8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf8\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  4.  $\mathbb{B}xf8\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{B}hf1\text{!+-}$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}c3$

If 2...  $d4$  then 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4\text{!+-}$ .

3.  $\mathbb{W}f8\text{!}$   $\mathbb{W}xf8$  4.  $\mathbb{B}xf8\text{!}$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.  $\mathbb{B}hf1$

Diagram 23-3

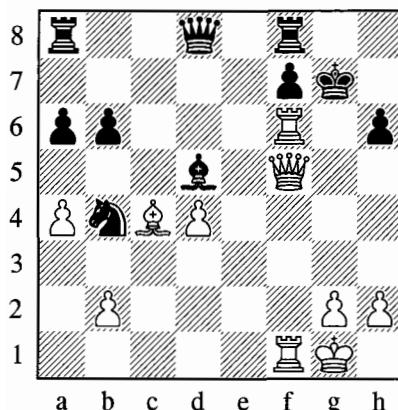
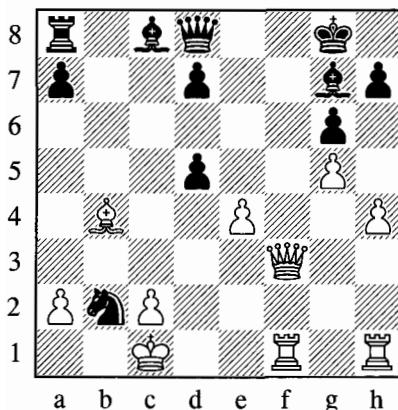


Diagram 22-4



## Tactics 11

Black cannot parry the threat of  $\mathbb{E}1f7\#$ .

5... $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$

But not 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd2?$   $\mathbb{Q}c4\#$  followed by 7... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ .

1-0

Diagram 23-5

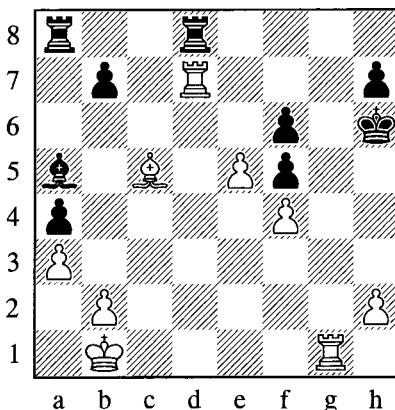


Diagram 23-6

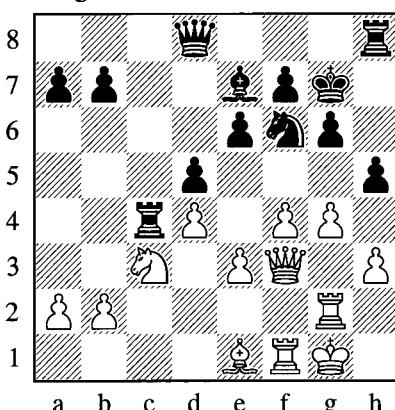


Diagram 23-7

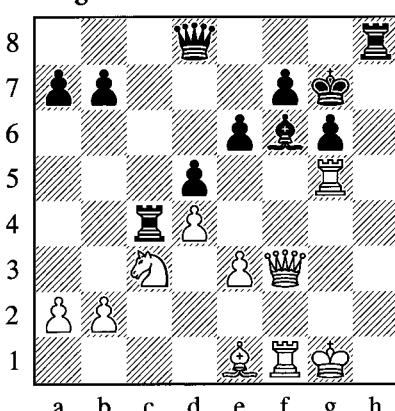


Diagram 23-5

L.Polugaevsky – G.Szilagyi

Moscow 1960

Another example which shows how strong the two rooks can be.

1. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$ !

Most forcing, although 1. $\mathbb{E}f7$  also wins.

1... $\mathbb{E}xf8$  2. $\mathbb{E}d3!$

Black can only briefly delay the mate on the h-file:  
2... $\mathbb{Q}e1$  3. $\mathbb{E}h3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  4. $\mathbb{E}xh4\#$

1-0

Diagram 23-6

A.Yusupov – D.Fridman

Arnhem (rapid) 2006

1. $f5!$

White must open files on the kingside in order to attack the black king.

1... $\mathbb{h}xg4$  2. $\mathbb{h}xg4$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$

Suddenly things look dangerous for White, since ... $\mathbb{Q}g5$  appears to be rather unpleasant.

3. $f6\#$ !

White is willing to sacrifice his kingside pawns to open the files for his rooks.

3... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4. $g5$   $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  5. $\mathbb{E}xg5!$

Diagram 23-7

The key move. If Black takes the rook, his king will come under attack.

5... $\mathbb{E}xd4?$

An interesting resource, but it should not save Black. However, rapid games have their own laws...

5... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  would be followed by: 6. $\mathbb{W}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  7. $\mathbb{E}f3$  (7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  8. $\mathbb{E}h1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  9. $\mathbb{W}xe6$   $\mathbb{E}xh1$  10. $\mathbb{W}xe3\#$ ) 7... $\mathbb{Q}h4$  8. $\mathbb{E}h3$   $g5$  9. $e4!$  (stronger than 9. $\mathbb{E}f3$   $\mathbb{E}f8!$  or 9. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{E}g8!$ ) 9... $\mathbb{E}xd4$  (9... $\mathbb{E}f8$  10. $\mathbb{E}xh4\#$   $gxh4$  11. $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$ ) 10. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$   $\mathbb{E}d3$  11. $\mathbb{W}xe6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  12. $\mathbb{E}xd3\#$

6. $\mathbb{E}g2$

Of course not 6.exd4? ♖xd4† 7.♗g2 ♖xg5†+.

However, 6.♗g3! ♖xg5 7.♗xf7† ♖h6 8.exd4+– would have been simpler.

6...♝c4 7.♗g3

Threatening ♖e5.

7...♝h3 8.♗f2

White can now force penetration via the f-file.

8...♝g8

Diagram 23-8

9.♗g2?

In time trouble White does not see the trap. After the simple 9.♗e2! Black could easily have resigned.

9...♝xg3†! 10.♖xg3 ♖h4

The position has become unclear, and after further errors from both sides the game ended in a draw.

Please now try to solve the following five positions. Take a maximum of ten minutes per position. If you have not found the solution, then keep at it for a further ten minutes, looking for new, active ideas in the position.

Diagram 23-9

V.Smyslov – S.Flohr

USSR Ch, Moscow 1949

1.♗g6†!

1...♝b7† is also good: 1...♝g6 2.♗g8† ♖h5 3.♗xh7† ♖g4 4.c7 e3 5.c8♛ ♖xc8 6.♗xc8+–

1...hxg6

Or 1...♝xg6 2.♗g8† ♖f7 3.♗bg1 ♖xc6 4.♗1g7#.

2.♗b7#

Diagram 23-8

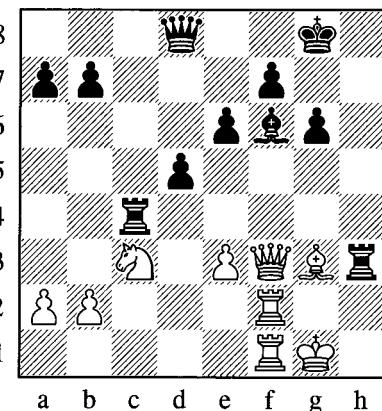


Diagram 23-9

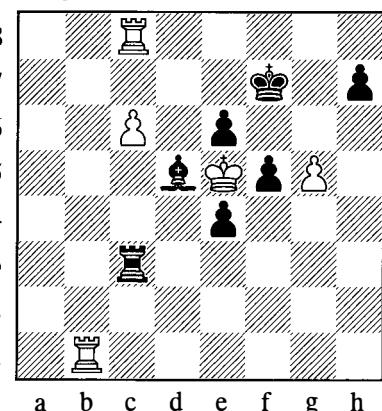


Diagram 23-10

F.Gragger – B.De Bruycker

Germany 1976

1...♝c1†! 2.♗e2 ♖f4†!

The point.

3.gxf4 ♖g2† 4.♗e3 ♖e1#

Diagram 23-10

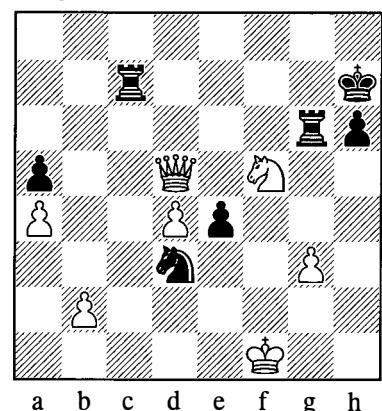


Diagram 23-11

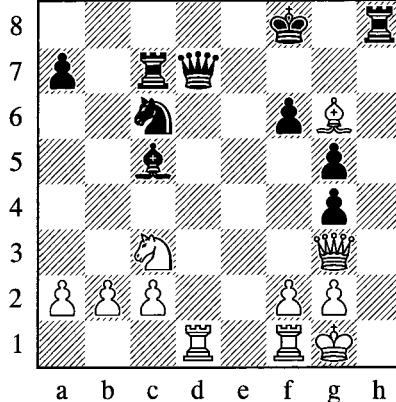


Diagram 23-12

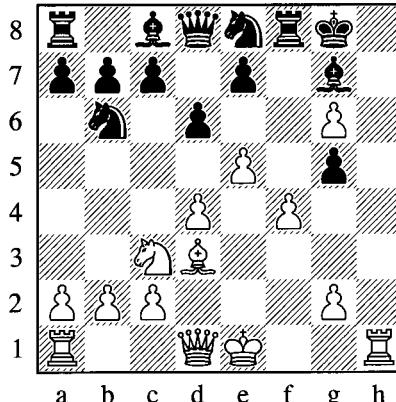


Diagram 23-13

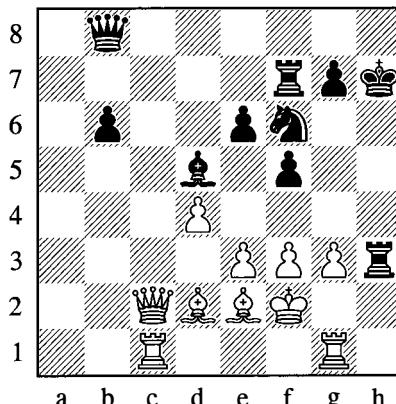


Diagram 23-11

Krafford – Takker

1960

Black utilizes the open h-file.

1... $\mathbb{W}h7!!$ After 2. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$   $\mathbb{B}cxh7$  White must give up his queen to prevent mate.

0–1

Diagram 23-12

Nettheim – D.Hamilton

Correspondence game 1961

1. $\mathbb{E}h8\#!$ 

A standard idea.

1. $\mathbb{W}h5$  is weaker, because after 1... $\mathbb{E}xf4\#$  there is no mate.1... $\mathbb{Q}xh8$ 1... $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  met by 2. $\mathbb{W}h5\#$  3. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$ .2. $\mathbb{W}h5$ 

1–0

The following variations show that White can rapidly deliver mate:

a) 2... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3. $\mathbb{E}xf6$   $\mathbb{E}f7$  4. $\mathbb{g}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g6$  (or 5. $\mathbb{Q}xh8\#$ ) 5... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  6. $\mathbb{W}h7$  e5 7. $\mathbb{W}g8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8. $\mathbb{W}e8\#$   $\mathbb{W}xe8$  9. $\mathbb{f}xe8\#$ b) 2... $\mathbb{E}f7$  3. $\mathbb{g}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  4. $\mathbb{f}xe8\#$   $\mathbb{W}xe8$  5. $\mathbb{W}xh8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  6. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  7. $\mathbb{W}h6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  8. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  9. $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  10. $\mathbb{W}h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  11. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ 

Diagram 23-13

L.Portisch – R.Hüibner

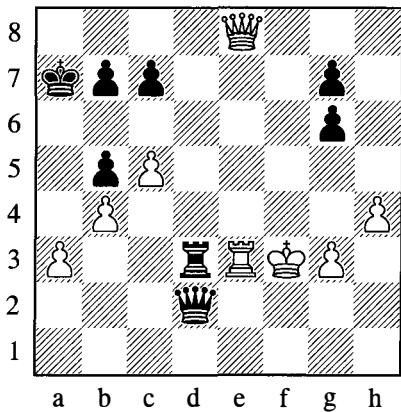
Bugojno 1978

1... $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$ ! 2. $\mathbb{f}xe4$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e1$  is somewhat more resilient, although the simple 2... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  gives Black a decisive advantage.2... $\mathbb{f}xe4\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}xg3\#$ !We have already seen this mating motif: 4. $\mathbb{E}xg3$   $\mathbb{E}h1\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{E}hxg1\#$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{E}7f2\#$ 

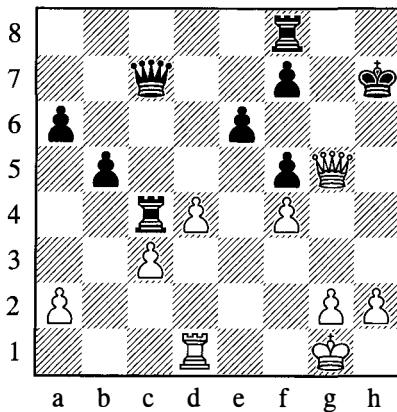
0–1

# Exercises

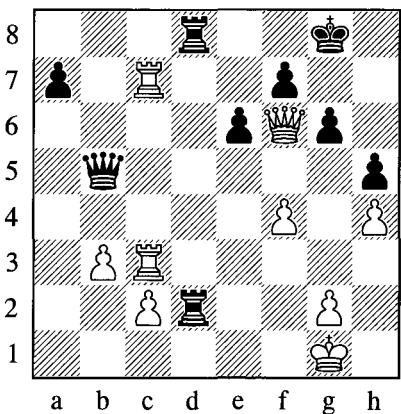
► Ex. 23-1 ◀ ★★



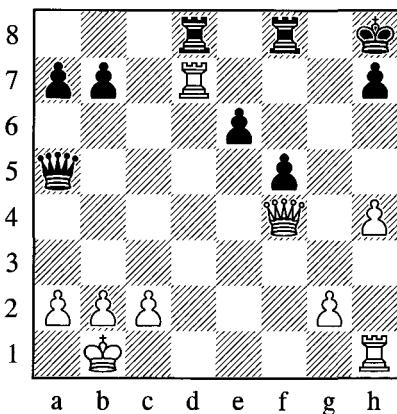
► Ex. 23-4 ◀ ★★



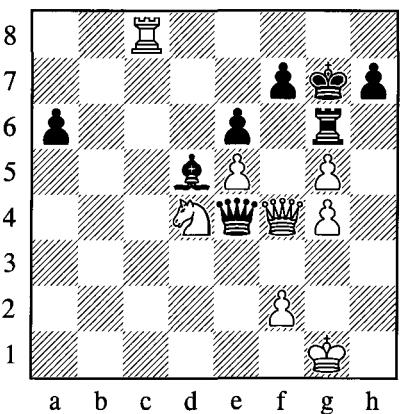
► Ex. 23-2 ◀ ★



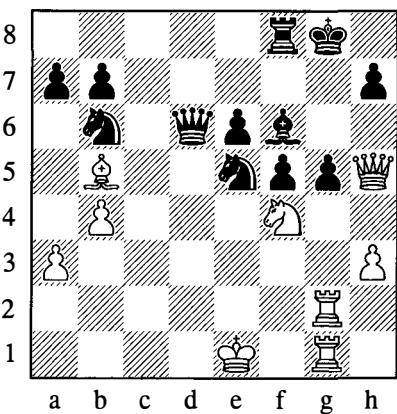
► Ex. 23-5 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 23-3 ◀ ★



► Ex. 23-6 ◀ ★★

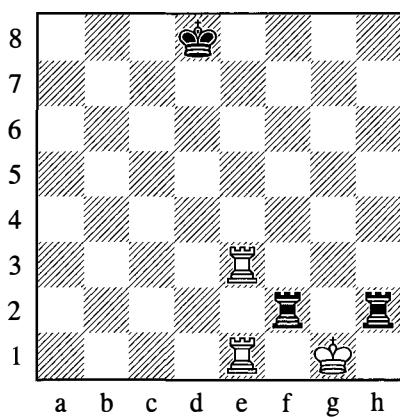


# Exercises

► Ex. 23-7 ◀

★★★

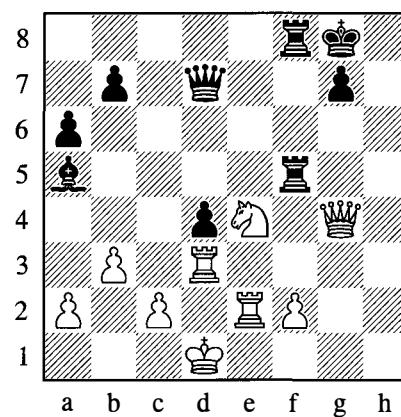
△



► Ex. 23-10 ◀

★★

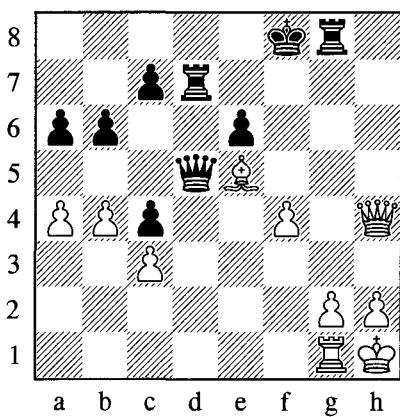
▼



► Ex. 23-8 ◀

★

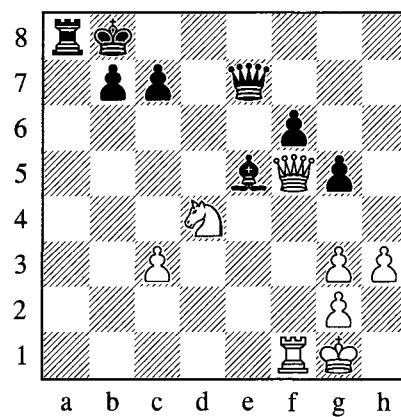
▼



► Ex. 23-11 ◀

★★

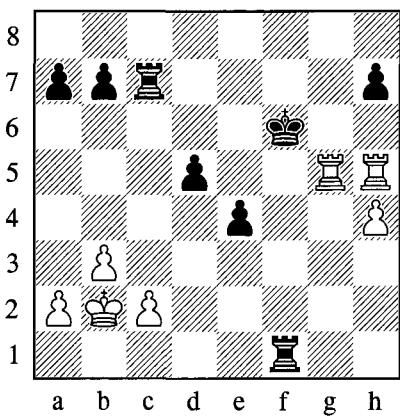
△



► Ex. 23-9 ◀

★★

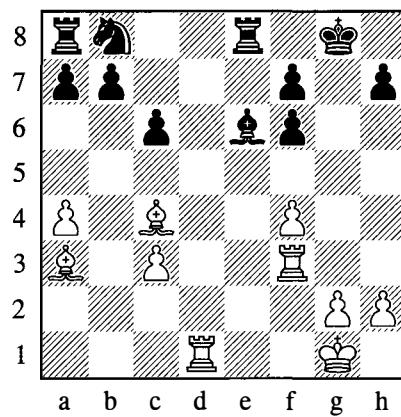
△



► Ex. 23-12 ◀

★

△



# Solutions

## Ex. 23-1

N.N. – J.Koksal

1928

1... $\mathbb{W}e1!!$

(1 point)

The Maltese Cross.

On the other hand, 1... $\mathbb{W}d1\#$  achieves nothing after 2. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e2=$ .

2. $\mathbb{W}e5$

Other moves are no better:

a) 2. $\mathbb{W}e6$   $\mathbb{W}f1\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$  (3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$   $\mathbb{W}e1\#$ –) 3... $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  4. $\mathbb{W}xe3$   $\mathbb{W}f5\#$

b) 2. $g4$   $\mathbb{W}f1\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}e2$  (3... $\mathbb{Q}d2$  is also winning) 4. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{W}f2\#$ –

2... $\mathbb{W}f1\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}e4$

3. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  4. $\mathbb{W}xe3$   $\mathbb{W}f5\#$

(another 1 point for this variation)

3... $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$ !!

(another 1 point)

It is mate next move after 4. $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{W}f5\#$  or 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{W}c4\#$ .

0–1

## Ex. 23-2

G.Bastrikov – G.Lisitsin

Leningrad 1955

Black has a forced mate.

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg2\#$ ! 2. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{W}e2\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}g4\#$

4. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$

0–1

(1 point)

## Ex. 23-3

T.Fomina – Zaitseva

1978

1. $\mathbb{W}f6\#$ !

(1 point)

The finish will be 1... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  2. $exf6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$ .

1–0

## Ex. 23-4

Gunnar – Ionas

1960

1. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

(1 point)

1–0

Black can only delay mate: 1... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  2. $\mathbb{W}h4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3. $\mathbb{W}g3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$

(another 1 point)

4... $\mathbb{W}d8$  5. $\mathbb{W}h3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6. $\mathbb{W}g3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  7. $\mathbb{W}h4\#$

## Ex. 23-5

Ljaska – Ikart

1974

1. $\mathbb{W}h6!$

(2 points)

This wins immediately.

1. $\mathbb{W}d4\#$  e5 2. $\mathbb{W}d6\#$ – (1 point) also wins, but is less forcing.

1–0

## Ex. 23-6

D.Velimirovic – A.Gipslis

Havana 1971

1. $\mathbb{Q}xg5\#$ !

(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}h8$

1... $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  2. $\mathbb{W}xg5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  (2... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$  or 2... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  3. $\mathbb{W}g7\#$ ) 3. $\mathbb{Q}xg6\#$ –

2. $\mathbb{W}xh7\#$ !

(another 1 point)

2... $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  is met by 3. $\mathbb{Q}h5\#$ .

1–0

## Ex. 23-7

L.Prokes

1940

1. $\mathbb{Q}d1\#$ !

(1 point)

But not 1. $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}c1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b3\#$

# Solutions

$\mathbb{Q}a5$  4.  $\mathbb{E}a1\#$   $\mathbb{E}a2$  5.  $\mathbb{E}a3\#$  6.  $\mathbb{E}xa3\#$   
 $\mathbb{Q}b4=.$

(another 1 point for this variation)  
1...  $\mathbb{Q}c7$

1...  $\mathbb{E}d2$  2.  $\mathbb{E}d3\#$   
2.  $\mathbb{E}c3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  3.  $\mathbb{E}b1\#$   $\mathbb{E}b2$   
3...  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  4.  $\mathbb{E}a3\#$   
4.  $\mathbb{E}b3\#$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 23-8

**Kubart – Mard**

1957

1...  $\mathbb{W}xg2\#$ ! 2.  $\mathbb{E}xg2$   $\mathbb{E}d1\#$   
0-1

(1 point)

## Ex. 23-9

**Schmid – Gofman**

Luhacovice 1958

1.  $\mathbb{E}h6\#$ !

(1 point)

The white rooks begin a dangerous hunt, with the black king as the quarry.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  2.  $\mathbb{E}g7\#$

Less convincing is 2.  $\mathbb{E}xh7\#$   $\mathbb{E}f7$ .

2...  $\mathbb{Q}d8$

2...  $\mathbb{E}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{E}xf7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  4.  $\mathbb{E}xh7\#$

3.  $\mathbb{E}d6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  4.  $\mathbb{E}g8\#$

1-0

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 23-10

**D.Stellwagen – A.Yusupov**

Apeldoorn (rapid) 2005

1...  $\mathbb{E}xf2!$

(2 points)

A surprising strike.

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  is met by 2...  $\mathbb{W}xg4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$   $\mathbb{E}f1\#$   
4.  $\mathbb{E}e1$   $\mathbb{E}xe1\#$ .

And 2.  $\mathbb{W}xd7$   $\mathbb{E}f1\#$  leads to the same mate.

0-1

## Ex. 23-11

**Domuls – Steierman**

1972

White has a forced mate.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$ !

(1 point)

1...  $\mathbb{b}xc6$  2.  $\mathbb{E}b1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f2\#$

1-0

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 23-12

**M.Chigorin – S.Lebedev**

Russian Ch, Moscow 1901

1.  $\mathbb{E}g3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$

(1 point)

2...  $\mathbb{h}5$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  3.  $\mathbb{E}xd7\#$

2...  $\mathbb{E}xe7$  3.  $\mathbb{E}d8\#$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$

Black will be mated on the h-file: 3...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$   
4.  $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$

1-0

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **22**

- **19** points and above → **Excellent**
- **15** points and above → **Good**
- **11** points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **11** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

## Contents

- ✓ Evaluation of the endgame
- ✓ Important drawn positions
- ✓ Winning methods

Diagram 24-1

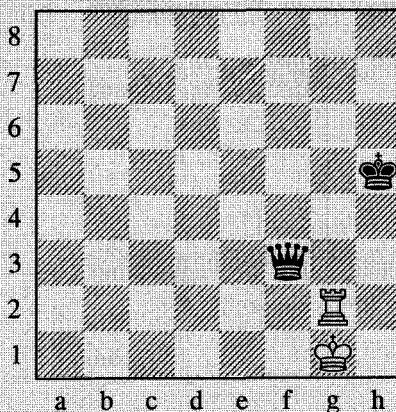
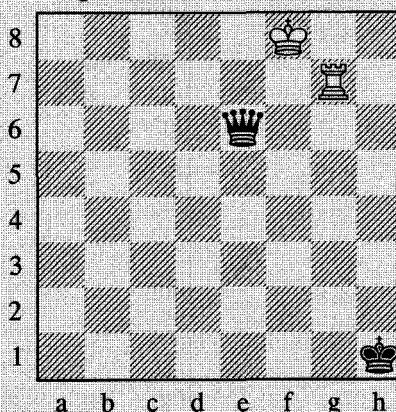


Diagram 24-2



## Queen against rook

In this chapter we shall examine the elementary ending of queen against rook (without pawns). This ending is usually a win for the stronger side, although the route to the win can be long and complicated. 'The exceptions are those cases in which the king does not manage to escape the checks, on account of stalemate or the loss of the queen.' – Dvoretsky

Diagram 24-1

C.Cozio

1766

An important drawn position. White exploits the black king being on the edge of the board along with the unfortunate placement of the queen on a neighbouring file. (Note that the position would also be drawn even with the queen on f5 or further back on the f-file.)

1.  $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h3$

If the king goes to the f-file, Black loses the queen:  
2...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f2=$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g3$

Otherwise Black cannot make any progress.

4.  $\mathbb{Q}h3\#!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh3$  stalemate

Diagram 24-2

D.Ponziani

1782

Here the black king has an additional file at its disposal. However, because of the unfortunate position of the black queen on e6, White can organize a defence.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g2$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$

The e-file is taboo: 3...  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e7=$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$

6...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  also leads to a draw after 7.  $\mathbb{Q}g6\#!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg6$  stalemate.

7.  $\mathbb{Q}h7\#!$

Black cannot make progress.

7...  $\mathbb{Q}xh7$  stalemate

Or 7...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}h6\#!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  stalemate.

The following important theoretical position demonstrates a winning method.

Diagram 24-3

F. Philidor

1777

Notice how White has organized his pieces. Here the queen is attacking from the edge of the board and the king is nearer to the centre of the board. If we swapped round the white pieces, Black could force a draw as in Diagram 24-1.

There is no check available to Black, since the white queen is controlling the c7-square. Both sides have their pieces in the best possible positions. To win the game, White simply has to transfer to his opponent the right to move! (We also make use of this example to provide an illustration of zugzwang in Chapter 10 of *Build Up Your Chess 2*.)

1.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$ 1.  $\mathbb{Q}a6?!$   $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}b6??$  allows 2...  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$ ! =.1...  $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 1...  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$ 2.  $\mathbb{Q}a1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 2...  $\mathbb{Q}a7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$ 3.  $\mathbb{Q}a5!$ 

Diagram 24-4

White has put his opponent in zugzwang by triangulating with his queen. Black must move his rook away from his king, after which White can win it with a double attack.

3...  $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 

Other moves also lose quickly:

a) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$  =-b) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$  =-c) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}b2$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$  =-d) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  =-e) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}a7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$ f) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}b3$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$  =-g) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}e3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\#$  =-h) 3...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}a1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  (5...  $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 6.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$ ) 6.  $\mathbb{Q}b1\#$  =-4.  $\mathbb{Q}e5\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d4\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 6...  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}a1\#$ 7.  $\mathbb{Q}h7\#$  =-

Diagram 24-3

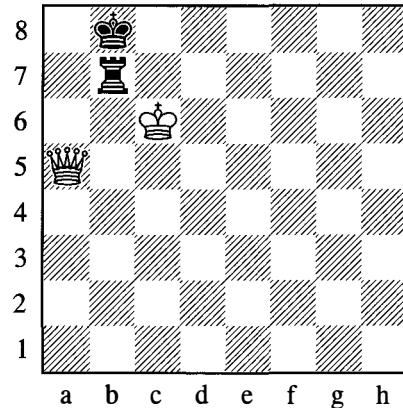


Diagram 24-4

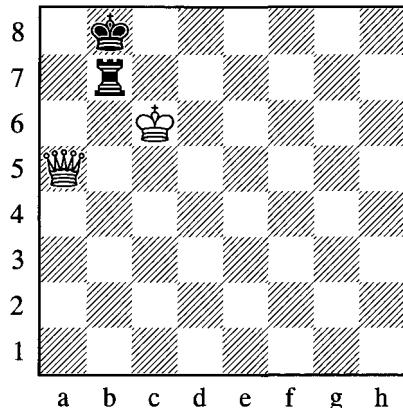


Diagram 24-5

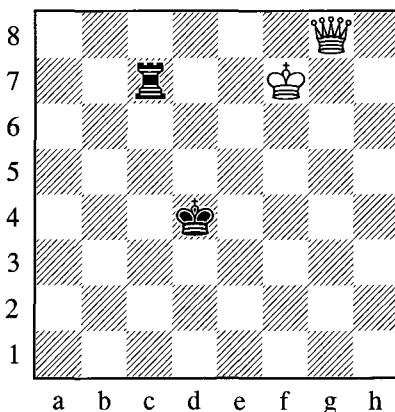


Diagram 24-6

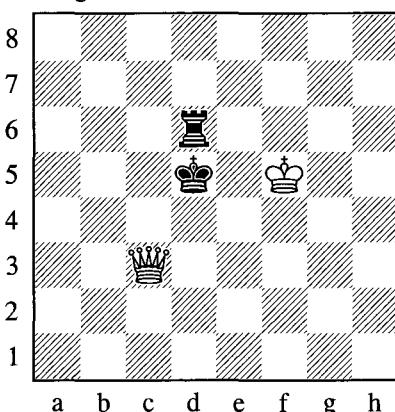
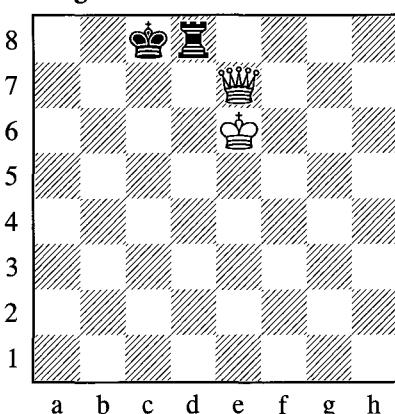


Diagram 24-7



In practice, however, the stronger side does not always win this ending, since it is difficult to play faultlessly when time is limited. Here is a practical example of this.

Diagram 24-5

V.Achenbach – A.Yusupov

Simultaneous game, Essen 2000

For the ending of queen against rook (and others endings with six or fewer pieces) there exist *Nalimov Tablebases*, which enable a computer to analyse and play it perfectly. Our comments on this ending make use of these tablebases.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}c6\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}c5\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}d5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}c8$

According to the computer, White wins more quickly with 4.  $\mathbb{Q}a8 \mathbb{Q}c5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}a4\# \mathbb{Q}c3$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$ .

4...  $\mathbb{Q}d3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$

5.  $\mathbb{Q}a6\# \mathbb{Q}d4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}a4\# \mathbb{Q}c5$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  would be faster.

5...  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{Q}d6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d2\# \mathbb{Q}c5$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}c3\#$

And here 8.  $\mathbb{Q}a5\# \mathbb{Q}c6$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$  would be faster.

8...  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$

Diagram 24-6

The last five moves have not achieved much for White.

9...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}d3\#$

There is an quicker win after 10.  $\mathbb{Q}a5\# \mathbb{Q}c6$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$ .

10...  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}c4\# \mathbb{Q}d6$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}f6$

White is slowly pushing his opponent to the edge of the board.

12...  $\mathbb{Q}d8$

12...  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  would be more resilient according to the computer. Here is the best winning method: 13.  $\mathbb{Q}e6\# \mathbb{Q}c5$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}c6$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}b3 \mathbb{Q}c7$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}c3\# \mathbb{Q}b6$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}b4\# \mathbb{Q}c6$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}b7$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}c4\# \mathbb{Q}b6$  20.  $\mathbb{Q}d6 \mathbb{Q}a5$  21.  $\mathbb{Q}d3!$  (but not 21.  $\mathbb{Q}c6?? \mathbb{Q}c7\#$ ) 21...  $\mathbb{Q}b6$  22.  $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}b8$  23.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\# \mathbb{Q}a7$  24.  $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}b6$  25.  $\mathbb{Q}d4\# \mathbb{Q}b7$  26.  $\mathbb{Q}d7 \mathbb{Q}a6$  (26...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  27.  $\mathbb{Q}d5\#$ ) 27.  $\mathbb{Q}c7 \mathbb{Q}b7\#$  28.  $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$

13.  $\mathbb{Q}d4\# \mathbb{Q}c7$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}c5\# \mathbb{Q}d7$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\# \mathbb{Q}c8$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$

Diagram 24-7

White has forced his opponent into position and is not far from the win.

### 16... $\mathbb{E}d1$

16... $\mathbb{E}g8$  (intending  $\mathbb{E}g6\#$ ) is answered by: 17. $\mathbb{W}h7!$   
 $\mathbb{E}d8$  18. $\mathbb{W}a7$   $\mathbb{E}d1$  19. $\mathbb{W}c5\#$   $\mathbb{E}d8$  (19... $\mathbb{E}b7$  20. $\mathbb{W}b4!$   
 $\mathbb{E}c8$  21. $\mathbb{W}c3\#$  leads to the same position) 20. $\mathbb{W}b4!$   
 White controls the e1-square. As Mark Dvoretsky has remarked, **‘It is not infrequent for quiet moves which limit the mobility of the opposing pieces to be much more effective than checks.’**

### Diagram 24-8

20... $\mathbb{E}c7$  21. $\mathbb{W}c3\#$   $\mathbb{E}d8$  22. $\mathbb{W}b3$   $\mathbb{E}e1\#$  23. $\mathbb{E}d6$  Black is either mated or loses the rook.

### 17. $\mathbb{W}f8\#$

The simple winning method of 17. $\mathbb{W}c5\#$   $\mathbb{E}d8$  18. $\mathbb{W}b4!$  was examined in the previous note.

### 17... $\mathbb{E}c7$

17... $\mathbb{E}d8$  puts up stiffer resistance.

18. $\mathbb{W}f4\#$   $\mathbb{E}c8$  19. $\mathbb{W}c4\#$   $\mathbb{E}d8$

### Diagram 24-9

### 20. $\mathbb{W}b4$

20. $\mathbb{W}b3!$   $\mathbb{E}e1\#$  23. $\mathbb{E}d6$  wins immediately.

### 20... $\mathbb{E}c8$ 21. $\mathbb{W}b3?!$

The correct way to win is 21. $\mathbb{W}c3\#$   $\mathbb{E}d8$  22. $\mathbb{W}b3$ .

### 21... $\mathbb{E}c1$

Or 21... $\mathbb{E}d7?!$  22. $\mathbb{W}a4$   $\mathbb{E}b7$  23. $\mathbb{E}d6$   $\mathbb{E}b6\#$  24. $\mathbb{W}c5$   $\mathbb{E}b7$  25. $\mathbb{W}a8\#$   $\mathbb{E}c7$  26. $\mathbb{W}e8!$   $\mathbb{E}a7$  27. $\mathbb{W}e5\#$   $\mathbb{E}b7$  28. $\mathbb{W}b5$  and White soon wins.

### 22. $\mathbb{E}d6$ $\mathbb{E}c7$ 23. $\mathbb{W}g8\#$ $\mathbb{E}b7$ 24. $\mathbb{W}g2\#?!$

White should play 24. $\mathbb{W}d5\#$   $\mathbb{E}b8$  25. $\mathbb{W}e5?!$  and now:

a) 25... $\mathbb{E}b7$  26. $\mathbb{W}b5\#$   $\mathbb{E}c8$  27. $\mathbb{W}a5!$  Mate is near.

b) 25... $\mathbb{E}b7$  26. $\mathbb{W}c6\#$  White wins as in Diagram 24-3: 26... $\mathbb{E}a7$  27. $\mathbb{W}a1\#$   $\mathbb{E}b8$  28. $\mathbb{W}a5\#$

### 24... $\mathbb{E}b8$ 25. $\mathbb{W}b2\#$ $\mathbb{E}c8$ 26. $\mathbb{W}b6?$

This makes the win harder.

The correct way is 26. $\mathbb{W}b5$   $\mathbb{E}g7$  27. $\mathbb{W}e8\#$   $\mathbb{E}b7$  28. $\mathbb{W}e4\#$   $\mathbb{E}b8$  29. $\mathbb{W}c6$   $\mathbb{E}b7$  30. $\mathbb{W}e5\#$  and once again White wins as in Diagram 24-3.

### 26... $\mathbb{E}d7\#$ 27. $\mathbb{W}c6??$

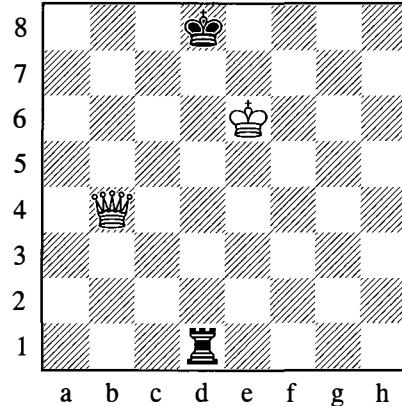
Pressed for time, White allows the typical stalemate defence.

### Diagram 24-10

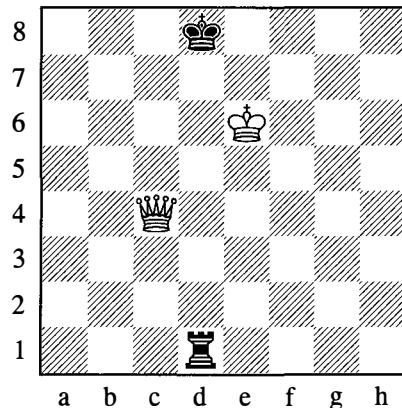
### 27... $\mathbb{E}d6\#!$

$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

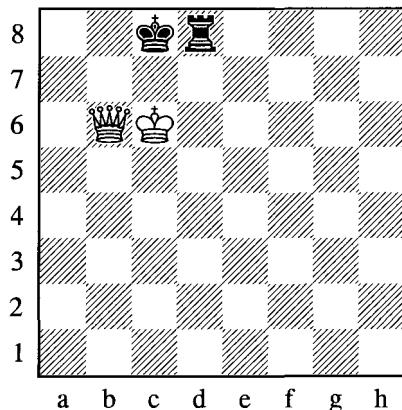
### Diagram 24-8 (analysis)



### Diagram 24-9



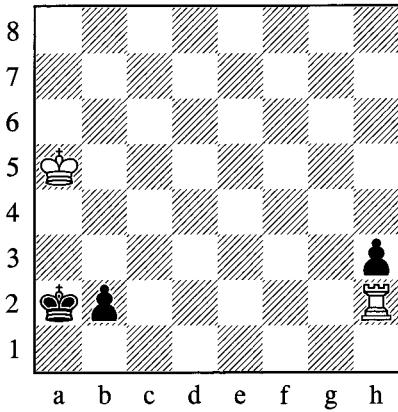
### Diagram 24-10



# Exercises

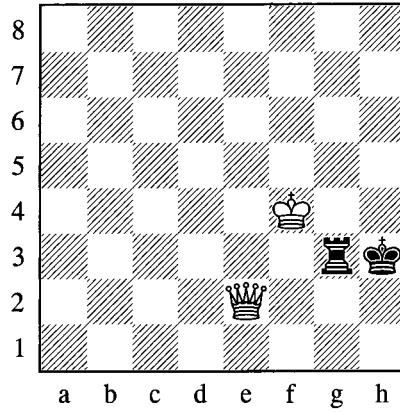
► Ex. 24-1 ◀

★



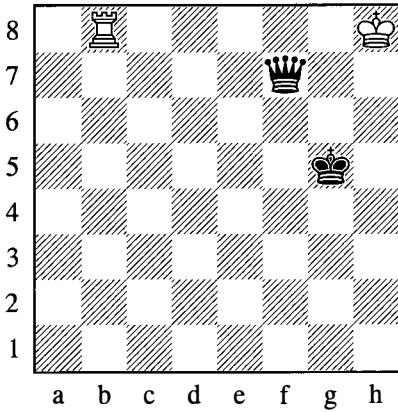
► Ex. 24-4 ◀

★★



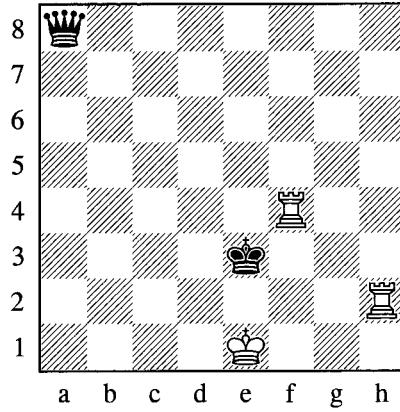
► Ex. 24-2 ◀

★★★



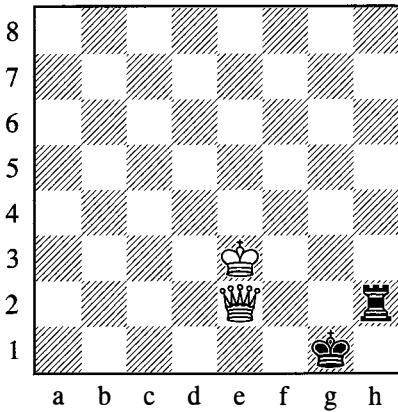
► Ex. 24-5 ◀

★★



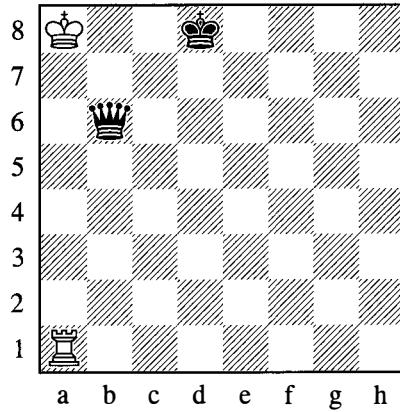
► Ex. 24-3 ◀

★★



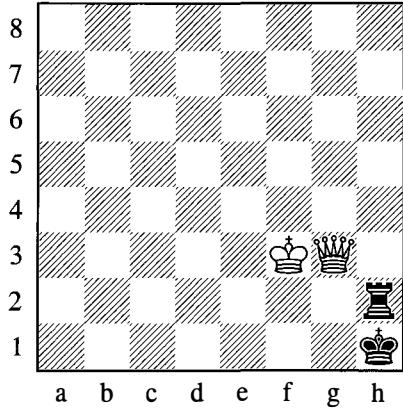
► Ex. 24-6 ◀

★★

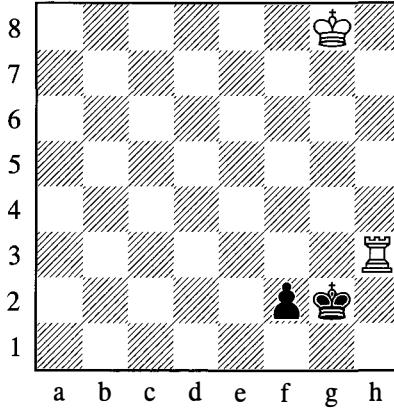


# Exercises

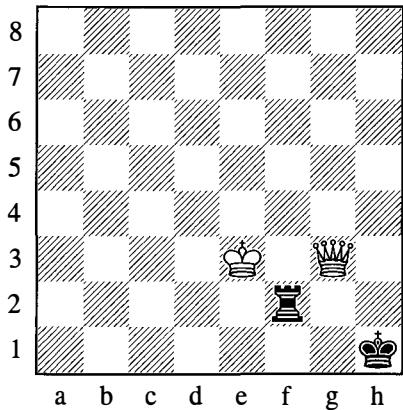
► Ex. 24-7 ◀ ★



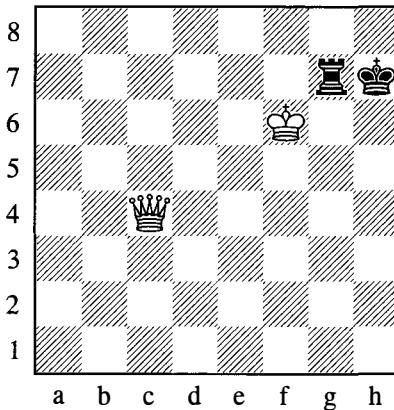
► Ex. 24-10 ◀ ★★



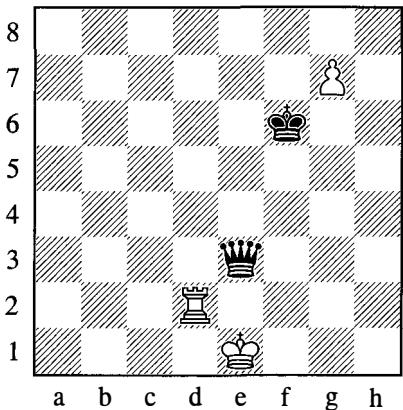
► Ex. 24-8 ◀ ★★



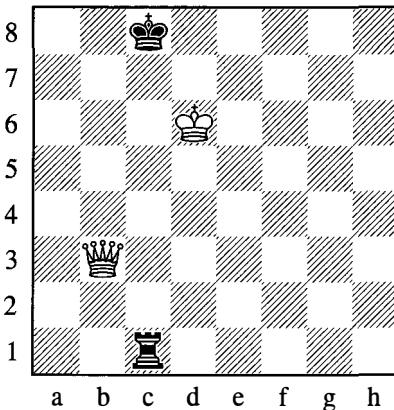
► Ex. 24-11 ◀ ★



► Ex. 24-9 ◀ ★★



► Ex. 24-12 ◀ ★



# Solutions

## Ex. 24-1

The end of a study by

**D.Gurgenidze**

1999

1.  $\mathbb{Q}a4!$

1.  $\mathbb{B}xh3?$   $b1\mathbb{W}+$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}a1$  2.  $\mathbb{B}xh3$   $b1\mathbb{W}$  3.  $\mathbb{B}a3\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}b2$  4.  $\mathbb{B}b3\uparrow$

(1 point)

## Ex. 24-2

The end of a study by

**D.Gurgenidze**

1999

White saves the game by using a stalemate defence.

1.  $\mathbb{B}g8\uparrow!$

(1 point)

1.  $\mathbb{B}b5\uparrow?$  fails to 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f4!$  2.  $\mathbb{B}b4$   $\mathbb{Q}f3-$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$

1...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  2.  $\mathbb{B}g6\uparrow=$

2.  $\mathbb{B}g4\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  3.  $\mathbb{B}g5\uparrow!$

(another 1 point)

But not 3.  $\mathbb{B}e4\uparrow?$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  4.  $\mathbb{B}d4\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}c5-$ .

3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4.  $\mathbb{B}g6\uparrow!$

(another 1 point)

Certainly not 4.  $\mathbb{B}e5\uparrow?$   $\mathbb{Q}d6-$ .

4...  $\mathbb{W}xg6$  stalemate

## Ex. 24-3

The end of a study by

**G.Walker**

1841

White can mate quickly.

1.  $\mathbb{W}e1\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}g2$  2.  $\mathbb{W}f2\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}h3$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f1\#$

3.  $\mathbb{W}f3\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f4-$

(2 points)

## Ex. 24-4

**G.Walker**

1841

The position is similar to Diagram 24-3. The next queen move is typical and forces the black rook away.

1.  $\mathbb{W}e1!$

(2 points)

White should not put his queen too close to the opposing king: 1.  $\mathbb{W}f2\uparrow?$   $\mathbb{B}g4\uparrow$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f3\uparrow?$   $\mathbb{B}f4\uparrow!=$

1...  $\mathbb{B}g4\uparrow$

1...  $\mathbb{B}g2$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h1\uparrow$   $\mathbb{B}h2$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f3\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  4.  $\mathbb{W}g4\#$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f3-$

## Ex. 24-5

**J.Kling**

1849

1.  $\mathbb{Q}a4!$   $\mathbb{W}xa4$

1...  $\mathbb{W}c8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h3\uparrow$   $\mathbb{W}xh3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}a3\uparrow+$

(1 point for this variation)

2.  $\mathbb{Q}h3\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h4\uparrow-$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 24-6

**J.Kling & B.Horwitz**

1851

The white king is in a stalemate position...

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d1\uparrow!$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$

After 1...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  White must choose the right check:

a) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}e1\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}f1\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}g6-$

b) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}d7\uparrow!$

(1 point for this variation)

The white rook follows the black king onto the 7th rank. 2...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\uparrow=$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}c1\uparrow!$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\uparrow!$

(another 1 point)

3.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}e7\uparrow!$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d7\uparrow!$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}c7\uparrow!$   $\mathbb{W}xc7$  stalemate

# Solutions

## Ex. 24-7

A.Morozevich – D.Jakovenko

Pamplona 2006

In the diagram position, White has just played 1.  $\mathbb{Q}g4-f3??$ , throwing away the win. Withdrawing the queen before bringing in his king would have won quickly. For example: 1.  $\mathbb{W}e5!$  (other sensible queen moves are also winning) 1...  $\mathbb{Q}g1$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{E}g2\#$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h3+-$  1...  $\mathbb{E}f2\#$ !

(1 point)

### 2. $\mathbb{Q}e3$

Both ways of capturing the rook are stalemate, while returning to the g-file is no good either: 2.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{E}g2=$   
2...  $\mathbb{E}e2\#$ ! 3.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{E}d2\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd2$

$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

## Ex. 24-8

The end of a study by

C.Salvioli

1888

### 1. $\mathbb{W}h4\#$ !

(1 point)

This is the quickest route to victory.

Of course capturing the rook would be stalemate.

### 1... $\mathbb{E}h2$ 2. $\mathbb{W}e1\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$

White now wins as in Ex. 24-3.

### 3. $\mathbb{W}f2\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 4. $\mathbb{W}f3\#$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 5. $\mathbb{Q}f4+-$

(another 1 point)

## Ex. 24-9

The end of a study by

F.Axelsson

1947

### 1. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$

1...  $\mathbb{W}xd2$  2.  $g8\mathbb{W}=$

### 2. $\mathbb{E}g2\#$

(2 points)

We now have the same situation as in Diagram 24-2.

2...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3.  $\mathbb{E}f2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  4.  $\mathbb{E}g2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  5.  $\mathbb{E}f2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g3$  7.  $\mathbb{E}g2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h3$  8.  $\mathbb{E}h2\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}g3$  9.  $\mathbb{E}h3\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$  stalemate

## Ex. 24-10

The end of a study by

V.Chekhover

1949

### 1. $\mathbb{E}h7\#$ $\mathbb{f}1\mathbb{W}$ 2. $\mathbb{E}g7\#$

White draws as in Diagram 24-1.

(2 points)

### 2... $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 3. $\mathbb{E}h7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 4. $\mathbb{E}g7\#$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$

4...  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  5.  $\mathbb{E}h7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  6.  $\mathbb{E}g7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  7.  $\mathbb{E}h7\#$ =  
5.  $\mathbb{E}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e2$  6.  $\mathbb{E}xf1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1=$

## Ex. 24-11

The end of a study by

A.Chéron

1951

### 1. $\mathbb{W}h4\#$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 2. $\mathbb{W}h5+-$

(1 point)

The Philidor position has been reached, with Black to play (see Diagram 24-4).

## Ex. 24-12

The end of a study by

M.Euwe

1958

### 1. $\mathbb{W}a3!$

(1 point)

White threatens both  $\mathbb{W}a8\#$  and  $\mathbb{W}xc1\#$ . We saw the same idea in Diagram 24-9.

### 1... $\mathbb{E}d1\#$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$

2...  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}b3\#+-$

### 3. $\mathbb{W}f8\#$

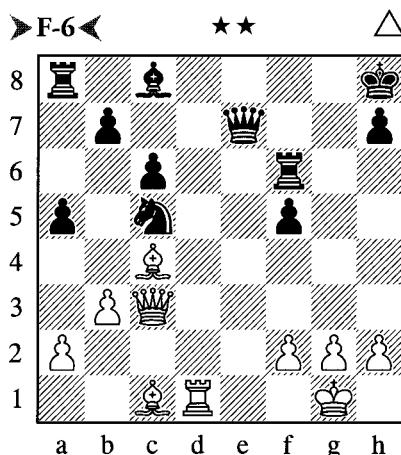
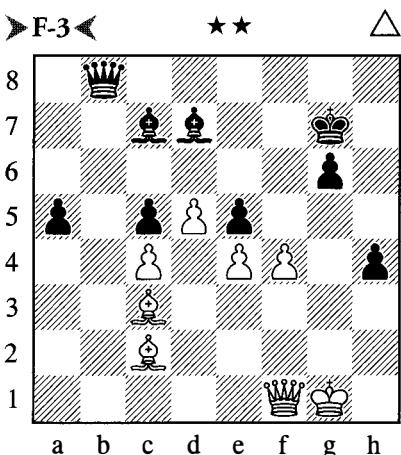
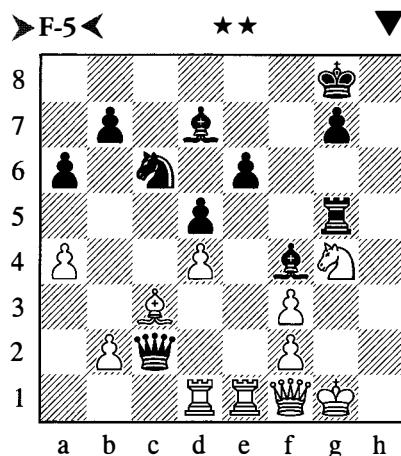
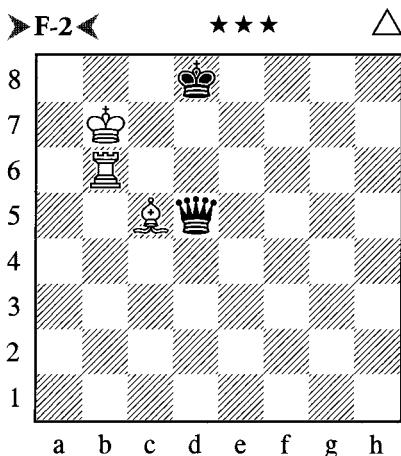
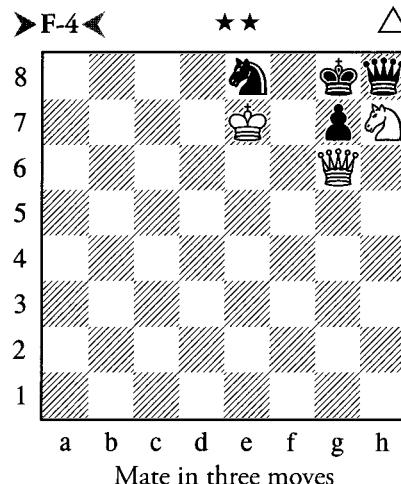
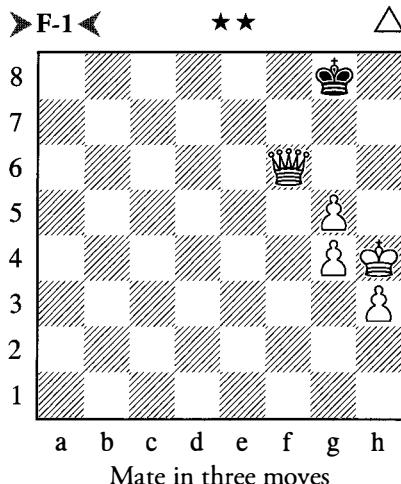
## Scoring

Maximum number of points is **21**

- 18** points and above → **Excellent**
- 15** points and above → **Good**
- 11** points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **11** points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

# Final test

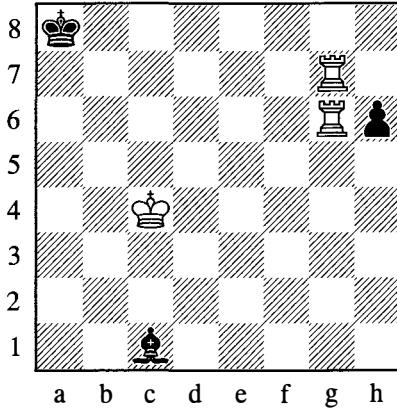


# Final test

►F-7◀

★★

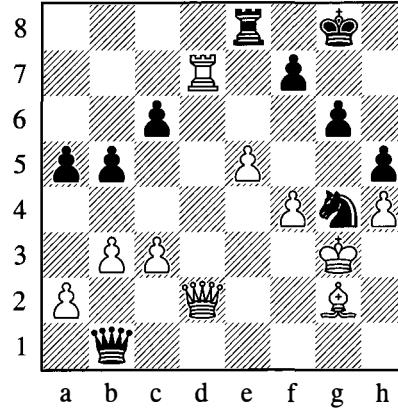
△



►F-10◀

★

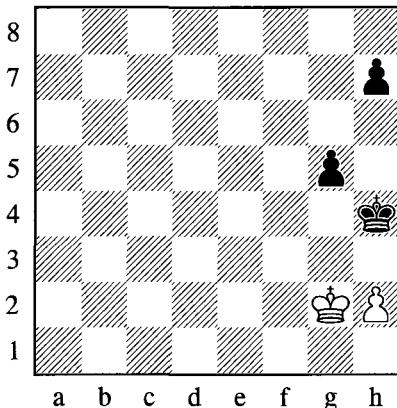
▼



►F-8◀

★★

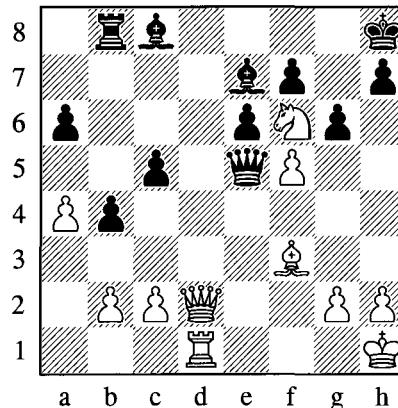
△



►F-11◀

★

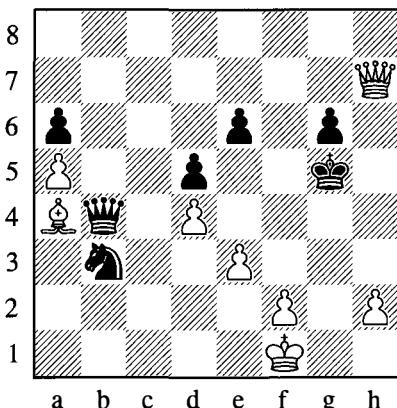
△



►F-9◀

★

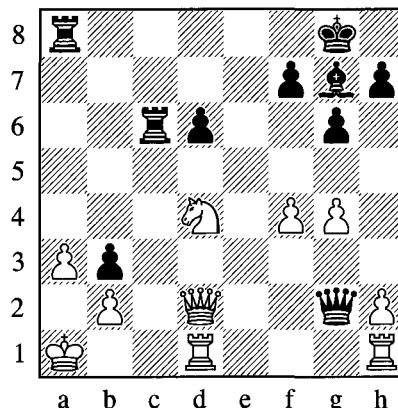
△



►F-12◀

★★

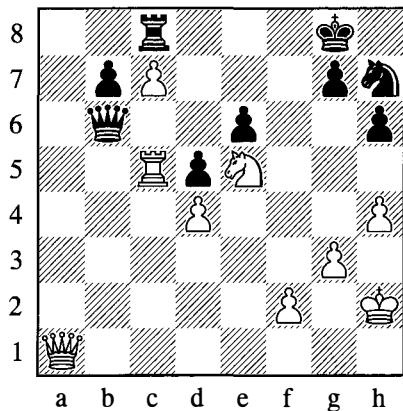
▼



# Final test

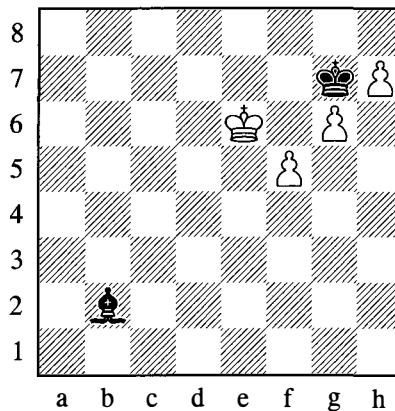
►F-13◀

★★★



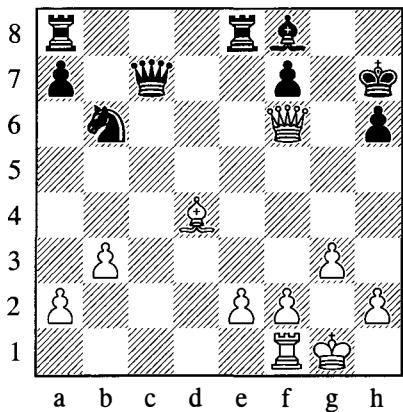
►F-16◀

★★



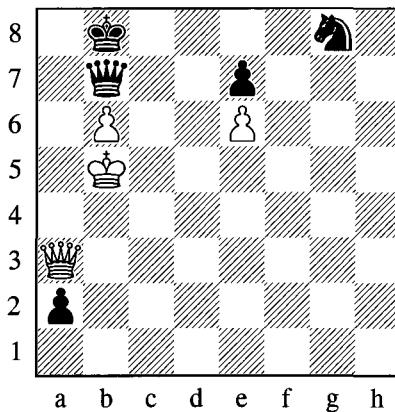
►F-14◀

★★



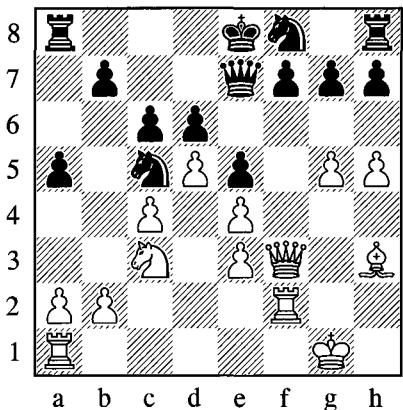
►F-17◀

★★



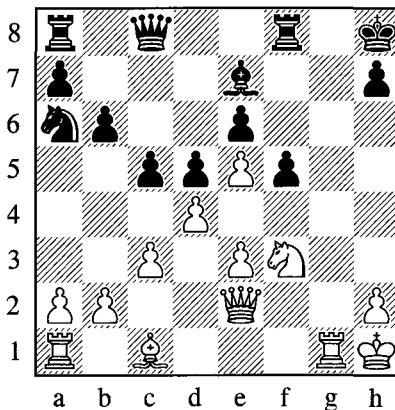
►F-15◀

★★

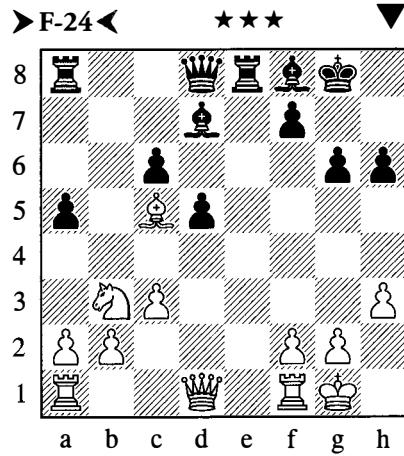
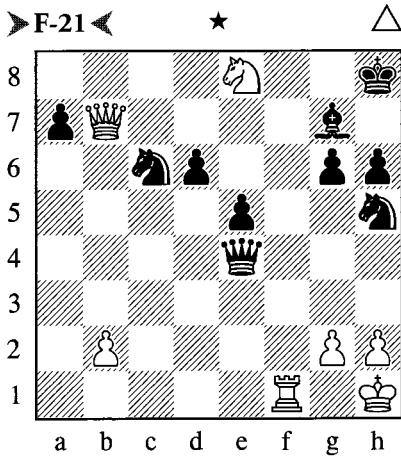
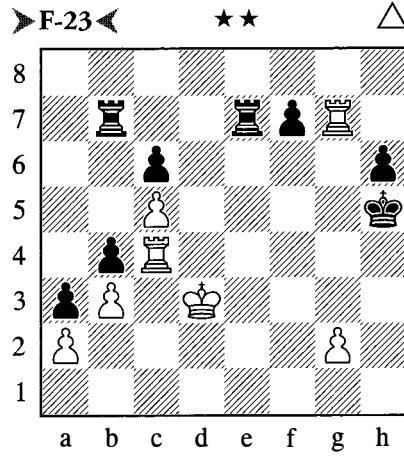
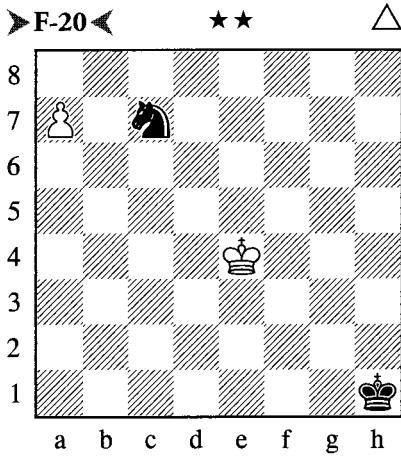
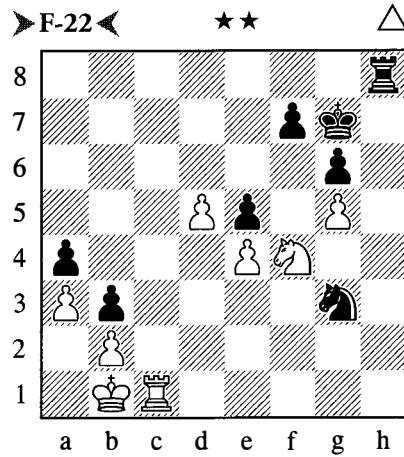
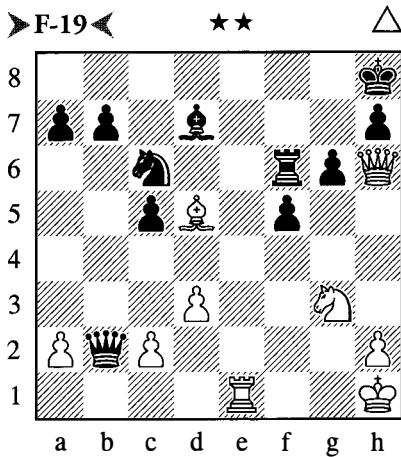


►F-18◀

★★★



# Final test



# Solutions

## F-1

Calculating variations /Chapter 20

J.Koers

1916

There is only a single square available to the black king. If it were Black's move he would have to play 1... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ . Then 2. $\mathbb{W}f8$  forces the king into a mating net... So a waiting move will solve the task!

1. $\mathbb{Q}g3!$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  2. $\mathbb{W}f8$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  3. $\mathbb{W}g8\#$

(2 points)

## F-2

Endgame /Chapter 24

The end of a study by

E.Dobrescu

1953

1. $\mathbb{Q}a6!$

(1 point)

1. $\mathbb{Q}c6??$   $\mathbb{Q}d7-$

1... $\mathbb{W}xc5$

Declining the bishop is no better: 1... $\mathbb{W}c4\#$  2. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}a5$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  stalemate.

(another 1 point for this variation)

2. $\mathbb{Q}b8\#$

White has reached the Ponziani position (see Diagram 24-2).

2... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$

Or 4... $\mathbb{Q}c7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  stalemate.

5. $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  stalemate.

(another 1 point)

## F-3

Tactics /Chapter 1

I.Nikolaidis – E.Grivas

Greece 1993

1. $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$

(1 point)

White can also play 1. $d6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  (also 1 point) with the same idea: 2... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  3. $\mathbb{W}f4+-$

1... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  2. $\mathbb{W}f4\#$

(another 1 point)

We saw a similar cross-pin in Ex. 1-10.

1-0

## F-4

Calculating variations /Chapter 20

A.Grunenwald

1956

The mate 1... $\mathbb{W}xh7$  2. $\mathbb{W}xe8\#$  has been prepared. Further, if Black's knight moves then White has 2. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ . White is unable to maintain this latter mate threat; however, he can arrange for different mates to be possible against the various black knight moves.

1. $\mathbb{Q}d7!$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$

1... $\mathbb{Q}d6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{W}xh7$  3. $\mathbb{W}e8\#$

1... $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$  3. $\mathbb{W}e8\#$

2. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$   $\mathbb{W}xh7$  3. $\mathbb{W}e8\#$

(2 points)

## F-5

Strategy /Chapter 2

A.Markgraf – A.Yusupov

German Ch, Osterburg 2006

1... $e5!$

(1 point)

Opening the diagonal for the d7-bishop.

2. $\mathbb{W}d3$

After 2. $\mathbb{W}h3$   $e4+$  White cannot save the g4-knight.

2... $\mathbb{W}xd3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xd3$   $e4$

(another 1 point)

4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$

4. $fxe4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg4\#$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $dxe4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}f5+$

4... $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  5. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$   $exf3$

0-1

# Solutions

## F-6

Tactics /Chapter 3

**L.Winants – Gooris**

Belgium 1992

The conclusion of a beautiful combination.

**1.  $\mathbb{W}xf6\#$  2.  $\mathbb{E}d8\#$   $\mathbb{W}xd8$**

2...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  3.  $\mathbb{E}g8\#$

(1 point for this variation)

**3.  $\mathbb{Q}b2\#$**

**1–0**

(another 1 point)

## F-7

Calculating variations /Chapter 20

**W.Von Holzhausen**

1921

White must first entice the black king to the b8-square.

**1.  $\mathbb{E}c7\#$**

Threatening 2.  $\mathbb{E}g8\#$ .

Other moves, such as 1.  $\mathbb{E}d7\?$ , fail to 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  and the bishop will interpose on b8.

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  2.  $\mathbb{E}e7\#$**

(2 points)

3.  $\mathbb{E}g8\#$  cannot be prevented; the white rook blocks the black bishop's routes to f8 and d8.

## F-8

Endgame /Chapter 4

**Training position**

**1.  $h3\!$**

(1 point)

We saw this idea in the analysis of the theoretical position in Diagram 4-7.

Since the black pawn on h7 still has the choice between moving one square or two, White must not allow his opponent access to the h3-square:

a) 1.  $\mathbb{Q}g1\?$   $\mathbb{Q}h3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $g4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $h6\!$   
4.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $h5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $h4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $g3$  7.  $\mathbb{W}xg3$   $\mathbb{W}xg3$   
8.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $g2\rightarrow$

b) 1.  $\mathbb{Q}h1\?$   $\mathbb{Q}h3$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $g4$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $h5\!$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $h4$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $g3$  6.  $\mathbb{W}xg3$   $\mathbb{W}xg3$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $g2\rightarrow$

**1...  $\mathbb{Q}h5$**

1...  $h6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h2=$

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  3.  $h4\!=$**

(another 1 point)

3.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $h5\!\uparrow$  also leads to a draw, but is more complicated: 4.  $\mathbb{Q}g3\!$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f3\!$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e3\!$   $h4$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f3\!=$

## F-9

Positional play /Chapter 5

**A.Yusupov – A.Reuss**

German Ch, Osterburg 2006

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}e8\!$**

(1 point)

Here an attack is the simplest way to victory.

**1–0**

If 1...  $\mathbb{W}c4\!\uparrow$  then 2.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}c2$  3.  $h4\!\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6\!=$ .

1...  $\mathbb{Q}d2\!\uparrow$  is no better: 2.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}b1$  (2...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xg6\!\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}f7\!\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  5.  $\mathbb{W}d7\#\!$ ) 3.  $f4\!\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  (3...  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xg6\#\!$  or 3...  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  4.  $\mathbb{W}h3\#\!$ ) 4.  $\mathbb{W}f7\#\!$

## F-10

Tactics /Chapter 6

**P.Popovic – A.Yusupov**

Innsbruck 1977

**1...  $\mathbb{W}g1\!$**

(1 point)

This natural move threatens ...  $\mathbb{W}h2\!\uparrow$ . The queen and knight cooperate very well in attack.

**2.  $\mathbb{E}d8\#$**

2.  $\mathbb{Q}f3\!\uparrow$  would put up stiffer resistance.

**2...  $\mathbb{E}xd8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xd8\!\uparrow$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}d4$   $\mathbb{W}h2\!\uparrow$**

4...  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}f3\!\uparrow$  is less convincing.

**5.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}xh4$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}h2$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $c5\!$  8.  $\mathbb{W}e4$  8.  $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{W}xf4\!\uparrow$  –**

**8...  $\mathbb{W}g3$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}f2\!\uparrow$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{W}xa2$  11.  $\mathbb{W}b7$   $\mathbb{W}xb3$**

**0–1**

# Solutions

## F-11

Tactics /Chapter 8  
Based on the game

J.Aitken – R.Payne

British Ch, Whitby 1962

1.  $\mathbb{W}h6!$

But not 1.  $\mathbb{Q}g4?$   $\mathbb{W}xf5\#.$

1...  $\mathbb{W}xf6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d8\#!$

Deflection.

2...  $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  3.  $\mathbb{W}f8\#$

(1 point)

## F-12

Tactics /Chapter 23

Wheeler – Hall

1964

1...  $\mathbb{Q}c1\#!$

(1 point)

It is just as good for Black to reverse his move order: 1...  $\mathbb{Q}xa3\#!$  (also 1 point) 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xa3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}c1\#$ ! 4.  $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}c2\#-$

2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc1$

White will also be quickly mated after 2.  $\mathbb{Q}xc1$   $\mathbb{Q}xa3\#$  (or 2...  $\mathbb{W}xd2-$ +) 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xa3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4\#$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{W}xd2-$ +

2...  $\mathbb{Q}xa3\#$ ! 3.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$

3.  $\mathbb{Q}xa3$   $\mathbb{W}a2\#$

3...  $\mathbb{Q}a1\#$ ! 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xa1$   $\mathbb{W}a8\#$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{W}a2\#$

(another 1 point for the whole variation)

## F-13

Calculating variations /Chapter 9

G.Timoshenko – Y.Gutop

USSR 1984

1.  $\mathbb{W}a8!$

(1 point)

This wins by force.

1.  $\mathbb{W}a4$  (1 consolation point) is less clear after 1...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6\#$   $gxf6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}a7$   $b5$  5.  $\mathbb{W}b7$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  6.  $h5$ . Black is paralysed by the strong c-pawn, but White still has a bit of work to do to finish him off.

1...  $\mathbb{Q}xa8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xc8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$

4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf8\#!$

(another 1 point)

4...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$

4...  $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}d7\#-$

5.  $h5\#!$

(another 1 point)

The point of the combination; White threatens  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  followed by  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#.$

5...  $g5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}g4$

The knight will come into f6 or h6, and then the rook (or the pawn) will mate.

1-0

## F-14

Tactics /Chapter 10

H.Lachmann – H.Mueller

Stolp 1934

1.  $\mathbb{Q}g4!!$

(2 points)

A quiet move, which establishes control over the escape square f5, and threatens 2.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g8\#-$ .

The move order is important; if 1.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g4?$  then 2...  $\mathbb{W}xh2\#$ ! 3.  $\mathbb{Q}xh2$   $\mathbb{Q}d6\#-$ .

1...  $\mathbb{W}e7$  2.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$

## F-15

Positional play /Chapter 11

A.Yusupov – M.Bezold

Pulvermühle 2006

The open f-file allows White to obtain a decisive advantage.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}af1\#-$

(1 point)

1...  $f6$

The key variation is 1...  $\mathbb{W}xg5\#$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}f6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}g3$   $\mathbb{W}h6$  4.  $\mathbb{W}xg7$   $\mathbb{W}xg7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7\#-$  and the f7-pawn falls.

(another 1 point for this variation)

2.  $gxf6$   $gxf6$  3.  $\mathbb{W}xf6$   $\mathbb{W}xf6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}fd7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}df6$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$

# Solutions

8... $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  9.c7  $\mathbb{Q}xf1\#$  10. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$   $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$   
11. $\mathbb{Q}h1+-$   
**9.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}d2\#$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$**   
**1-0**

## F-16

Endgame /Chapter 12

### Theoretical position

**1... $\mathbb{Q}h8!$**  (1 point)  
But not 1... $\mathbb{Q}c3??$  2.f6#  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  3.h8#  $\mathbb{Q}xh8$   
4. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  5.g7+-.  
(another 1 point for this variation)

**2.f6**  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  **3.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$**  stalemate.

## F-17

Tactics /Chapter 13

The end of a study by

**J.Kling & B.Horwitz**

1851

The white queen clears up:

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}g3\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}xg8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$   
4.  $\mathbb{Q}xa2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}h2\#$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}h8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$   
7.  $\mathbb{Q}a1\#$**

This forces mate. Going into a pawn ending is an easy win too: 7.  $\mathbb{Q}xb8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xb8$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  9.b7#  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}d7+-$  (also 2 points).

**7... $\mathbb{Q}b7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}a6\#$**  (2 points)

## F-18

Strategy /Chapter 14

**A.Yusupov – M.Luch**

Warsaw (rapid) 2005

**1.e4!** (2 points)  
White plays very energetically and immediately opens the position.

1.  $\mathbb{Q}d2??$  (only 1 point) planning  $\mathbb{Q}g2$  and  $\mathbb{Q}ag1$ , is a reasonable alternative, albeit a bit slow.

**1... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$**

Or 1... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  (2... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5+-$ ) 3.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$  and Black will soon be mated.

**2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6!$**

(another 1 point)

**2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$**

After 2... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  Black is also in trouble, for example: 4... $\mathbb{Q}e3$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}ag1$   $\mathbb{Q}b7\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}1g2$  f4 7.  $\mathbb{Q}g4+-$

**3.  $\mathbb{Q}xg8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}xg8$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$**

No better is 4... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  (or 5... $\mathbb{Q}g6$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xa6$  +-) 6.  $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  and Black has no defence against 7.  $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$ .

**5.  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}xg1\#$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}xg1$   $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  b5 10.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  a6 11.  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ !**

**1-0**

## F-19

Tactics /Chapter 15

**Y.Krutikhin – E.Chaplinsky**

Moscow 1950

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}h5!$**

(1 point)

White threatens  $\mathbb{Q}g7\#$ . The idea is to open the g-file.

**1... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}g1!!$**

(another 1 point)

The threat of  $\mathbb{Q}g8\#$  is decisive.

**1-0**

## F-20

Endgame /Chapter 16

**J.Hasek**

1928

**1.  $\mathbb{Q}d3!$**

(1 point)

Other ways of approaching the knight do not work:

- a) 1.  $\mathbb{Q}c4?$   $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$ =
- b) 1.  $\mathbb{Q}e5?$   $\mathbb{Q}g2$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}b5\#$ =
- c) 1.  $\mathbb{Q}f5?$   $\mathbb{Q}g2$  2.  $\mathbb{Q}f6$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  3.  $\mathbb{Q}e7$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}b7$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}xa8$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  stalemate.

# Solutions

1... $\mathbb{Q}g2$  2. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}f3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  4. $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$   
5. $\mathbb{Q}b7$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}b8+$   
(another 1 point)

**F-21**  
Tactics /Chapter 17  
Based on the game

**S.Buskenstrom – Z.Nilsson**

Sweden 1962

1. $\mathbb{W}xg7\#$  2. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f8\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h7$  3. $\mathbb{Q}f6\#$   
(1 point)

**F-22**  
Tactics /Chapter 19

**L.Szabo – P.Dozsa**

Hungarian Ch, Budapest 1962

1. $\mathbb{Q}e6\#$   
(1 point)

1... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   
1... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  is met by 2.d6!  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  3. $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$ .  
2. $\mathbb{Q}c7\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$ ?  
Giving up the exchange by 2... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}e7\#$  would put up stiffer resistance.  
3. $\mathbb{Q}c8\#$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}xh8$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   
4... $\mathbb{Q}xh8$  5.d6+–  
(another 1 point for this variation)

5. $\mathbb{Q}e8$   
5...exd5 is followed by 6. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   
 $\mathbb{Q}e6$  8. $\mathbb{Q}a5+–$ .

**1–0**

**F-23**  
Tactics /Chapter 21

**A.Karpov – B.Larsen**

Linares 1983

1. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   
(1 point)

Black had probably overlooked this move, which threatens 2. $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$ .

1.g3? also threatens mate in one, but allows Black a defence: 1... $\mathbb{Q}bd7\#$  2. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c1$  and Black can now choose between taking

a draw with 3... $\mathbb{Q}el\#$  or playing on with 3... $\mathbb{Q}h2$ .

**1–0**

After escaping from the checks, White will deliver mate: 1... $\mathbb{Q}bd7\#$  2. $\mathbb{Q}c2!$  (not 2. $\mathbb{Q}c4??$   $\mathbb{Q}e4\#$ ) 2... $\mathbb{Q}e2\#$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}b2\#$  4. $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}h1\#$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}g4\#$

(another 1 point for this variation)

**F-24**  
Positional play /Chapter 22

**P.Jaracz – A.Yusupov**

Warsaw (rapid) 2005

1... $\mathbb{a}4$

(1 point)

The best chance. Black must play actively, otherwise he will find himself positionally worse.

2. $\mathbb{Q}xf8$   $\mathbb{Q}xb3$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xh6\#$

3. $\mathbb{Q}a3\#$  was necessary.  
(another 1 point)

3... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ !

(another 1 point)

4. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xa2\#$

Black has acquired a dangerous passed pawn.

5.b3  $\mathbb{Q}f5$ !

Intending ... $\mathbb{Q}b1$ .

6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  7. $\mathbb{Q}e3$

7.g4  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  8. $\mathbb{Q}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}xg4\#$  9. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}e5+–$   
7... $\mathbb{Q}b1$  8. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  9. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}ae8$  10. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$   
11. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  12. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}g6\#$

Black went on to win.

## Scoring

Maximum number of points is 48

- **42** points and above → **Excellent**
- **36** points and above → **Good**
- **24** points → **Pass mark**

*If you scored less than **24** points, we recommend that you read again those chapters dealing with the areas where you made a lot of mistakes and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.*

# Index of composers

Averbakh,Y. 160  
Averbakh,Y. (& Chekhover,V.) 161  
Axelsson,F. 243

Beljakin,Y. 200  
Bone,W. 132  
Borgstrom,L. 128  
Botvinnik,M. (& Kaminer,S.) 127

Capablanca,J. 15  
Chekhover,V. 158, 166, 243  
Chekhover,V. (& Averbakh,Y.) 161  
Chelebi,E. 198  
Chéron,A. 165, 166, 243  
Collijn 123  
Cozio,C. 236

De Feijter,C. 166  
Del Rio,E. 132  
Dobrescu,E. 249  
Dvoretsky,M. 38, 42, 118, 159, 162

Euwe,M. 243

Fitch,C. 203  
Freeborough,E. 165

Galitzky,A. 203  
Geoffroy-Dausay,A. 124  
Giersing,J. (& Moller,J.) 165  
Grigoriev,N. 124, 131, 159, 166  
Grunenwald,A. 249  
Gurgenidze,D. 242  
Gurvitch,A. 203

Haga,A. 123  
Hanneman,K. 161  
Hasek,J. 43, 213, 252  
Horwitz,B. 124, 132  
Horwitz,B. (& Kling,J.) 118, 120, 167, 242, 252

Kaminer,S. (& Botvinnik,M.) 127  
Kasparian,G. 199, 200  
Kazantsev,A. 204  
Keemink,J. 165  
Kling,J. 242  
Kling,J. (& Horwitz,B.) 118, 120, 167, 242, 252

Koers,J. 249  
Korolkov,V. 15  
Kralin,N. (& Kuznetsov,A.G.) 154  
Kubbel,L. 203, 213, 214  
Kubbel,L. (& Troitzky,A.) 214  
Kuznetsov,A.G. (& Kralin,N.) 154

L'Hermet,R. 203  
Liburkin,M. 166  
Limbach,S. 203

Merkin,J. 131  
Moller,J. (& Giersing,J.) 165

Otten,H. 123

Philidor,F. 237  
Platov,M. 171  
Ponziani,D. 236  
Prokes,L. 233  
Prokop,F. 43

Rabinovich,I. 160  
Reti,R. 213, 214  
Rinck,H. 132, 213  
Romanovsky,P. 37

Salvioli,C. 243  
Schroder,W. 124  
Selesniev,A. 123, 162  
Shigis,S. 44  
Stamma,P. 128

Troitzky,A. 123, 132  
Troitzky,A. (& Kubbel,L.) 214

Van Dijk,N. 198  
Van Zuylen van Nijeveld,P. 43  
Von der Lasa,T. 42  
Von Holzhausen,W. 124, 250

Walker,G. 242  
Weenink,H. 123  
White,J. 42

Zakhodiakin,G. 213  
Zinar,M. 43

# Index of games

Numbers in **bold** type indicate that the player named first had Black.

Aagaard,J. – Brynell,S. 88  
Abrosimov – Skuja **64**  
Achenbach,V. – Yusupov,A. 238  
Adam – Demetriescu **169**  
Adams,E. – Santasiere,A. **154**  
Agapov – Kurmachov 196  
Agzamov,G. – Yusupov,A. **54**  
Aitken,J. – Payne,R. 251  
Ajansky – Djakov **104**  
Akopian,V. – Kuzmin,G. **12**  
Alatortsev,V. – Boleslavsky,I. 34  
Alekhine,A. – Euwe,M. 114, **114**  
– Gajdukevich,S. 15  
– Keres,P. 223  
– N.N. 189  
– Pen 196  
– Supico 151  
Alekseev – Chernenko 63  
Alexander,C. – Larsen,B. 143  
Alexandrescu,G. – Tyroler,A. **169**  
Allies – Morphy,P. **72**  
– Trajanov **148**  
Anand,V. – Topalov,V. 92  
Androvitsky,K. – Kosa 83  
Anikaev,Y. – Kuporosov,V. 196  
Babushkin – Postnikov 196  
Badenstein – Engels **99**  
Balanel,I. – Bronstein,D. 99  
Bancroft,H. – Fellner,S. **104**  
Barati – Redeli **126**  
Barbeau,S. – Yusupov,A. **26**  
Barcza,G. – Vis **64**  
Bareev,E. – Yusupov,A. 120  
Barlov – Vogel **34**  
Barnes,T. – Morphy,P. 103  
Bastrikov,G. – Lisitsin,G. 233  
Baumbach,F. – Dietze,W. 195  
Belenkij – Pirogov 104  
Beliavsky,A. – Mikhalkishin,A. 131  
Bellon Lopez,J. – Garcia,S. 175  
Belnov – Yusupov,A. **54**  
Benisch – Tal,M. **151**  
Bennet – Gokhin **155**  
Berezhansky – Donchenko,A. **64**  
Bernstein,O. – Larsen,B. 143  
– Najdorf,M. 191  
Betbeder Matibet,L. – Tyroler,A. 131  
Bezold,M. – Yusupov,Å. **251**  
Bischoff,K. – Polgar,Z. **190**  
Blackburne,J. – Zukertort,J. **8**  
Blatny,P. – Yusupov,A. 82  
Blomberg – Danielsson **154**  
Bogdanovic,R. – Suetin,A. 15  
Böhm,H. – Hernandez Onna,R. 168  
Bolbochan,J. – Pachman,L. 33  
Boleslavsky,I. – Alatortsev,V. **34**  
Bologan,V. – Yusupov,A. 174  
Bondarevsky,I. – Petersons,A. 71  
– Smyslov,V. 116  
Bönsch,U. – Naumann,A. **218**  
Borisenko,G. – Shamkovich,L. **11**  
Borgässer,R. – Popov **196**  
Botvinnik,M. – Lilienthal,A. 216  
– Petrosian,T. **117**  
– Smyslov,V. 114, 115, **185**  
Brannath – Riedel 174  
Bronstein,D. – Balanel,I. **99**  
– Geller,E. 170  
– Smyslov,V. **186**  
Brynell,S. – Aagaard,J. **88**  
Burchardt,B. – Zielinska,M. **94**  
Burn,A. – Marshall,F. **63**  
Buskenstrom,S. – Nilsson,Z. 253  
Canal,E. – Kopetzky,K. **97**  
Capablanca,J. – Jaffe,C. 99  
– Kan,I. **114**  
Carlier,B. – Yusupov,A. 115  
Chandler,M. – Yusupov,A. **26**  
Chaplinsky,E. – Krutikhin,Y. **252**  
Chernenko – Alekseev **63**  
Chigorin,M. – Lebedev,S. 234  
– Marco,G. 190  
Chikovani,I. – Gavrikov,V. **119**  
Chuchelov,V. – Kulaots,K. **25**  
Cochrane,J. – Staunton,H. 103

Danielsen – Nilson 195  
Danielsson – Blomberg 154  
Dautov,R. – Graf,A. 92  
De Bruycker,B. – Gragger,F. 229  
Delmar,E. – Richardson,P. 154  
Demetrescu – Adam 169  
Denker,A. – Smyslov,V. 184  
De Roode,P. – Yusupov,A. 53  
Dietze,W. – Baumbach,F. 195  
Dizdar,G. – Yusupov,A. 26  
Djakov – Ajansky 104  
Domuls – Steierman 234  
Donchenko,A. – Berezhansky 64  
Dozsa,P. – Szabo,L. 253  
Duerdorh,S. – Lutzka,H. 72  
Durao,J. – Ljubojevic,L. 104  
Duras,O. – Olland,A. 154

Eidelson,R. – Rutschjova,N. 127  
Eley,B. – Sherman 195  
Eliskases,E. – Flohr,S. 222  
– Heuäcker,P. 224  
Eljanov,P. – Navara,D. 92  
Emmrich,K. – Moritz,B. 33  
Engels – Badenstein 99  
Engels,L. – Toth,V. 103  
Erbis – Kempf 16  
Eslon,J. – Yusupov,A. 55  
Estrin,Y. – Korchnoi,V. 73  
– Zhivtsov,A. 10  
Euwe,M. – Alekhine,A. 114, 114  
– Goldstein,M. 19  
– Olland,A. 36  
– Thomas,G. 15

Fahrni,H. – Rotlewi,G. 175  
Fedorov – Vasiliev 131  
Fedorov,A. – Nielsen, P.H. 71  
Fellner,S. – Bancroft,H. 104  
Filippov,V. – Yusupov,A. 208  
Fine,R. – Fischer,R. 73  
Fischer,R. – Fine,R. 73  
Flohr,S. – Eliskases,E. 222  
– Smyslov,V. 229  
Fokina,N. – Kruusiauk,H. 64

Fomina,T. – Zaitseva 233  
Fontaine,R. – Yusupov,A. 195  
Forgacs,L. – Leussen,B. 73  
Fridman,D. – Yusupov,A. 228  
Friedmann,B. – Tornblom 64

Gajdukevich,S. – Alekhine,A. 15  
Gallagher,J. – Yusupov,A. 174  
– Korchnoi,V. 209  
Garcia,S. – Bellon Lopez,J. 175  
Gavrikov,V. – Chikovani,I. 119  
Geller,E. – Bronstein,D. 170  
– Kramer,H. 26  
– Larsen,B. 143  
– Spassky,B. 29  
– Tukmakov,V. 82

Gendel – Shushkevich 84  
Gergel,V. – Kliukin,B. 15  
Gerusel,M. – Yusupov,A. 55  
Ghinda,M. – Schmidt,W. 78  
Gik,E. – Shashin,A. 196  
Gipslis,A. – Larsen,B. 145  
– Velimirovic,D. 233

Gleizerov,E. – Tiviakov,S. 25  
Glek,I. – Yusupov,A. 54  
Gligoric,S. – Keres,P. 59  
Gofman – Schmid 234  
Gokhin – Bennet 155  
Golak – Strekalovsky 131  
Goldenov,B. – Levenfish,G. 11  
Goldstein,M. – Euwe,M. 19  
Golod,V. – Yusupov,A. 53  
Golombek,H. – Smyslov,V. 185  
Gooris – Winants,L. 250  
Graf,A. – Dautov,R. 92

Gragger,F. – De Bruycker,B. 229  
Grivas,E. – Nikolaidis,I. 249  
Gruenberg,H. – Gutman,L. 192  
Grünfeld,E. – Torre Repetto,C. 104  
Gunnar – Ionas 233  
Gutman,L. – Gruenberg,H. 192  
Gutop,Y. – Timoschenko,G. 251

Hall – Wheeler 251  
Hamilton,D. – Nettheim 230

Hartston,W. – Penrose,J. 103  
Hawelko,M. – Suba,M. **195**  
Hecht,H. – Keene,R. 9  
Heinicke – Pfeiffer 103  
Hernandez Onna,R. – Böhm,H. **168**  
Herrmann,L. – Kahn,M. 191  
Heuäcker,P. – Eliskases,E. 224  
Heyken,E. – Mainka,R. **93**  
Honfi,K. – Urzica,A. **15**  
Hort,V. – Tibensky,R. 83  
Horvath – Udovcic,M. 174  
Hübner,R. – Portisch,L. **230**  
Hulak,K. – Yusupov,A. **136**

Ikart – Ljaska **233**  
Illyitzki,G. – Smyslov,V. **186**, **187**  
Iljushenko – Karlson **227**  
Ionas – Gunnar **233**  
Ivanchuk,V. – Yermolinsky,A. 16  
– Yusupov,A. **134**  
Ivanisevic,I. – Miladinovic,I. 116  
Ivkov,B. – Yusupov,A. **55**

Jaffe,C. – Capablanca,J. **99**  
Jakovenko,D. – Morozевич,A. **243**  
Jansa,V. – Pedersen,J. **98**  
Jaracz,P. – Yusupov,A. 253  
Jones,C. – Yusupov,A. **106**

Kagan,S. – Shmuter,L. 226  
Kahn,M. – Herrmann,L. **191**  
Kaiszauri,K. – Sznapik,A. 155  
Kalinovsky – Urusov,S. **33**  
Kamishov,M. – Smyslov,V. **184**  
Kamsky,G. – Nunn,J. 20  
– Yusupov,A. **64**  
Kan – Kirdehoff **150**  
Kan,I. – Capablanca,J. 114  
Karlson – Iljushenko 227  
Karpov,A. – Larsen,B. 253  
– Mecking,H. 207  
– Sergievsky,V. 206  
Karrer,D. – Yusupov,A. 139  
Kasparov,G. – Smirin,I. 96  
Keene,R. – Hecht,H. **9**

Kempf – Erbis **16**  
Keres,P. – Alekhine,A. **223**  
– Richter,K. 223  
– Gligoric,S. 59  
Khramov,E. – Roshal,A. 93  
Khramtsov – Vaksberg 131  
Kirdehoff – Kan 150  
Klaman – Landa **63**  
Kleczynski,J. – Tartakower,S. **27**  
Kliukin,B. – Gergel,V. 15  
Knaak,R. – Yusupov,A. **26**  
Kochyev,A. – Maric,R. 195  
Koenig,I. – Smyslov,V. 115  
Koksal,J. – N.N. **233**  
Kolisch,I. – Shumov,I. 71  
Kopetzky,K. – Canal,E. 97  
Korchnoi,V. – Estrin,Y. 73  
– Gallagher,J. 209  
– Yusupov,A. 18

Korning,P. – Sterud,E. 149  
Kosa – Androvitsky,K. **83**  
Kotov,A. – Smyslov,V. **116**, **176**, **184**  
– Szabo,L. **63**

Krafford – Takker 229  
Kramer,H. – Geller,E. **26**  
Kramnik,V. – Leko,P. 56  
– Sokolov,I. 93  
– Yudasin,L. **188**

Krutikhin,Y. – Chaplinsky,E. 252  
Kruusiauk,H. – Fokina,N. 64  
Kubart – Mard 234  
Kuehne – Mueller,K. **174**  
Kulaots,K. – Chuchelov,V. 25  
Kunnermann – Uhlrich 149  
Kuporosov,V. – Anikaev,Y. **196**  
Kurmachov – Agapov **196**  
Kuzmin,G. – Akopian,V. 12

Lachex – Santiago,J. 72  
Lachmann,H. – Mueller,H. 251  
Landa – Klaman **63**  
Lanka,Z. – Yusupov,A. **53**  
Larsen,B. – Alexander,C. **143**  
– Bernstein,O. **143**  
– Geller,E. 143

- Gipslis,A. **145**
- Karpov,A. **253**
- Ljubojevic,L. 155
- Petrosian,T. **145**
- Portisch,L. 144
- Lasker,Em. – Steinitz,W. 33
- Lazarev,V. – Yusupov,A. 77
- Lebedev,S. – Chigorin,M. **234**
- Leko,P. – Kramnik,V. **56**
- Leussen,B. – Forgacs,L. **73**
- Levenfish,G. – Goldenov,B. 11
- Lilienthal,A. – Botvinnik,M. **216**
  - Simagin,V. **84**
  - Tartakower,S. 25
- Lisitsin,G. – Bastrikov,G. **233**
- List,P. – Mannheimer 169
- Ljaska – Ikart 233
- Ljubojevic,L. – Durao,J. 104
  - Larsen,B. **155**
- Lputian,S. – Yusupov,A. 207
- Luch,M. – Yusupov,A. **252**
- Lutzka,H. – Duerdth,S. 72
- Mainka,R. – Heyken,E. 93
- Malevinsky,A. – Rytov,B. **16**
- Mannheimer – List,P. **169**
- Marco,G. – Chigorin,M. **190**
- Mard – Kubart **234**
- Maric,R. – Kochyev,A. **195**
- Markgraf,A. – Yusupov,A. 249
- Marshall,F. – Burn,A. 63
- Mecking,H. – Karpov,A. **207**
  - Rocha,A. 174
- Meister,Y. – Yusupov,A. **82**
- Michelakis,G. – Yusupov,A. 109
- Mikhailchishin,A. – Beliavsky,A. **131**
- Miladinovic,I. – Ivanisevic,I. **116**
- Mileika,J. – Seledkin 148
- Miles,A. – Rechlis,G. **191**
- Miller – Tal,M. **33**
- Mititelu,G. – Tolush,A. **34**
- Moritz,B. – Emmrich,K. **33**
- Morozevich,A. – Jakovenko,D. 243
  - Van Wely,L. 188
- Morphy,P. – Allies 72
- Barnes,T. **103**
- Mrdja,M. – Yusupov,A. **174**
- Mueller – N.N. 155
- Mueller,H. – Lachmann,H. **251**
- Mueller,K. – Kuehne 174
- Munk – N.N. 168
- Nadj – Zaitsev,I. **93**
- Najdorf,M. – Bernstein,O. **191**
- Naumann,A. – Bönsch,U. 218
- Navara,D. – Eljanov,P. 92
- Nei,I. – Taimanov,M. 83
- Nettheim – Hamilton,D. 230
- Newman,R. – Wood,G. 63
- Nielsen,A. – N.N. 192
- Nielsen,P.H. – Fedorov,A. **71**
  - Shirov,A. **93**
- Nikolaevsky,Y. – Spassky,B. **226**
- Nikolaidis,I. – Grivas,E. 249
- Nilson – Danielsen **195**
- Nilsson,Z. – Buskenstrom,S. **253**
- Novozhenin – Panfilov 154
- Nunn,J. – Kamsky,G. **20**
- Olland,A. – Duras,O. **154**
  - Euwe,M. **36**
- Osnos,V. – Shofman,M. 64
- Pachman,L. – Bolbochan,J. **33**
- Panfilov – Novozhenin **154**
- Payne,R. – Aitken,J. **251**
- Pedersen,J. – Jansa,V. 98
- Pen – Alekhine,A. **196**
- Penrose,J. – Hartston,W. **103**
  - Smyslov,V. **170**
- Petersons,A. – Bondarevsky,I. **71**
- Petrosian,T. – Botvinnik,M. 117
  - Larsen,B. 145
- Petrushin,A. – Zakharov,A.V. **213**
- Pfeiffer – Heinicke **103**
- Pirogov – Belenjkij **104**
- Podgorny,J. – Syversen **34**
- Podzielny,K. – Pospiech,J. 83
- Polgar,J. – Yusupov,A. **123**, 165
- Polgar,Z. – Bischoff,K. 190

Pollock,W. – N.N. 175  
Polugaevsky,L. – Psakhis,L. 82  
– Szilagyi,G. 228  
Popov – Borngässer,R. 196  
Popovic,P. – Yusupov,A. 250  
Portisch,L. – Hübner,R. 230  
– Larsen,B. 144  
Pospielch,J. – Podzielny,K. 83  
Postnikov – Babushkin 196  
Psakhis,L. – Polugaevsky,L. 82

Ravinsky,G. – Smyslov,V. 222  
Rechlis,G. – Miles,A. 191  
Redeli – Barati 126  
Rellstab,L. – Weissgerber,G. 103  
Renter,R. – Smyslov,V. 185  
Reti,R. – Szekely,J. 27  
Reuss,A. – Yusupov,A. 46, 250  
Richardson,P. – Delmar,E. 154  
Richter,K. – Keres,P. 223  
Riedel – Brannath 174  
Rocha,A. – Mecking,H. 174  
Rock – Steinitz,W. 72  
Roshal,A. – Khramov,E. 93  
Rossolimo,N. – N.N. 155  
Rotlewi,G. – Fahrni,H. 175  
– Rubinstein,A. 28  
Rubinstein,A. – Rotlewi,G. 28  
– Salwe,G. 34  
Rushnikov,V. – Sokolov,E. 174  
Rustemov,A. – Yusupov,A. 12  
Rutschjova,N. – Eidelson,R. 127  
Rytov,B. – Malevinsky,A. 16

Salwe,G. – Rubinstein,A. 34  
Santasiere,A. – Adams,E. 154  
Santiago,J. – Lachex 72  
Sanz,F. – Yusupov,A. 55  
Schmid – Gofman 234  
Schmidt,W. – Ghinda,M. 78  
Seledkin – Mileika,J. 148  
Sergievsky,V. – Karpov,A. 206  
Shamkovich,L. – Borisenko,G. 11  
Shashin,A. – Gik,E. 196  
Sherman – Eley,B. 195

Shirazi,K. – Yusupov,A. 49  
Shirov,A. – Nielsen,P.H. 93  
– Van Wely,L. 92  
Shmuter,L. – Kagan,S. 226  
Shobura – Shurada 127  
Shofman,M. – Osnos,V. 64  
Shumov,I. – Kolisch,I. 71  
Shurada – Shobura 127  
Shushkevich – Gendel 84  
Sigurjonsson,G. – Vizantiadis,L. 10  
– Westerinen,H. 34  
Simagin,V. – Lilienthal,A. 84  
Skuja – Abrosimov 64  
Smirin,I. – Kasparov,G. 96  
Smyslov,N. – Sprostinsch 84  
Smyslov,V. – Bondarevsky,I. 116  
– Botvinnik,M. 114, 115, 185  
– Bronstein,D. 186  
– Denker,A. 184  
– Flohr,S. 229  
– Golombek,H. 185  
– Ilivitzki,G. 186, 187  
– Kamishov,M. 184  
– Koenig,I. 115  
– Kotov,A. 116, 176, 184  
– Penrose,J. 170  
– Ravinsky,G. 222  
– Renter,R. 185  
– Taimanov,M. 180  
– Tal,M. 30  
– Timman,J. 145, 146  
– Yanofsky,D. 115

Sobolevsky,L. – Yusupov,A. 139  
Sokolov,E. – Rushnikov,V. 174  
Sokolov,I. – Kramnik,V. 93  
– Vallejo Pons,F. 92  
Spassky,B. – Geller,E. 29  
– Nikolaevsky,Y. 226  
Spassov,L. – Yusupov,A. 54  
Sprostinsch – Smyslov,N. 84  
Staunton,H. – Cochrane,J. 103  
Steierman – Domuls 234  
Steinitz,W. – Lasker,Em. 33  
– Rock 72  
Stellwagen,D. – Yusupov,A. 234

Sterud,E. – Korning,P. **149**  
Stoner – N.N. **150**  
Strelakovsky – Golak 131  
Strom – Vilen **154**  
Suba,M. – Hawelko,M. 195  
Suetin,A. – Bogdanovic,R. **15**  
Supico – Alekhine,A. **151**  
Suta,M. – Sutey 174  
Sutey – Suta,M. **174**  
Svidler,P. – Van Wely,L. **92**  
Syversen – Podgorny,J. 34  
Szabo,L. – Dozsa,P. 253  
– Kotov,A. 63  
Szekely,J. – Reti,R. **27**  
Szilagyi,G. – Polugaevsky,L. **228**  
Sznapik,A. – Kaiszauri,K. **155**

Taimanov,M. – Nei,I. **83**  
– Smyslov,V. **180**  
Takker – Krafford **230**  
Tal,M. – Benisch 151  
– Miller 33  
– N.N. 16  
– Smyslov,V. **30**  
– Unzicker,W. 12  
Tarrasch,S. – Tartakower,S. 33  
Tartakower,S. – Kleczynski,J. 27  
– Lilenthal,A. **25**  
– Tarrasch,S. **33**  
Thomas,G. – Euwe,M. **15**  
Thormann,W. – Tischbierek,R. 83  
Tibensky,R. – Hort,V. **83**  
Timman,J. – Smyslov,V. **145**, **146**  
– Yusupov,A. **26**  
Timoschenko,G. – Gutop,Y. 251  
Tischbierek,R. – Thormann,W. **83**  
Tiviakov,S. – Gleizerov,E. 25  
Tolush,A. – Mititelu,G. 34  
Topalov,V. – Anand,V. **92**  
Tornblom – Friedmann,B. **64**  
Torre Repetto,C. – Grünfeld,E. **104**  
Toth,V. – Engels,L. **103**  
Traeger – Weise 103  
Trajanov – Allies 148  
Tregubov,P. – Yusupov,A. 86

Tukmakov,V. – Geller,E. **82**  
– Yusupov,A. **53**  
Tyrolier,A. – Betbeder Matibet,L. **131**  
– Alexandrescu,G. 169

Udovcic,M. – Horvath **174**  
Uhlrich – Kunnermann **149**  
Unzicker,W. – Tal,M. **12**  
Urusov,S. – Kalinovsky 33  
Urzica,A. – Honfi,K. 15

Vaganian,R. – Yusupov,A. 57  
Vaksberg – Khramtsov **131**  
Vallejo Pons,F. – Sokolov,I. 92  
Vallifuoco,G. – Yusupov,A. 25  
Van Baarle,C. – Van der Wiel,J. **71**  
Van der Wiel,J. – Van Baarle,C. 71  
Van Wely,L. – Morozevich,A. **188**  
– Shirov,A. 92  
– Svidler,P. 92  
Vasiliev – Fedorov **131**  
Veiz – Zakhodjakin 10  
Velimirovic,D. – Gipslis,A. 233  
Vilen – Strom **154**  
Vis – Barcza,G. 64  
Vizantiadis,L. – Sigurjonsson,G. **10**  
Vogel – Barlov 34

Wahls,M. – Yusupov,A. 76  
Weise – Traeger **103**  
Weissgerber,G. – Rellstab,L. 103  
Westerinen,H. – Sigurjonsson,G. 34  
Wheeler – Hall 251  
Winants,L. – Gooris 250  
Wood,G. – Newman,R. **63**

Xie Jun – Yusupov,A. **21**

Yanofsky,D. – Smyslov,V. 115  
Yermolinsky,A. – Ivanchuk,V. **16**  
Yudasin,L. – Kramnik,V. 188  
Yusupov,A. – Achenbach,V. **238**  
– Agzamov,G. 54  
– Barbeau,S. 26  
– Bareev,E. **120**

- Belnov 54
- Bezold,M. 251
- Blatny,P. **82**
- Bologan,V. **174**
- Carlier,B. **115**
- Chandler,M. 26
- De Roode,P. 53
- Dizdar,G. 26
- Eslon,J. 55
- Filippov,V. **208**
- Fontaine,R. 195
- Fridman,D. 228
- Gallagher,J. 174
- Gerusel,M. 55
- Glek,I. 54
- Golod,V. 53
- Hulak,K. 136
- Ivanchuk,V. 134
- Ivkov,B. 55
- Jaracz,P. **253**
- Jones,C. 106
- Kamsky,G. 64
- Karrer,D. **139**
- Knaak,R. 26
- Korchnoi,V. **18**
- Lanka,Ž. 53
- Lazarev,V. **77**
- Lputian,S. **207**
- Luch,M. 252
- Markgraf,A. **249**
- Meister,Y. 82
- Michelakis,G. **109**
- Mrdja,M. 174
- Polgar,J. 123, **165**
- Popovic,P. **250**
- Reuss,A. 46, 250
- Rustemov,A. 12
- Sanz,F. 55
- Shirazi,K. 49
- Sobolevsky,L. 139
- Spassov,L. 54
- Stellwagen,D. **234**
- Timman,J. 26
- Tregubov,P. **86**
- Tukmakov,V. 53
- Vaganian,R. **57**
- Vallifuoco,G. **25**
- Wahls,M. **76**
- Xie Jun 21
- Zapata,A. 48

Zaitsev,I. – Nadj 93  
Zaitseva – Fomina,T. **233**  
Zakharov,A.V. – Petrushin,A. 213  
Zakhodjakin – Veiz **10**  
Zapata,A. – Yusupov,A. **48**  
Zhivtsov,A. – Estrin,Y. **10**  
Zielinska,M. – Burchardt,B. 94  
Zukertort,J. – Blackburne,J. 8

## ARTUR YUSUPOV

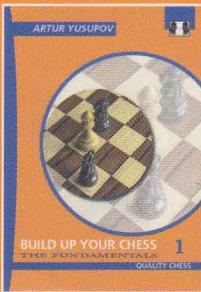


Artur Yusupov was ranked No. 3 in the world from 1986 to 1992, just behind the legendary Karpov and Kasparov. He has won everything there is to win in chess except for the World Championship. In recent years he has mainly worked as a chess trainer with players ranging from current World Champion Anand to local amateurs in Germany, where he resides.

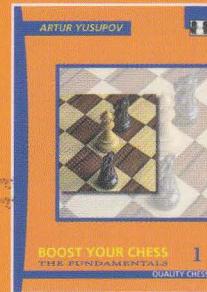
**Winner of the Boleslavsky Medal** from FIDE (the World Chess Federation) as the best instructional chess books in the world (ahead of Garry Kasparov and Mark Dvoretsky in 2nd and 3rd place).

CHESS EVOLUTION  
THE FUNDAMENTALS

CHESS EVOLUTION 1 concludes Artur Yusupov's Fundamentals series, helping players to build their skills on solid foundations. Yusupov guides the reader towards a higher level of chess understanding using carefully selected positions and advice. This new understanding is then tested by a series of puzzles.



€ 23.99



\$ 29.95

ISBN 978-1-906552-45-9



9 781906 552459



QUALITY CHESS

[www.qualitychess.co.uk](http://www.qualitychess.co.uk)